THE ENGLISH-CHINESE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL TRADITIONAL CHINESE MEDICINE

Higher Education Press
Beijing, China

11

SURGERY
外科學

英漢實用中醫藥大全

趙樸初題

英漢實用中醫藥大全

趙樸初題

11

SURGERY

外科學

(京) 112 号

The English-Chinese
Encyclopedia of Practical TCM
Chief Editor Xu Xiangcai

11

SURGERY

English Chief Editor Xu Xiangcai
Chinese Chief Edifor Jiang Zhaojun

英汉实用中医药大全

主编 徐象才

11

外科学

中文主编 姜兆俊
英文主编 徐象才

*

高等教育出版社出版
新华书店总店科技发行所发行
北京朝阳北苑印刷厂印装

*

开本 850×1168 1/32 印张 13.375 字数 340 000
1994 年 8 月第 1 版 1994 年 8 月第 1 次印刷
印数 0001—4 170
ISBN 7-04-004586-9/R・26
定价 12.05 元

11

外　科　学

	中文	英文
主编	姜兆俊	徐象才
副主编	李廷来	朱忠宝
编者		徐　玲　贾　刚
		吕少平　李灿东

SURGERY

	English	Chinese
Chief Editors	Xu Xiangcai	Jiang Zhaojun
Deputy Chief Editor	Zhu Zhongbao	Li Tinglai
Editors	Xu Ling	
	Jia Gang	
	Lü Shāoping	
	Li Candong	

The Leading Commission of Compilation and Translation
编译领导委员会

Honorary Director **名誉主任委员**	Hu Ximing 胡熙明		
Honorary Deputy Directors **名誉副主任委员**	Zhang Qiwen 张奇文	Wang Lei 王　镭	
Director **主任委员**	Zou Jilong 邹积隆		
Deputy Director **副主任委员**	Wei Jiwu 隗继武		
Members **委员** (以姓氏笔划为序)	Wan Deguang 万德光	Wang Yongyan 王永炎	Wang Maoze 王懋泽
	Wei Guikang 韦贵康	Cong Chunyu 丛春雨	Liu Zhongben 刘中本
	Sun Guojie 孙国杰	Yan Shiyun 严世芸	Qiu Dewen 邱德文
	Shang Chichang 尚炽昌	Xiang Ping 项　平	Zhao Yisen 赵以森
	Gao Jinliang 高金亮	Cheng Yichun 程益春	Ge Linyi 葛琳仪
	Cai Jianqian 蔡剑前	Zhai Weimin 翟维敏	
Advisers **顾问**	Dong Jianhua 董建华	Huang Xiaokai 黄孝楷	Geng Jianting 耿鉴庭
	Zhou Fengwu 周凤梧	Zhou Ciqing 周次清	Chen Keji 陈可冀

The Commission of Compilation and Translation
编译委员会

Director **主任委员**	Xu Xiangcai 徐象才

Deputy Directors	Zhang Zhigang	Zhang Wengao	Jiang Zhaojun
副主任委员	张志刚	张文高	姜兆俊
	Qi Xiuheng	Xuan Jiasheng	Sun Xiangxie
	亓秀恒	宣家声	孙祥燮
Members	Yu Wenping	Wang Zhengzhong	Wang Chenying
委员	于文平	王正忠	王陈应
(以姓氏笔划为序)	Wang Guocai	Fang Tingyu	Fang Xuwu
	王国才	方廷钰	方续武
	Tian Jingzhen	Bi Yongsheng	Liu Yutan
	田景振	毕永升	刘玉檀
	Liu Chengcai	Liu Jiaqi	Liu Xiaojuan
	刘承才	刘家起	刘晓娟
	Zhu Zhongbao	Zhu Zhenduo	Xun Jianying
	朱忠宝	朱振铎	寻建英
	Li Lei	Li Zhulan	Xin Shoupu
	李 磊	李竹兰	辛守璞
	Shao Nianfang	Chen Shaomin	Zou Jilong
	邵念方	陈绍民	邹积隆
	Lu Shengnian	Zhou Xing	Zhou Ciqing
	陆胜年	周 行	周次清
	Zhang Sufang	Yang Chongfeng	Zhao Chunxiu
	张素芳	杨崇峰	赵纯修
	Yu Changzheng	Hu Zunda	Xu Heying
	俞昌正	胡遵达	须鹤瑛
	Yuan Jiurong	Huang Naijian	Huang Kuiming
	袁久荣	黄乃健	黄奎铭
	Huang Jialing	Cao Yixun	Lei Xilian
	黄嘉陵	曹贻训	雷希濂
	Cai Huasong	Cai Jianqian	
	蔡华松	蔡剑前	

Preface

I am delighted to learn that THE ENGLISH–CHINESE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL TRADITIONAL CHINESE MEDICINE will soon come into the world.

TCM has experienced many vicissitudes of times but has remained evergreen. It has made great contributions not only to the power and prosperity of our Chinese nation but to the enrichment and improvement of world medicine. Unfortunately, differences in nations, states and languages have slowed down its spreading and flowing outside China. At present, however, an upsurge in learning, researching and applying Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM) is unfolding. In order to maximize the effect of this upsurge and to lead TCM, one of the brilliant cultural heritages of the Chinese nation, to the world for it to expand and bring benefit to the people of all nations, Mr. Xu Xiangcai called intellectuals of noble aspirations and high intelligence together from Shandong and many other provinces in China and took charge of the work of both compilation and translation of THE ENGLISH–CHINESE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL TRADITIONAL CHINESE MEDICINE. With great pleasure, the medical staff both at home and abroad will hail the appearance of this encyclopedia.

I believe that the day when the world's medicine is fully

developed will be the day when TCM has spread throughout the world.

I am pleased to give it my preface.

Prof. Dr. Hu Ximing

Deputy Ministerof the Ministry of Public Health of the People's Republic of China,

Director General of the State Administrative Bureau of Traditional Chinese Medicine and Pharmacology,

President of the World Federation of Acupuncture –Moxibustion Societies,

Member of China Association of Science & Technology,

Deputy President of All–China Association of Traditional Chinese Medicine,

President of China Acupuncture & Moxibustion Society.

December, 1989

Preface

The Chinese nation has been through a long, arduous course of struggling against diseases and has developed its own traditional medicine—Traditional Chinese Medicine and Pharmacology (TCMP). TCMP has a unique, comprehensive, scientific system including both theories and clinical practice. Some thousand years since its beginnings, not only has it been well preserved but also continuously developed. It has special advantages, such as remarkable curative effects and few side effects. Hence it is an effective means by which people prevent and treat diseases and keep themselves strong and healthy.

All achievements attained by any nation in the development of medicine are the public wealth of all mankind. They should not be confined within a single country. What is more, the need to set them free to flow throughout the world as quickly and precisely as possible is greater than that of any other kind of science. During my more than thirty years of being engaged in Traditional Chinese Medicine(TCM), I have been looking forward to the day when TCMP will have spread all over the world and made its contributions to the elimination of diseases of all mankind. However it is to be deeply regretted that the pace of TCMP in extending outside China has been unsatisfactory due to the major difficulties in expressing its concepts in foreign languages.

Mr. Xu Xiangcai, a teacher of Shandong College of TCM, has sponsored and taken charge of the work of compilation and

translation of The English–Chinese Encyclopedia of Practical Traditional Chinese Medicine–an extensive series. This work is a great project, a large–scale scientific research, a courageous effort and a novel creation. I deeply esteem Mr. Xu Xiangcai and his compilers and translators, who have been working day and night for such a long time, for their hard labor and for their firm and indomitable will displayed in overcoming one difficulty after another, and for their great success achieved in this way. As a leader in the circles of TCM, I am duty–bound to do my best to support them.

I believe this encyclopedia will be certain to find its position both in the history of Chinese medicine and in the history of world science and technology.

Mr. Zhang Qiwen
Member of the Standing Committee of
All–China Association of TCM,
Deputy Head of the Health Department
of Shandong Province.
March, 1990

Notes

SURGERY is the eleventh volume of the English–Chinse Encyclopedia of Practical Traditional Chinese Medicine.

Based on both ancient experience and modern fresh–fruits of TCM surgery, this volume is complied according to the principle of integrating theories and practice and laying stress on common surgical diseases. So, it is highly practical in clinical practice.

This volume involves 34 surgical diseases such as general diseases of surgery, mastosis, peripheral vascular diseases, diseases of male genital organs and other common surgical diseases. Each of them is introduced in detail in the order of etiology, pathogenesis, clinical manifestations, and treatment with Chinese herbal medicines according to TCM's differentiation.

Some of the materials of traditional Chinese medicine referred to in this volume come from rare animals which are near extinction and of which trapping and killing has been prohibited by lous. So they have lost their sources. But they have their substitutes with the same effects in both hospitals and pharmaceutical factories. Why we deal with these materials in this volume is just to the academic convenience.

Liu Qiang, Kong Jian, Zhang Zhe, Guo Jing and Yanjing Bo helped do the translation work. Professor Gu Yafu from Nanjing College of Traditional Chinese Medicine re–read the Chinese manuscripts.

The Editors

Publisber's Preface

Traditional Chinese Medicine(TCM) is one of China's great cultural heritages. Since the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949, guided by the farsighted TCM policy of the Chinese Communist Party and the Chinese government, the treasure house of the theories of TCM has been continuously explored and the plentiful literature researched and compiled. As a result, great success has been achieved. Today there has appeared a world-wide upsurge in the studying and researching of TCM. To promote even more vigorous development of this trend in order that TCM may better serve all mankind, efforts are required to further it throughout the world. To bring this about, the language barriers must be overcome as soon as possible in order that TCM can be accurately expressed in foreign languages.

Thus the compilation and translation of a series of English-Chinese books of basic knowledge of TCM has become of great urgency to serve the needs of medical and educational circles both inside and outside China.

In recent years, at the request of the health departments, satisfactory achievements have been made in researching the expression of TCM in English. Based on the investigation into the history and current state of the research work mentioned above, the English-Chinese Encyclopedia of Practical TCM has been published to meet the needs of extending the knowledge of TCM around the world.

The encyclopedia consists of twenty-one volumes, each dealing with a particular branch of TCM. In the process of compilation, the distinguishing features of TCM have been given close attention and great efforts have been made to ensure that the content is scientific, practical, comprehensive and concise. The chief writers of the Chinese manuscripts include professors or associate professors with at least twenty years of practical clinical and / or teaching experience in TCM. The Chinese manuscript of each volume has been checked and approved by a specialist of the relevant branch of TCM. The team of the translators and revisers of the English versions consists of TCM specialists with a good command of English professional medical translators, and teachers of English from TCM colleges or universities. At a symposium to standardize the English versions, scholars from twenty-two colleges or universities, research institutes of TCM or other health institutes probed the question of how to express TCM in English more comprehensively, systematically and accurately, and discussed and deliberated in detail the English versions of some volumes in order to upgrade the English versions of the whole series. The English version of each volume has been re-examined and then given a final checking.

Obviously this encyclopedia will provide extensive reading material of TCM English for senior students in colleges of TCM in China and will also greatly benefit foreigners studying TCM.

The assiduous efforts of compiling and translating this encyclopedia have been supported by the responsible leaders of the State Education Commission of the People's Republic of China, the State Administrative Bureau of TCM and Pharmacy, and the Education Commission and Health Department of Shandong

Province. Under the direction of the Higher Education Department of the State Education Commission, the leading board of compilation and translation of this encyclopedia was set up. The leaders of many colleges of TCM and pharmaceutical factories of TCM have also given assistance.

We hope that this encyclopedia will bring about a good effect on enhancing the teaching of TCM English at the colleges of TCM in China, on cultivating skills in medical circles in exchanging ideas of TCM with patients in English, and on giving an impetus to the study of TCM outside China.

Higher Education Press
March, 1990

Foreword

The English–Chinese Encyclopedia of Practical Traditional Chinese Medicine is an extensive series of twenty–one volumes. Based on the fundamental theories of traditional Chinese medicine(TCM) and with emphasis on the clinical practice of TCM, it is a semi–advanced English–Chinese academic works which is quite comprehensive, systematic, concise, practical and easy to read. It caters mainly to the following readers: senior students of colleges of TCM, young and middle–aged teachers of colleges of TCM, young and middle–aged physicians of hospitals of TCM, personnel of scientific research institutions of TCM, teachers giving correspondence courses in TCM to foreigners, TCM personnel going abroad in the capacity of lecturers or physicians, those trained in Western medicine but wishing to study TCM, and foreigners coming to China to learn TCM or to take refresher courses in TCM.

Because Traditional Chinese Medicine and Pharmacology is unique to our Chinese nation, putting TCM into English has been the crux of the compilation and translation of this encyclopedia. Owing to the fact that no one can be proficient both in the theories of Traditional Chinese Medicine and Pharmacology and the clinical practice of every branch of TCM, as well as in English, to ensure that the English versions express accurately the inherent meanings of TCM, collective translation measures have been taken. That is, teachers of English familiar with TCM, pro-

fessional medical translators, teachers or physicians of TCM and even teachers of palaeography with a strong command of English were all invited together to co-translate the Chinese manuscripts and, then, to co-deliberate and discuss the English versions. Finally English-speaking foreigners studying TCM or teaching English in China were asked to polish the English versions. In this way, the skills of the above translators and foreigners were merged to ensure the quality of the English versions. However, even using this method, the uncertainty that the English versions will be wholly accepted still remains. As for the Chinese manuscripts, they do reflect the essence, and give a general picture, of traditional Chinese medicine and pharmacology. It is not asserted, though, that they are perfect, I whole-heartedly look forward to any criticisms or opinions from readers in order to make improvements to future editions.

More than 200 people have taken part in the activities of compiling, translating and revising this encyclopedia. They come from twenty-eight institutions in all parts of China. Among these institutions, there are fifteen colleges of TCM:Shandong, Beijing, Shanghai, Tianjin, Nanjing, Zhejiang, Anhui, Henan, Hubei, Guangxi, Guiyang, Gansu, Chengdu, Shanxi and Changchun, and scientific research centers of TCM such as China Academy of TCM and Shandong Scientific Research Institute of TCM.

The Education Commission of Shandong province has included the compilation and translation of this encyclopedia in its scientific research projects and allocated funds accordingly. The Health Department of Shandong Province has also given financial aid together with a number of pharmaceutical factories of TCM. The subsidization from Jinan Pharmaceutical Factory of

TCM provided the impetus for the work of compilation and translation to get under way.

The success of compiling and translating this encyclopedia is not only the fruit of the collective labor of all the compilers, translators and revisers but also the result of the support of the responsible leaders of the relevant leading institutions. As the encyclopedia is going to be published, I express my heartfelt thanks to all the compilers. translators and revisers for their sincere cooperation, and to the specialists, professors, leaders at all levels and pharmaceutical factories of TCM for their warm support.

It is my most profound wish that the publication of this encyclopedia will take its role in cultivating talented persons of TCM having a very good command of TCM English and in extending, rapidly, comprehensive knowledge of TCM to all corners of the globe.

Chief Editor Xu Xiangcai

Shandong College of TCM

March, 1990

Contents

Notes 1

1 Etiology and Pathogenesis 1

1.1 Etiology 1

1.2 Pathogenesis 5

2 Differentiation 9

2.1 Differentiation of *Yin*–syndrome and *Yang*–syandrone 9

2.2 Differentiation of Swelling, Pain, Pus, Itching and Channels and Collaterals 11

3 Principles of Treatment 22

3.1 Internal Treament 22

3.2 External Treatment 27

4 General Surgical Diseases 32

4.1 Boil 32

4.2 Carbuncle 35

4.3 Acute Phlegmon 42

4.4 Erysipelas 47

4.5 Hand Infection 51

4.6 Acute Lymphangitis 57

4.7 Acute Lymphnoditis 60

4.8 Acute Pyogenic Parotitis 66

4.9 Abscess of Iliac Fossa 69

4.10 General Pyogenic Infection 74

4.11 Lymphoid Tuberculosis 80

4. 12 Acute Appendicitis 86
5 Mastosis 99
5. 1 General Statement 99
5. 2 Gracked Nipple 106
5. 3 Acute Mastitis 108
5. 4 Mammary Tuberculosis 117
5. 5 Hyperplasia of Mammary Glands 123
5. 6 Intraductal Papilloma 129
5. 7 Disorder of Mammary Development 132
6 Peripheral Vascular Diseases 137
6. 1 Thromboangiitis Obliterans 138
6. 2 Arteriosclerosis Obliterans 151
6. 3 Raynaud's Disease 155
6. 4 Multiple Aorto–arteritis 159
6. 5 Venous Thrombosis and Thrombophlebitis 163
7 Diseases of Male External Genitalia 173
7. 1 Balanoposthitis 173
7. 2 Induration of Penis 177
7. 3 Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis 180
7. 4 Epididymitis 187
7. 5 Tuberculosis of Epididymis 191
7. 6 Chronic Prostatitis 196
7. 7 Hyperplasia of Prostate 202
8 Other Surgical Disorders 211
8. 1 Burn 211
8. 2 Cold Injury 224
8. 3 Thyroid Adenoma 228
8.4 Ulcer of Lower Limbs 231

Index of Prescreption 237
The English–Chinese Encyclopedia of Practical TCM (Booklist)..... (407)

1 Etiology and Pathogenesis

1.1 Etiology

1. Exogenous Pathogens

(1) Toxic Pathogens

Surgical diseases may be all due to invasion of the body by wind, cold, summer–heat, dampness, dryness and fire, which are climatic conditions in excess and considered as six pathogenic factors in TCM. The first five in excess may all turn into heat and fire and cause surgical infection. So, most of the surgical diseases are resulted from toxic heat or toxic fire. That's why the book *Yi Zong Jin Jian* says in the chapter *Wai Ke Xin Fa Yao Jue* that carbuncle and cellulitis originate from toxic fire.

(2)Exogenous Injuries

In juries of the skin, muscles, tendons, bones or internal organs due to water scald, fire burn, insect / beast bite, knife cut, explosion or crush trauma will lead to stagnation of *Qi* and blood and prolonged retention of stagnated *Qi* and blood will promote the production of heat. Under this condition, bacterial infection, if any, will be followed by pyogenesis, or toxic pathogens (bacteria) will invade the body by way of the skin and cause tetanus or acute pyogenic infective diseases.

2. Endogenous Pathogens

(1) Disorders of the Seven Emotions

The seven emotions refer to joy, anger, melancholy, anxiety, grief, fear and terror. Any of them in excess or persistingly–longer will lead to dysfunction of *Zang* and *Fu*, channels and collaterals and *Qi* and blood, causing surgical diseases. For example, persistent andger will do damage to the liver, resulting in stagnation of the liver–*Qi*. Prolonged retention of stagnated liver–*Qi* will induce the development of fire and this fire is a cause of surgical diseases.

Stagnation of the Liver–*Qi* or anxiety in excess will impair the spleen, the impaired spleen will fail to fulfil its function in transforming and transporting nutrients, which provides the condition for phlegm–dampness to be produced in the interior. Phlegm–dampness retained in the channels and collaterals together with stagnated *Qi* and fire will make *Qi* and blood stagnated, the stagnated *Qi* and blood tend to accumulate into masses, which are called, in Western medicine, as lymphoid tuberculosis, thyroid adenoma, hyperplasia of mammary glands, mammary cancer, etc.

The liver can regulate the secretion of milk, for it is in charge of dredging. Dysfunction of the liver in dredging in breast–feeding women due to stagnation of the liver–*Qi* is apt to cause incoordination between the liver and stomach, obstruction of the vessels in thd breast and retention of milk. As a result, there occurs acute mastitis.

Heat due to stagnation of the liver–*Qi* will turn into fire. The fire retained in the chest will lead to hepatic abscess. the fire disturbing the free flow of bile will cause the onset of cholecystitis or cholelithiasis.

To sum up, all the surgical diseases due to disorders of the

seven emotions are located along the routes of the Liver and Gallbladder Channels, on the flanks of the neck and in the breast or hypochondrium.

(2) Excess of Sexual Intercourse

Excessive sexual intercourse exhausts the kidney–*Qi* and weakens the vital –*Qi*, lowering the resistance against diseases. In the meantime, exopathogens will exploit this opportunity to invade the body and cause diseases. Here are some examples.

Because the kidney is in charge of the bone, when, it is deficient, osteodystrophy will occur and the bone will be weakened. Invasion by wind, cold, dampness or phlegm at this time will lead to stagnation of *Qi* and blood and, in turn, the diseases such as tuberculosis of the bone and osteoarticulation and osteoma.

Flaring–up–fire of deficiency type due to insufficiency of the kidney–*Yin* burns body fluid into phlegm. Accumulation of the fire and phlegm will lead to lymphoid tuberculosis.

Deficient kidney–*Yang* fails to warm the body. Too cold limbs is the cause of thromboangiitis obliterans and Raynaud's disease.

Modern science has proved that frequent sexual intercourse reduces prostaglandin and zinc, causes renin disorderly secreted, makes renin fail to regulate certain parts of the body normally, and weakens the immunologic function. That is to say, excessive sexual intercourse does induce surgical diseases.

(3) Improper Diet

Over–intake of greasy and fatty food, alcohol, roasted food or irritant food such as food pungent in flavor brings about dysfunction of the spleen and stomach and production of dampness, heat and fire in the interior. If this is accompanied by attack

of exopathogens, there will result pyogenic diseases or diabetes which may be complicated by carbuncle and acromelic gangrene. That is the reason that the book *Su Wen* says in the chapter *Sheng Qi Tong Tian Lun* that carbuncles are all due to greasy and fatty food.

Excessive drink and food at one meal, irregular dining hours or over-intake of raw, cold or dirty food may impair the spleen and stomach, make the *Qi* of the spleen and stomach fail to ascend and descend normally, disturb the function of the *Liu-Fu* organs in transporting and transforming nutrients, promote production of dampness and heat, and induce incoordination between *Qi* and blood, due to all of which such diseases are liable to occur as appendicitis, intestinal obstruction, cholecystitis, cholelithiasis, biliary ascariasis and perforation resulting from gastro-duodenal ulcer.

Yes, it is the pathogens that are responsible for diseases. But not everyone who has been attacked by the pathogens is bound to fall ill, Whether he is ill or not is dependent on whether he has had in his body the internal cause for a disease to occur. In general, one with strong vital-*Qi* can keep off exopathogens. This is just like a saying goes:" Strong vital-*Qi* in the interior makes exopathogens powerless. " That is to say, only when the vital-*Qi* is weakened and the function of Zang and Fu organs is disturbed due to disorders of the seven emotions, impairment from excessive sexual intercourse, deficiency of the kidney-*Qi* and improper diet, can the pathogens invade the body and cause diseases. This is what is called attack of pathogens all due to deficiency of *Qi*.

3. Disease Site

The cause and site of a surgical disease are related to certain

extent. For instance, those in the upper prat of the body are mostly due to wind–warmth, wind–heat and wind–fire, for wind tends to go upwards; those in the middle prat of the body are usually due to stagnation of *Qi* and fire, for *Qi* and fire basically originate form the middle; those in the lower prat of the body are often due to damp–heat and cold–dampness, for dampness has the tendency to go downwards. The upper part refers to the head, face, neck and upper limbs; the middle part, the chest, abdomen, waist and back; the lower part, the hip, perineum, scrotum and lower limbs.

What has been said in the above is the general etiology of surgical diesases. As for the exact causes of a disease, they must be confirmed according to the clinical symptoms and signs, both local and general, as well as the site and history.

1.2 Pathogenesis

1. Relationship between Surgical Diseases and *Qi* and Blood

(1) Stagnation of Both *Qi* and blood

Under normal condition, *Qi* and blood help each other to circulate endlessly throughout the body. If the circulation has something wrong, *Qi* and blood will be stagnated and the channels and collaterals obstructed. If the obstruction takes place in the skin, tendons, bone and *Zang–Fu* organs, there will result surgical diseases. So, stagnation of *Qi* and blood is one of the main pathogeneses.

(2) Transformation after Stagnation of *Qi* and Blood

Timely and proper treatment after stagnation of *Qi* and blood may disperse the stagnancy and remove the pathogenic fac-

tor by restoring the normal circulation. If the treatment is not given, the stagnation will be prolonged and turned into heat. Abundant heat will spoil the flesh into pus. When abscess has been formed but the vital–*Qi* has not been weakened and the resistance against disease still remains strong, if timely excision and drainage of the abscess is carried out or the abscess can erupt itself, the pathogens will be discharged out of the body along with the pus. Following that, normal circulation of *Qi* and blood will be restoted with the necrotic flesh replaced by fresh one and the sore healed.

(3) State of *Qi* and Blood

The onset, development and healing of a surgical disease are closely related to the state of *Qi* and blood. Generally speaking, in those whose *Qi* and blood are sufficient, a pyogenic disease is liable to develop, fester and have tissue regenerated and the wound healed, while in those whose *Qi* and blood is deficient, it is hard to do so and, what is more, the abundant pathogens tend to invade the interior of the body.

2. Relationship between Surgical Diseases and the *Zang* and *Fu* Organs

Located on the body sruface, srugical diseases have much to do with the *Zang* and *Fu* organs. The time when the *Zang* and *Fu* organs function abnormally is the time when surgical diseases take place. For instance. damp–heat going downward along the Liver Channel may give rise to acute epididymitis and orchitis, which is called :"Disorders in the interior must be manifested in the exterior." Dysfunction of the *Zang* and Fu organs may cause not only surgical diseases but also the pathologic changes of the *Zang* and *Fu* organs themselves. For example, stagnation of

Qi and blood due to dysfunction of the intestines may lead to acute appendicitis. Similarly, toxic pathogens responsible for surgical diseases may also disturb and attack the *Znag* and *Fu* organs. Take for example the excessive pathogens of nail-like boil and carbuncle on the face and extensive burn often scatter throughout the body, retain in the *Ying* and blood systems and attack the *Zang* and *Fu* organs, thus resulting in septicopyemia.

3. Relationship between Surgical Diseases and the Channels and Collaterals

Local obstruction of the channels and collaterals by the pathogenic factors is one of the pathogeneses of surgical diseases. That's why the book *Yi ZongJin Jian* has it to say in the chapter *Wai Ke Xin Fu Yao Jue*:" Carbuncles are all due to noxious-fire, noxious-fire due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood, and, in turn, stagnation of *Qi* and blood due to obstruction of the channels and collaterals. " Impairment of any part of the channels and collaterals may also become the ground for surgical diseases. Alopecia areata due to traumatic hematoma of the scalp is such an example. Therefore, " where there is deficiency, there are pathogens. " In addition, the channels and collaterals on the affected part are also related with the onset, development and prognosis of a surgical disease. The following are two examples. Carbuncle located on the both sides of the back neck where the Urinary Bladder Channel of Foot-Taiyang goes is hard to develop but apt to distribute its pathogens inward, because this is a channel which is provided with cold-water and through which flow more blood and less *Qi*. Acute appendicitis, called as periappendicular abscess in TCM, is liable to fester, because it is located on the route of the Large-intestine Channel of

Foot–Yangming through which flow more *Qi* and blood. Furthermore, inward–going of the pathogens of the diseases on the body surface and outward–going of the pathogens of the diseases in the *Zang* and *Fu* organs are both by way of the channels and collaterals. This further confirms the relationship between the onset, development, distribution, transformation and prognosis of surgical diseases and the channels and collaterals.

2 Differentiation

2.1 Differentiation of Yin-syndrome and Yang-syndrome

Identifying the *Yin* or *Yang* nature of a syndrome takes the lead in differentiationg the eight principal syndromes. This should be done first of all in differentiating a surgical disease. Only by so doing, can the treatment and prognosis be well predicted. Here are the points for differentiating *Yin*-syndrome or *Yang*-syndrome.

1. *Yang* Syndrome (acute pyogenic infection)

(1) Onest

Pretty sudden onset.

(2) Site

Usually in the superficial skin and muscles.

(3) Local Symptoms

The sore in the early stage is manifested as swelling which is sticking out of the skin as red as fire, hot sensation and pain due to inflammation, being liable to be absorbed before suppuration and break after suppuration, sticky pus and fluid flowing out after breaking, bright red granulation in the opening which is apt to heal.

(4) General Symptoms

The sore in the early and middle stages may be accompanied

by fever, chills, thirst, anorexia, constipation, and deep-colored urine, all of which may disappear qne by one after breaking.

(5) Tongue Coating and Pulse

Reddened tongue with thin white, yellow dry, yellow greasy or burned black coating, and taut rapid, slippery rapid or full rapid pulse.

(6) Course and Prognosis

Shorter disease course and better prognosis.

2. *Yin* Syndrome (Here, it refers to tuberculous cold-abscess, chronic inflammation, chronic medullitis and the like.)

(1) Onset

Slow onset.

(2) Site

Usually deep in the muscles or within the tendons and bone.

(3) Local Symptoms

The sore in the early stage is marked by diffuse, swollen, flat, harder or soft mass which is not red, nor hot and nor painful, or painful and aching, being hard to be absorbed before suppuration, difficulty in diabrosis after suppuration, clear and watery or grey turbid pus and fluid perhaps with cotton fibre-like substance which flow out after diabrosis, dark red or pale granulation in the opening which is hard to heal.

(4) General Symptoms

The sore in the early stage is usually marked by no apparent general symptoms. After suppuration or festering, there may appear symptoms due to deficiency such as tidal fever, night sweat, spontaneous sweating, debility, pale complexion, acratia, etc.

(5) Tongue Coating and Pulse

Pale red tongue with thin white or white greasy coating, and deep thready slow or thready rapid pulse.

In the above, quite a number of common symptoms manifested in some surgical diseases are summed up by camparison into two main kinds: *Yin* syndrome and *Yang* syndrome. But this does not include *Yin* and *Yang* differentiation of all the surgical diseases and nor analyses of *Yang* in *Yin*, *Yin* in *Yang* and transformation of *Yin* and *Yang*. So, when a surgical disease is clinically treated, both its local and general sympoms should be cleverly differentiated together. Only in this way, may right justment be attained.

2.2 Differentiation of Swealling, Pain, Pus, Itching and Channels and Collaterals

Swelling, pain, pus and itching are the four common symptoms of surgical disseases. According to their differences in form and extent, the nature of a surgical disease and the causes of its different symptoms may be identified. Clinical differentiation of surgery in TCM is theoretically based on these four main symptoms, according to which the therapeutic methods, prescriptions and the drugs to be used are determined. The above differentiation combined with the differentiation of not only the involved channels and collaterals but also the volume of blood and *Qi* in the twelve regular channels will ensure better curative effects.

1. Differentiation of Swelling

Swelling is due to obstruction of the channels and collaterals and stagnation of *Qi* and blood. It is in different types, because

patients' constitutions and causes of diseases are different.

(1) Fire–swelling

Red, swollen, burning and painflu mass with thin and bright skin, which is seen in acute pyogenic infection.

(2) Cold–swelling

Swollen numb and hard mass with dark skin, which is seen in tuberculosis of the bone and joint.

(3) Wind–swelling

Soft floating or wandering swelling which is seen in facial erysipelas and nettle–rash.

(4) Damp–swelling

Swollen mass with lustrous skin on which there will appear pits at press and there may be blisters from which flows out fluid after their diabrosis, which is seen in thrombosis of deep vein of lower limb and acute eczema of lower limb.

(5) Phlegm–swelling

Soft or hard swollen mass which is seen in lymphoid tuberculosis and cyst of sebaceous glands.

(6) Swelling due to Blood Stasis

Distending, rigid and dark purple swollen mass with persistent distending pain, which is seen in traumatic hematoma.

(7) Swelling due to Stagnation and Accumulation

Swollen mass as hard as stone and with uneven surface, which is seen in mammary cancer.

(8) Swelling of Deficiency Type

Flat and diffuse swollen mass which is seen in cold–abscess.

(9) Swelling of Excess Type

Red, burning, painful, highly–sticking–out swollen mass whcih is seen in furuncle.

2. Differentiation of Pain according to the Cause

Pain is due to obstruction of the channels and collaterals and stagnation of *Qi* and blood. It is different according to different causes, different sites and depth of the affected parts and different conditions of the pathogens and vital–*Qi*.

(1) Differentiation according to the Causes

① Cold–pain

Pain relieved by heat and pain spot with normal or pale skin, which is seen in Buerger's disease and Raynaud's disease.

② Heat–pain

Burning pain relieved by cold and pain spot with red skin, which is seen in erysipelas.

③ Damp–pain

Swelling and distension in the affected part on which there will appear pits at press and pain with heavy and falling sensation, which is seen in thrombosis of deep vein of lower limb.

① *Qi*–pain

Wandering pain sometimes appearing and sometimes disappearing, which is seen in simple intestinal obstruction or mild intestinal adhesion.

⑤ Pain due to Stagnation of the Liver–*Qi*

Pain in the hypochondrium which is complicated by choking sensation in the chest or distending pain in the breast, which is seen in hyperplasia of mammary glands.

⑥ Pain due to Blood Stasis

Localized and persistent distending or severe pain and pain spot with dark blue skin, which is seen in ecchymosis due to trauma and Buerger's disease.

⑦ Pain of Excess Type

Severe pain aggravated by press, which is seen in acute appendicitis.

⑧ Pain of Deficiency Type

Mild pain relieved by press, which is seen in intestinal adhesion of deficiency pain.

(2) Differentiation of Pain according to the Nature

① Stabbing–pain

Puncture–like pain usually on the skin, which is seen in herpes zoster.

②Burning–pain

Cock's peck–like and rhythmic pain with the lesion in the muscles, which is seen in the stadium suppurationis of acute pyogenic infection.

③Rending–like Pain

Splitting–like pain usually on the skin and in the muscles, which is seen in anal fissure.

④Dull pain

Pain obstructed and mostly in the bone and joints, which is seen in tuberculosis of the bone and joint.

⑤Colicky Pain

Twisting–like pain usually in *Zang* and *Fu* organs, which is seen in choledocholith and urinary stone with obstruction

⑥Persistent Pain

Continuous pain without relief, which is seen before the fester of an acute pyogenic infection.

⑦Paroxysmal Pain

Pain occurring and relieved suddenly and not at a fixed time, which is seen in biliary ascariasis.

⑧Rest–pain

Pain of the limb not relieved when lying quietly in the night, which is seen in Buerger's disease.

3. Differentiation of Pus

Pus is what the flesh, *Qi* and blood of the skin, muscles, tendons, bones and *Zang–Fu* organs are spoiled by excessive heat into. When a surgical disease is treated clinically, it is important to find out whether or not there has existed pus, whether or not the pus is deep in the tissue and what nature, color and odour the pus has.

(1) Differentiation of the Existence of Pus

Existence of pus is marked by persistent fever, localized severe burning pain, mass which feels soft with a finger but on which there do not remain any pits after the finger is taken away, and full rapid pulse.

Inexistence of pus is marked by no fever, localized mild burning or no burning sensation, mild pain, hard mass on which there remain pits after it is pressed with a finger, and not rapid pulse.

(2) Differentiation of Superficial Abscess from Deep Abscess

Superficial abscess is marked by highly–sticking–out mass with bright red burning skin which is painful at mild press but relieved after the press is taken away.

Deep abscess is marked by diffuse and not slightly burning mass with normal or slightly red skin which is painful at strong press and not relieved apparently after the press is taken away.

(3) Differentiation of the Nature, Color and Odor of Pus

Yellow and white sticky pus with clear and clean color and slightly fishy odor is a good sign indicating sufficiency of *Qi* and blood. Yellow turbid thick pus with unclean color is a favorable sign indicating remains of *Qi* and fire. Yellow thick pus followed

by yellow thick fluid is a good astringing sign. Pale thin watery pus indicates deficiency of *Qi* and blood. Thin pus followed by thick one is an astringing sign indicating gradual restoration. Thick pus followed by thin one indicates gradual debility and unhealing sore. Mass hard to fester and profuse watery pus without dark color and foul odor discharged continuously after diabrosis does not indicate a bad sign. Pus as thin as rice water or dirty water and with dark color and foul odor is a bad sign indicating complete exhaustion of vital–*Qi* and great deficiency of *Qi* and blood.

4. Differentiation of Itching

Incoordination of *Qi* and blood between the skin and muscles due to retention of the pathogens, wind, dampness, heat and insects in the skin and muscles, or malnutrition of the skin and muscles due to obstruction of wind–dryness and deficiency–blood in the skin and muscles causes itcking. As a subjective symptom which occurs sometimes, it is not common in surgical diseases. Itching falls into six types according to its different causes and different pathological changes of surgical diseases.

(1) Wind–itching

Wind–itching usually takes place all over thd body, because wind tends to move, change and wander about. It is not accompanied by exudate or followed by bleeding, which will soon stop, occurring when the sore is scratched open. Wind–itching is seen in neurodermatitis and nettle–rash.

(2) Damp–itching

Damp–itching is manifested as itching due to infiltration of profuse watery fluid, and itching rash which is eroding and ooz-

ing watery fluid when the dampness has accumulated into heat. It is seen in acute eczema.

(3) Heat–itching

Heat–itching is manifested as papules on the skin which is red burning and itching, and sometimes accompanied by erosion and pus. It is seen in impetigo.

(4) Itching due to Insects

Eroding and diffuse insect–crawling–like itching, which is seen in tinea mamuum, tinea pedis and psora.

(5) Itching due to Deficiency of Blood

Thickened dry and itching skin which desquamates, which is seen in chronic eczema and neurodermatitis.

(6) Itching due to Ulcer

Localized burning–itching after thd diabrosis of pyogenic infection is mostly caused by erosion of the skin by pus due to improper care or caused by dermal sensitivity due to application on the skin of plaster containing mercurial. Itching appearing while the sore is being healed is a good sign which indicates that the noxious pathogens are about to be swept away, *Qi* and blood are being supplemented, new tissue is being generated, and the opening of the sore is going to be closed.

5. Differentiation of the Channels and Collaterals and *Qi* and Blood in the Twelve Channels

When a surgical disease is clinically treated, if a corresponding medicinal guide is administered according to the relevant channels and collaterals along which the disease is located, the potency of the drugs administered will go straight to the disease site, giving off their effect fully there and ensuring better curative effects. Besides, knowing how much *Qi* and blood that flow

through each of the twelve channels is significant for the direction of treatment and justment of prognosis.

(1) Distribution of the Channels and Collaterals All over the Body and Medicinal Guides Used according to the Channels and Collaterals

① Head

The middle of the head is the area through which Du Channel goes. The both sides of the head are the areas through which the Urinary Bladder Channel of Foot–Taiyang goes.

② Face and Breast

The face and breast are involved in the Stomach Channel of Foot–Yangming.(the breast in the Stomach Channel, the area around the breast in the Gall Bladder Channel of Foot–Shaoyang, the nipple in the Liver Channel of Foot–Jueyin.)

③ Ear

The areas before and after the ear are involved in the Gall bladder Channel of Foot–Shaoyang and the Tri–Jiao Channel of Hand–Shaoyang.

④ Hand and Foot

It is The Pericardium Channel of Hand–Jueyin that goes through the palms and what goes though the soles is the Kidney Channel of Foot–Shaoyin.

⑤ Back

The back is the area all over which the Yang channels spread. In the middle of the back goes through Du Channel, to the middle, the Urinary Bladder Channel of Foot–Taiyang.

⑥ Hip

The outward flank of the hip is dominated by The Three

Yang Channels of the Hand, while the inward flank by The Three Yin Channels of the Hand.

⑦ Leg

The outward flank of a leg goes through The three Yang Channels of the Foot, while the inward flank The Three Yin Channels of the Foot.

⑧ Abdomen

The abdomen is the area all over which the Yin channels spread with the middle of it dominated by Ren Channel.

In addition, eye disorders are related to the Liver Channel; nose disorders, the Lung Channel; ear disorders, the Kidney Channel; mouth and lip disorders, the Spleen and Stomach Channel; tongue disorders, the Heart Channel.

When resolving method is used to treat surgical diseases according to both the traditional and modern clinical experience, the medicinal guides often prescribed are as follows:

Qianghuo Rhizoma seu Radix Notopterygii
for the Channels of Foot–Taiyang,

Huanglian Rhizoma Coptidis,

Pugongying Herba Taraxaci,

Baizhi Radix Angelicae Dahurica,

Shengshigao Gypsum Fibrosum
for the channels of Foot–Yangming,

Chaihu Radix Bupleuri,

Qingpi Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride
for the Channels of Foot–Shaoyang and Foot–Jueyin,

Huanglian Rhizoma Coptidis,

Zhizi Fructus Gardeniae,
for the Channels of Hand–Shaoyin,

Sangbaipi Cortes Morì,

Baizhi Radix Angelicae Dahurica

for the Channels of Hand–Taiyin,

Duhuo Radix Angelicae Pubescentis,

Zhimu Rhizoma Anemarrhenae,

Xixin Herba Asari

for the Channels of Foot–Shaoyin,

Cangzhu Rhizoma Atractylodis,

Shengma Rhizoma Cimicifugae

for the Channels of Foot–Taiyin.

(2) *Qi* and Blood in the Twelve Regular Channel

Qi and blood are both more in The Large Intestine Channels of Hand–Yangming and The Stomach Channel of Foot–Yangming. Blood is more but *Qi* is less in The Small intestine Channel of Hand–Taiyang, The Urinary Bladder Channel of Foot–Taiyang, The Pericardium Channel of Hand–Jueyin and The Liver Channel of Foot–Jueyin. *Qi* is more but blood is less in The Tri–Jiao Channel of Hand–Shaoyang, The Gall Bladder Channel of Foot–Shaoyang, The Heart Channel of Hand–Shaoyin, The Kidney Channel of Foot–Shaoyin, The Lung Channel of Hand–Taiyin and The Spleen Channel of Foot–Taiyin.

The volume of *Qi* and blood is not the same in the twelve regular channels. Accordingly, the therapeutic methods for treating surgical diseases are different. All those in the channels with more blood but less *Qi* must be characterized by severe stagnation and slow fester. When they are treated, attention should be paid to removing blood stasis from within and tonifying. All those in the channels with more *Qi* but less blood must be manifested as severs masses and difficulty in astringing. When

they are treated, what should be paid attention to is to promote the circulation of *Qi* and supplement nutrients. All those in the channels with more *Qi* and blood are easy to fester and astringe. Most of them are syndromes of excess type. The method for treating them are mainly promoting the circulation of both *Qi* and blood.

3 Principles of Treatment

The therapeutic methods of surgical diseases are classified as internal and external ones. No matter what method is used, concept of wholism, local changes and integration of internal and external treatments must be followed in any treatment.

3.1 Internal Treatment

Any surgical disease has three stages: early stage, pus-forming stage and postfestering stage. Accordingly, internal treatment has three methods: resolving, expelling and tonifying.

1. Resol ving Method

Resolving includes the following often-used methods which are established according to different causes, symptoms, therapeutic methods and prescriptions.

(1) Clearing away Heat

Drugs with the action of clearing away heat are used to remove noxious-heat and noxious-fire from the interior.

① Removing Heat and Toxic Material

Indications: Surgical infective diseases such as furuncls, carbuncle and hand infection which are marked by localized red swelling and burning-pain, general fever, dry mouth, yellow tongue coating, and rapid pulse.

Prescription: *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (Antiphlogistic Decoction of Five Drugs) (1).

② Clearing away Heat and Removing Blood Stasis

Indications: Acute pyogenic inflammation marked by hard painful mass which has probably suppurated but not broken, accompanied by mild fever.

Prescription: *Xianfang Huoming Yin* (Fairy Decoction for Treating Cutaneous Infection) (2).

③ Clearing away Heat and Pormoting Diuresis

Indications: Red swelling and burning–pain due to accumulation of damp–heat in the lower limbs, yellow greasy tongue coating, and slippery rapid pulse.

Perscription: *Wushen Tang* (Decoction of Five Drugs for Treating Pyogenic Infection of the Bone) (3).

④ Clearing away Heat by Inducing Bowel Movements

Indications: Acute pyogenic infection and internal excessive syndrome due to heat collection marked by red–swelling, burning–pain, high fever, dysphoria, dry mouth, preference for cold drink, constipation, deep–colored urine, uneven urination, yellow greasy or yellow rough tongue coating, and deep rapid forceful pulse.

Prescription: *Neishu Huanglian Tang* (Coptis Decoction for the Depressed Organs in the Interior) (4).

⑤ Cooling Blood and Clearing away Heat

Indications: Syndrome of excess type due to invasion of noxious heat into the blood system marked by high fever, shiver, dysphoria, irritability, coma, delirium, thirst without desire for drink, haematemesis, epistaxis, eruption, dark red tongue, and rapid pulse, as well as dry diffuse sore on which there is no pus.

Prescription: *Xijiao Dihuang Tang* (Decoction of Rhinoceros Horn and Rehmannia) (5).

(2) Regulating the *Ying* System

Drugs with the action of regulating *Ying*–blood are used to clear the channels and collaterals and promote the circulation of blood to remove blood stasis so that swelling is subdued and pain is arrested. This is a widely–used method in treating surgical diseases.

Indications: Surgical syndromes due to obstruction of the channels and collaterals and stagnation of *Qi* and blood marked by apparent masses, swelling and pain due to blood stasis, acrocyanosis, nodule erythema, dark purple tongue, and deep uneven pulse.

Prescription: *Taohong Siwu Tang* (Four Ingredient Decoction with Peach Seed and Safflower) (6).

(3) Relieving the Depressed Liver

Drugs with the action of relieving the depressed liver are used to regulate the functional activity of *Qi* and harmonize *Qi* and bloo in order that swelling is subdued and pain is alleviated.

Indications: Tough or harder, smooth and mobile, not red and burning masses without pain or with distending pain, which vary in size with the changes of emotions.

Prescription: *Xiaoyao San* (Ease Powder) (7).

(4) Removing Obstructions with Drugs Hot in Nature

Drugs with the action of warming up the channels to clear the collaterals and dispersing cold to resolve phlegm are used to warm and dispel pathogens due to accumulation of cold–phlegm. This is the chief method used to treat cold–syndromes of surgery.

Indications: *Yin*–cold syndromes of deficiency type caused by disorder of *Yang–Qi* and stagnation of *Qi* and blood both of

which are resulted from attack due to debility of wind, cold, dampness and phlegm on the channels and collaterals, tendons and bones, and marked by diffuse swelling in the affected part which is not red, burning or painful (or it is mildly-painful), or pale cold limbs, chills, absence of thirst, profuse and clear urine, pale tongue with white coating, and deep thready slow pulse.

Prescription: *Yanghe Tang* (*Yang*-activating Decoction) (8).

2. Method of Expelling Pus from in

Drugs with the action of expelliing pus from in by eruption or by tonifying are used to deliver toxins responsible for surgical diseases from the deeper sites to the superficies, suppurate them and discharge the pus earlier so that the diffuse syndromes can be localized and lest the toxins enter the interor of the body. Method of expelling pus from in falls into two : by eruption and by tonifying.

(1) Expelling Pus from in by Eruption

Indications: Syndromes in surgery marked by suppuration not followed by diabrosis or difficulty in pus-discharge, abundant noxious *Qi* accompanied by unweakened viatl-*Qi*

Prescription: *Tounong San* (Powder for Expelling Pus) (9).

(2) Expelling Pus from in by Tonifying

Indications: Pyogenic infectious diseases due to excessive toxins, deficiency of vital-*Qi* and retention of pus and marked by hard flat sores with the diffuse roots which are hard to suppurate and break, or give off watery pus after their breaking.

Indications: *Tuoli Xiaodu San* (Powder for Expelling from within and Disinfection) (10).

3. Method of Tonifying

Drugs with the action of restoring *Qi* and strengthening the

body resistance are used to supplement *Qi* and blood, eliminate deficiency symptoms, restore vital–*Qi*, help generate new tissue and promote early healing of sores. This method consists of the following three: invigorating *Qi* and nourishing blood, replenishing *Yin* and supporting *Yang*.

(1) Invigorating *Qi* and Nourishing Blood

Indications: Pyogenic infections after their diabrosis or chronic ulcer marked by watery pus, pale granulation, hard–healing opening of sore, weak pulse and listlessness, or other surgical diseases with symptoms due to deficiency of both *Qi* and blood.

Prescription: *Bazhen Tang* (Eight Precious Ingredient Decoction) (11).

(2) Replenishing *Yin*

Indications: Surgical infections which have broken or have not broken marked by dry mouth and throat, tinnitus, vertigo, feverish sensation in the palms and soles, low fever after noon, emaciation, reddened tongue with little coating, and thready rapid pulse.

Prescription: *Liuwei Dihuang Tang* (Decoction of Six Ingredients Including Rehmannia) (12).

(3) Supporting *Yang*

Indications: Soft and diffuse mass which is hard to suppurate and fester, sore after diabrosis on which there is gloomy granulation and it is hard for new tissue to be developed, or symptoms due to deficiency of *Yang* marked by cold limbs, spontaneous sweating, shortness of breath, languor, loose stools, frequent urination, pale tongue, and deep thready pulse.

Prescription: *Jinkui Shenqi Wan* (Bolus for Tonifying the Kidney–*Qi*) (13).

Not all pyogenic infective diseases in their late stages are treated with tonifying method. In general, after the diabrosis of a *Yan*—syndrome, if there does not exist deficiency, tonifying method needn't be used; if there does exist deficiency, this method can be considered. After the diabrosis of a *Ying*—syndrome, or when a prolonged disease is treated and if there exists deficiency of both *Qi* and blood as well as insufficiency of *Yin* and *Yang*, Tonifying method has to be used. Otherwise, curative effects can not be ensured.

3. 2 External Treatment

External treatment refers to one in which drugs are applied or operations are performed on the affected parts. It plays an important role in the treatment of surgical diseases. Although external treatment may be conducted alone, it is usually intgrated with internal one for the purpose of high curative dffects. The following is the brief introduction to drugs commonly—used in external treatmcnt. For the detail, please look up the index in the postscript.

1. Adhesive Plaster

(1) *Badu Gao* (Adhesive Plaster for Removing Toxic Substances) (14)

Effect: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, subduing swelling, alleviating pain, promoting the circulation of blood and the generation of new tissue, causing masses which have not suppurated to be absorbed and subdued, rendering pus embolus of sores which have suppurated to come off, helping expel toxins and pus, and getting new tissue generated and necrotic

tissue removed after diabrosis of a sore.

Indications: Symptoms in the early , suppurative and postulcerative stages of pyogenic infective diseases.

(2) *Yanghe Jiening Gao* (Yang–activating and Removing Stagnancy Plaster) (15).

Effect: Warming up the channels, harmonizing Yang, dispelling wind, dispersing cold, promoting the circulation of *Qi* and blood, resolving phlegm, and clearing collaterals.

Indications: Surgical inflammatory masses in the early stage.

(3) *Qianchui Gao* (Ointment Made by Pounding) (16).

Effcet: Subduing swelling, relieving pain, helping expel pus and remove necrotic tissue.

Indications: Used in the early stage of a pyogenic infection to subdue swelling, in the suppurative stage to fester sore, and in postulcerative stage to promote the elimination of pus and necrotic tissue.

2. Ointment

(1) *Jinhuang Gao* (Golden Ointment) (17)

Effect: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, eliminating dampness, resolving phlegm, dispersing blood stasis, and subduing swelling.

Indications: Acute pyogenic infective diseases in the early stage and mumps.

(2) *Daqing Gao* (Isatis Leaf Ointment) (18).

Effect: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, eliminating dampness and blood stasis, subduing swelling, and alleviating pain.

Indications: The same as those of *Jinhuang Gao* stated above.

(3) *Chonghe Gao* (Miraculous Ointment)

Effect: Dispelling wind, promoting the circulation of blood, removing blood stasis, and subduing swelling.

Indications: Subacute or chronic inflammatory masses.

(4) *Huiyang Yulong Gao* (Jade–dragon Ointment for Recuperating Depleted *Yang*) (20).

Effect: Warming up the channels, promoting the circulation of blood, dispersing cold, and resolving phlegm.

Indications: Surgical chronic inflammatory masses.

(5) *Dahuang Ruangao* (Rhubarb Ointment) (21)

Effect: Detoxicating, eliminating dampness, removing necrotic tissue, and expelling pus.

Indications: More pus in the postulcerative stage of pyogenic infective diseases.

(6) *Shengji Yuhong Gao* (Jade–red Ointment for Promoting Tissue Regeneration) (22)

Effect: Promoting the circulation of blood, eliminating necrotic tissue, removing toxic material, arresting pain, moistening the skin, and playing a part in tissue regeneration.

Indications: Ulcer with pus and necrotic tissue in or sore nearly without pus but with slowly–growing neogenetic granulation.

3. Dusting Powder Drug

(1) Drugs for Lifting Pus and Removing Necrotic Tissue

This kind of drugs have the action of promoting necrotic tissue on the sore to come off, pus and toxin in the sore to be expelled, new tissue to be generated, and the opening of the sore to heal favourably.

① *Jiu Yi Dan* (Nine to One Powder) (23)

Effect: Lifting pus and removing necrotic tissue.

Indications: Necrotic tissue on the sore in which there is more pus in the postulcerative stage of acute pyogenic infective diseases.

② *Wu Wu Dan* (Five to Five Powder) (24)

Effect: Lifting pus and removing necrotic tissue with the latter stronger than that of *Jiu Yi Dan*.

③ *Qufu Shengji San* (Powder for Removing Rotten Tissue and Pormoting Tissue Regeneration) (25)

Effect: Lifting pus, removing necrotic tissue, promoting blood circulation and tissue regeneration.

Indications: Used at the time when there is less necrotic tissue and pus. and neogenetic granulation has not seen.

(2) Drugs for Promoting Tissue Regeneration and Sore-opening Healing

Drugs of this kind have the action of promoting generation of granulation tissue and crawling-like growth of epithelium, and accelerating sore-opening healing.

① Shengji *San* (Powder for Promoting Tissue Regeneration) (26)

Effect: Promoting tissue regeneration and sore-opening healing.

Indications: Used at the time when necrotic tissue has come off, there is almost no pus existing, and granulation tissue is growing or used for chronic ulcer.

② *Shengji Zhenzhu San* (Pearl Powder for Promoting Tissue Regeneration) (27)

Effect: Promoting tissue regeneration and sore-opening healing, clearing away heat, and removing excessive water.

Indications: Exudate and itching due to chronic ulcer.

4. Drugs for Fumigating and Washing

This is a method to decoct drugs in water for the decoction, with which the affected part is fimugated and washed.

(1) *Jiedu Xiyao* (Drugs with the Action of Detoxicating Used for Washing) (28)

Effect: Clearing away heat and toxic material, promoting blood circulation, subduing swelling, removing necrotic tissue, and expelling pus.

Indications: Used in the early and postulcerative stages of acute pyogenic infective diseases or used for traumatic infection and pyogenic dermatosis.

(2) *Manxingkuiyang Xiyao* (Washing Drugs for Treating Chronic Ulcer) (29)

Effect: Removing necrotic tissue, promoting tissue regeneration, and healing sore opening.

Indications: Chronic ulcer.

4 General Surgical Diseases

4.1 Boil

Mostyl loctaed on the face, back and neck with plenty of hair follicles and sebaceous glands and common in summer and autumn, boil is an acute pyogenic infective disease due to invasion of pyogenic bacteria into a hair follicle and its sebaceous gland and sweat gland. A boil whose onset is in summer is also known as "summer–boil".

Because the head and face is where all the *Yang* of the body gets together and abundant vascular nest spread, a boil on the face, nose or lipe, if squeezed, pressed and injuried in the beginning, is liable to be turned into "*Dingchuang*", a severe syndrome or to induce " Zouhuang" , intracranial infection or pyosepticemia.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Exopathogenic summer–dampness and noxious–heat get together with endopathogenic dampness and fire to steam the muscles and skin so that parts of the channels and collaterals are obstructed, *Qi* and blood are stagnated, heat is formed, and this disease is caused.

Clinical Manifestations

There is a tip or no tip at the onset. A boil involving hair follicle at the onset has yellowish white pus–tip around which

there exist red swelling and burning pain. Following that, there appears severe pain, the centre of the boil becomes soft, the tip is festered, the pus flows our, the pain is alleviated, and the opening of the sore is gradually healed. A boil involving sweat gland at the onset is manifested as a mass without a tip. It is red, swollen and painful, and then becomes softened and suppurated. When it is cut open, the pus goes out and the opening of the sore is soon healed. Most boils are not accompanied by general symptoms, only the severe ones by such general symptoms as fever, aversion to cold, severe thirst, constipation, deep-colored urine, yellow tongue coating, and rapid pules.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Summer-boil

Main Symptoms: Local red-swelling and burning-pain which are accompanied by fever, choking sensation in the chest, thirst without desire for drink, anorexia, white greasy tongue coating, and rapid pules.

Therapeutic Method: Eliminating summer-heat and dampness, clearing away heat, and removing toxic material.

Prescreption: Modified *Qingshu Tang* (Decoction for Clearing away Summer-heat) (30)

Ingredinets:

Huoxing	Herba Pogostemonis	10 g
Peilan	Herba Eupatorii	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis	10 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Liu Yi San	six to one powder	12 g.

Administration:

Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction of 2 times, which is taken warm twice, one after breakfast in the morning, the other after supper in the evening.

(2) Boil on the Face

Main Symptoms: More severe local symptoms usually accompanied by fever, chills, thirst with desire for drink, deep-colored urine, constipation, reddened tongue with yellow dry coating, and slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat and removing toxic material as the lead.

Prescreption: *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (1) and *Huanglian Jiedu Tang*(31)

(Antidotal Decoction of Coptis), Modified.

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiaing	Herba Violae	15 g
Yejuhua	Flos Chrysanthemi Indici	15 g
Tiankuizi	Radix Semiaqulegiae	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Mudanpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times and taken warm after meal in the morning and eveing.

(3) Boils on other parts of the body may be treated with *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* if they are accompanied by general symptoms. If they have no general symptoms, *Kangjun Xiaoyan Pian* (32) (Antibacterial and Antiphlogistic Tablet) or *Niuhuang Jiedu Pian* (33) (Bezoar Tablet for Detoxicating) may be given.

2. External Treatment

(1) *Jinhuang Gao*, (17) *Daqing Gao* (18) or *Badu Gao* (14) is applied externally when there exists red-swelling, hard masses and pain in the beginning.

(2) The abscess due to a boil without tip should be timely cut open to drain the pus. Early excision of any boil on the face especially on the nosolabial triangular region is not allowed lest "*Zouhuang*" (intracranial infection and pyosepticemia) be induced. Draining pus by crushing is inhibited in treating any kind of boils, especially boils on the face. If postulcerative necrotic tissue is not easy to come off, and there exists difficulty in draining pus, small amount of *Jiu Yi Dan* (23) may be dusted on the sore in order to lift the pus and remove the necrotic tissue and then *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) (Gauze With Rhubarb Ointment) is used to cover the sore. When there has less pus on the opening of the sore, and granulation tissue is being generated, dressing changes with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) are conducted.

4.2 Carbuncle

Common in the middle-aged and the aged and usually located on the neck and back, carbuncle is an acute pyogenic infection due to invasion of pyogenic bacteria into a number of neighbourhood hair follicles and sebaceous glands. It tends to at-

tack those with diabetes.

Carbuncle is known as, in TCM, "*Youtouzu*", cellulitis with tip. It is named according to the part it affects. For example, that in the very middle of the back neck, along Du Channel and right towards the mouth cavity is called "*Naozu*", brain cellulitis. or "*Duikouzu*", cellulitis opposite the mouth, those on the back and along Du Channel are called by a joint name "*Fabeizu*", back cellulitis, those in the scapular region and on both the flanks of the back or loins are called as "*Dashouzu*", lumbodorsal cellulitis.

Etiology and Pathtogenesis

This disease is resulted from retention of pathogens in the interior and affection of wind–warm and damp–heat pathogens.

Over–intake of greasy and fatty food leads to production of dampness, heat and fire in the interior, disorder of emotions leads to stagnation of *Qi* which is then turned into fire, impairment due to excessive sexual intercourse leads to deficiency of the kidney–*Yin* and hyperactivity of fire of deficiency type. The above endogenous dampness, heat and fire combine with exogenous wind–warm and damp–heat to obstruct the channels and collaterals, causing incoordination between *Ying* and *Wei* and stagnation of *Qi* and blood. This disease results at last.

Clinical Manifestations

In the beginning, there appears a swollen, burning and painful mass on which there is a miliary tip of pus. Then the mass is getting larger and larger, the pain severer and severer, the pus tip more and more until the mass looks like a honeycomb. Finally, the skin among the tips becomes necrotic, forming a larger ulcer. The patient may have such general symptoms as fever, chills, thirst, etc. In severe cases, there may occur invasion of the toxins

into the interior of the body, i. e. pyosepticemia. Those attacking the debilitated and diabetics are serious.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Syndrome of Excess Type

① In the early Stage

Main Symptoms: Red–swelling, burning–pain, fever, chills, white or yellow tongue coating, taut slippery and rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, dispersing wind, regulating *Ying* and expelling pus.

Prescreption: Modified *Xianfang Huoming Yin* (1) (Fairy Decoction for Treating Cutaneous Infections).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua		30 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Tritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	6 g
Ruxiang	Olibanum	10 g
Moyao	Myrrha	10 g
Fangfeng	Radix Saposhinkoviae	6 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	6 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	6 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Pougongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction, which is taken warm 2 times, in the morning and evening, 1 dose

daily.

② In the suppurative stage

Main Symptoms: Festered pus–tip in the form of a honeycomb and with remarkable swelling and pain, dry mouth, fever, yellow tongue coating, and slippery rapid or full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material and promoting pus–discharge.

Prescreption: *Qingre Painong Tang* (34) (Decoction for Clearing away Heat and Expelling Pus).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	30 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Baijiangcao	Herba Patriniae	15 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	15 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction of the 2 time. The decoction is divided into 2 portions, which are taken warm with one portion in the morning and the other in the evening. 1 dose is used daily.

③In the healing stage

Main Symptoms: Subdued swelling, arrested pain, and red active neogenetic granulation.

Prescription: Generally, there is no need to take any medicines orally. If there exist symptoms due to deficiency, treatment may be given according to what will be stated in "Syndrome of Deficiency Type".

(2) Syndrome of Deficiency Type

Usually seen in the infirm with age and diabetics.

① Type of *Yin* deficiency and Excessive Toxins

Main Symptoms: Flat, dark purple and slow-festering sore from which flows out watery pus or pus with blood after its ulceration, fever, dry mouth, reddened tongue, and thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin*, Promoting the production of body fluid, clearing away heat and expelling pus.

Prescreption: *Zhuye Huangqi Tang* (35) (Decoction with Lophatherum and Astragalus).

Ingredients:

Renshen	Radix Ginseng	10 g
Qingbanxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	10 g
Maidong	Radix Ophiopogonis	10 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Shengshigao	Gypsum Fibrosum	15 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Danzhuye	Herba Lophatheri	6 g
Dengxin	Medulla Junci	0.6 g

Shengjiang Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens 3 pieces

the following 2 drugs may be added for higher curative effects:

Jinyinhua Flos Lonicerae 30 g

Zaojiaoci Spina Gleditsiae 6 g.

Administration: Decoted in water 2 times for the decoction, which is divided into 2 portions with one portion taken in the morning and the other in the evening.

② Type of Retention of Toxins due to Debility

Main Symptoms: Diffuse and slow-festering sore from which the watery pus and necrotic tissue formed after its ulceration are hard to discharge, fever, fatigue, pale red tongue with white greasy coating, and rapid feeble pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Invigorating *Qi* and blood, expelling toxic material from within.

Prescreption: *Tuoli Xiaodu San* (10).

Ingredients:

Dangshen Radix Codonopsis 15 g

Shenghuangqi Radix Astragali 30 g

Jinyinhua Flos Lonicerae 30 g

Chuanxiong Rhizoma Chuanxiong 10 g

Danggui Radix Angelicae Sinensis 15 g

Baishao Radix Paeoniae Alba 10 g

Baizhu Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae 10 g

Jiegeng Radix Platycodi 10 g

Baizhi Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 10 g

Fuling Poria 10 g

Gancao Radix Glycyrrhizae 6 g

Zaojiaoci Spina Gleditsiae 6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction, which is divided into 2 portions with one taken in the morning the other in the evening. One dose is used daily.

③ Type of Deficiency of Both *Qi* and Blood

Main Symptoms: Watery pus after ulceration, slow growing of granulation, pale complexion, listlessness, acratia, pale tongue, and thready small pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Invigorating *Qi* and blood

Prescreption: *Bazhen* Tang (11)

Ingerdients:

Renshen	Radix Ginseng	6 g
Fuling	Poria	12 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	12 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	15 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times and taken in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) If the disease condition is serious, or the toxins have invaded the interior of the body (causing general pyogenic infection), or the patient is also suffering from diabetes, Chinese and Western medicines should be integrated in the treatment.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Jin Huang Gao (17) or *Daqing Gao* (18) is locally applied externally.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Jiu Yin Dan (23) is dusted over the opening of the sore on which dressing changes with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) are conducted. If the necrotic tissue is extensive, the pus is accumulated but hard to discharge out, thourough excision of the necrotic tissue is suggested.

(3) In the healing stage

When the necrotic tissue has come off, the pus has been nearly drained up, and new granulation tissue is growing, *Shengji San* (26) is dusted over the opening of the sore and dressing changes with *Shengji Yuhonggao Youshabu* (22) are conducted.

4. 3 Acute Phlegmon

Acute phlegmon is an acute pyogenic inflammation due to invasion of pyogenic bacteria into subcutaneous and subfascial tissues, intermuscular septum or deep arealar tissue. It is included in the category of "*Fa*" of TCM, which means phlegmon.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

This disease is usually resulted from invasion of pathogenic factors into the body through skin injuries or obstruction of the channels and collaterals, incoordination between *Ying* and *Wei* and stagnation of *Qi* and blood all of which are due to damp–heat in the spleen and stomach and retention of noxious–fire. And necrotic tissue and pus are due to abundant noxious–heat.

Clinical Manifestations

Abrupter onset of a mass which is localized, darker–red (the centre is deep–colored) hot, swollen, painful, indistinctly–bordered, harder, tougher, and tender. If the tissue in the affected

part is flaccid, the swelling will be obvious but the pain is milder. If the tissue is solid, the swelling will not be remarkable but the pain will be more severe. In severe cases, there may occur extensive necrosis of the subcutanous tissue and abscess. If the affected part is at the bottom of the submaxillary fossa, there will appear dyspnea and lymphnoditis which may be accompanied by fever, chills, headache, etc.

Differential Diagnosis

1. Erysipelas

Bright redness, being in tracts, distinct and slightly-raised border, light-colored centre, burning-pain, severeness on the face with less relapses, mildness in the lower limbs with more relapses, and apparent general symptoms.

2. Carbuncle

Phlegmon-like local mass sometimes in the beginning and a number of pus tips appearing possibly after festering.

3. Angioneuro-edema

Being usually around the lips and anus, larger tract of swelling on the affected skin which has indistinct border, normal color or slight redness and feeling of itching, sudden onset and abrupt subsidence, and absence of general symptoms.

Treatment according to Stage

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Main Symptoms: Local red-swelling and burning-pain, fever, chills, yellow tongue coating, and taut slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, dissolving blood stasis and subduing swelling.

Prescription: *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (1), modified.

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	15 g
Yejuhua	Flos Chrysanthemi Indici	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	20 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	15 g
Tiankuizi	Radix Semiaquilegiae	10 g
Mudanpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times and taken in the morning andevening.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Main Symptoms: Aggravated pain, evident tenderness. dent appearing when pressed with a finger but disappearing when the finger is taken away, remarkable general symptoms, yellow tongue coating, and full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, expelling pus and subduing swelling.

Prescreption:*Jiedu Painong Tang* (36) (Decoction for Detoxicating and Expelling Pus).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	15 g

Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	15 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	15 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditisae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 time and taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of fever, dry mouth, yellow tongue coating, and full rapid pulse, the drugs added are

Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

Main Symptoms: Presence of hard swollen mass, difficulty in draining pus, clear thin pus, thin yellow tongue coating, and rapid weak pulse.

Terapeutic Method: Supporting vital–*Qi* to promote pus–discharge

Tuoli Xiaodu San(10).

Ingredients:

Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g

Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction which is divided into two portions with one portion taken in the morning and the other in the evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

① *Daqing Gao* (18) or *Jinhuang Gao* (17) is applied externally.

② *Shuangbai San* (42) (Powder of Biota Tops and Phellodendron Bark) is used whose ingredients are:

Shengdahuang Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	60 g
Cebaiye Cacumen platycladi	60 g
Huangbai Cortex Phellodendri	30 g
Zelan Herba Lycopi	30 g
Bohe Herba Menthae	30 g.

whose administration is grinding the above into fine powder, making the powderwith water and honey into ointment, and applying the plaster on the affectedpart externally.

(2) In the supputative stage

The abscess should be cut open timely for drainage of the pus.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

In case of profuse pus and necrotic tissue which is hard to come off, the following measures should be taken:

1. *Jiedu Xiyao* (28) is decocted in water to fumigate and wash the opening of the sore.

2. Small amount of *Jiu Yi Dan* (23) is dusted over thd sore and then dressing change with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) is con-

ducted.

4. 4 Erysipelas

Erysipelas is an acute infectious inflammation due to invasion of hemolytic Streptococci into the body by way of mucocutaneous injury. In TCM, its name varies with the affect parts. That on the head and face is called *"Bao Tou Huo Dan"*, erysipelas of the head, that on the lumbar region or buttucks *"Nei Fa Dan Du"*, endogenous erysipelas, that on the lower limbs *" Tui You Feng"*, wandering wind in the leg or *"Liu Huo"*, flowing fire.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Invasion of noxious-fire into the body through the mucocutaneous injury and retention of heat in the blood system lead to accumulation of excessive heat in the interior, which steams the skin and cause this disease. in addition, wind-heat and wind-fire are also responsible for those on the head and face, liver-fire also for those below the hypochondrium or over the lumbar region and hips, and damp-heat also for those on the lower limbs.

Clinical Manifestations

Erythematous erysipelas is marked by sudden onset which begins with general symptoms such as shiver, fever and headache followed by tracts of skin which is as red as red lead, burning, painful, distinctly and irregularly bordered, slightly sticking out, light-colored when pressed with a finger but red again after the finger is taken away, and abruptly spreading around. This red skin on which there appear small sores in which there is serum or pus is called pustulosus erysipelas. This red skin whose inflamma-

tion has invaded the subcutaneous tissue is called phlegmonous erysipelas. High fever, dysphoria, coma, delirium, nausea and vomiting may be caused by attack of the noxious pathogens on the interior of the body when the noxious–heat is abundant. Repeated occurrence of erysipelas on the lower limbs may lead to elephanitiasis crus, which is known as *"Dajiaofeng"* in TCM.

Treatment according to Stage

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Erysipelas on the head and face usually with the symptoms due to fire from wind–heat

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, dispersing wind and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Puji Xiaodu Yin* (Universal Relief Decoction for Disinfection) (37)

Ingredients:

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Niubangzi	Fructus Arctii	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Jiangcan	Bombyx Batryticatus	10 g
Shengma	Rhizoma Cimicifugae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Gardeniae	15 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	20 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times and taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) Erysipelas on the hypochondrium, lumbar and buttucks usually with the symptoms due to liver fire

Therapeutic Method: Removing heat and fire from the liver and detoxicating

Prescreption: *Chaihu Qinggan Tang* (38) (Bupleurum Decoction for Removing Heat from the Liver) and *Huaban Tang* (39) (Decoction Relieving Feverish Rash), modified.

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Longdancao	Radix Gentianae	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Shengzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	12 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Shengshigao	Gypsum Fibrosum	15 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Daqingye	Folium Isatidis	20 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times and taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) Erysipelas on the lower limbs usually due to fire from damp–heat.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, eliminating dampness, removing toxic material and resolving blood stasis.

Prescreption: Modified *Longdan Xiegan Tang* (40) (Decoction of Gentiana for Purging the Liver–fire) and *Wushen Tang* (3).

Ingredients:

Longdancao	Radix Gentianae	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Cheqiancao	Herba Plantaginis	12 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	12 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Tufuling	Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Zihuadiding	Radix Violae	20 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	12 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction, which is divided into 2 portions with one portion taken in the morning the other in evening. 1 dose daily.

(4) When the noxious pathogens of erysipelas have invaded *Ying*–blood, thd treatment is similar to that of epidemic febrile disease.

(5) Treatment of intermittent erysipelas on the lower limbs

10 ml of *Baihuadanshen* or *Danshen Zhusheye* (41) (Red Sage Injection) is mixed with 500 ml of 5% glucose solution and used for intravenous drip, once daily, 10–15 days consisting of one course of treatment. After the treatment, the fever will be

lowered, the erythema burning, the pain gradually relieved, the raised number of white cell count returned to normal, and the elephantiasis crus softened and even cured. This shows that *Baihuadanshen* or *Danshen Zhusheye* has greater action of resisting bacteria and inflammation, promoting blood circulation, subduing swelling and softening proliferated tissues. But careful observations are needed when this drug is being used, for it will induce allegic response sometimes.

2. External Treatment

(1) *Daqing Gao* (18), *Jinhuang Gao*(17) or *Shuangbai San*(42) (Powedr of Biota Tops and Phellodendron Bark) is externally applied to treat acute erysipelas with dressing Change being conducted once daily.

(2) Hongkong foot should be treated at the same time if it accompanies erysipelas.

4.5 Hand Infection

Hand infection is a total name of the acute pyogenic infections beneath the nails and in the tendon sheath or midpalmar space. It is usually due to invasion of pyogenic bacteria through mild trauma in the hands and included in the category of "*Dingchuang*", carbuncle on the hand of TCM. That around the nail is called "*Yanzhaoding*", that beside the nail "*Sheyanding*", that on the tip of a finger "*Shetouding*", that beneath the nail "*Shebeiding*", that on the finger belly "*Sheduding*", that between the phalans "*Zhujieding*", that at the base of, and between, two finger "*Shouyading*", and that at the centre of a palm "*Tuopanding*".

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Retention of noxious–fire from *Zang* and *Fu* combined with toxins infected due to hand trauma between the skin and muscles and in the channels and collaterals leads to stagnation of *Qi* and blood and accumulation of noxious–fire, resulting in this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

1. Paronychia (*Yanzhaoding*)

Red–swelling and burning–pain on one side of a nail or at the nail root occurring in the beginning which then spread to the opposite side, forming inflammation around the nail. When the pus goes beneath the nail, abscess there will be developed.

2. Felon (*Shetouding*)

In the beginning, there appears swelling, distension and burning–pain on the tip of a finger. Then, the swelling is spread and the finger is caused to be half–curved. This is what is called "swollen finger in the shape of a snake head". Following that, there occurs severe jumping pain and tenderness accompanied by such general symptoms as fever, headache, dry mouth, etc. If there is no timely treatment, digital osteomyelitis will be followed.

3. Pyogenic Tendinous Synovitis (*Sheduding*)

Red–swelling, burning–pain and remarkable tenderness along the affected tendon sheath which involve the whole affected finger which is caused to be in the shape of a cylinder, slightly–curved and severe painful when passive stretch of the finger is done. In addition, there are also general symptoms accompanied.

4. Midpalmar Space Infection (*Tuopanding*)

Swollen and distending palm, disappearance of palm hollow, severe edema on the dorsum of the hand, severe pain, evident

tenderness, half–curved 3rd, 4th and 5th fingers which are painful when caused to stretch straight, and remarkable general symptoms.

Treatment according to Stage

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the eraly stage

Main Symtoms: Local burning swelling and pain, evident tenderness, and chills, fever, headaché, anorexia, thin yellow thongue coating and taut slippery rapid pulse in severe cases.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, promoting blood circulation and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (1).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	30 g
Yejuhua	Flos Chrysanthemi Indici	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forythiae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Tiankuizi	Radix Semiaquilegiae	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Zaoxiu	Rhizoma Paridis	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction, which is taken warm separately in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of chills and fever, the medicine added is Chansu Wan (44) (Toad Venom Pill), 3 pills of which is swallowed each time;

In case of high fever and thirst, the drugs added are

Shengshigao Gypsum Fibrosum	30 g
Zhimu Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	15 g
Shihu Herba Dendrobii	12 g.

In case of constipation, the drug added is

Shengdahuang Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	10 g.

(2) In the middle stage

Main Symptoms: Expanded swelling, severe jumping pain and weak fluctuation due to hard and thick skin of the hand, all of which are accompanied by chills, fever, thirst, yellow tongue coating and full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material and expelling pus from within by eruption.

Prescreption: Modified *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (1).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	30 g
Yejuhua	Flos Chrysanthemi Indici	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Tiankuizi	Radix Semiaquilegiae	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Zaoxiu	Rhizoma Paridis	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction, which is taken separately in the morning and evening, 1 dose dai-

ly.

(3) In the healing stage

Main Symptoms: Discharging of yellow thick pus, gradual subsiding of swelling and pain, gradual retiring of general symptoms and healing of the opening of the sore within short term are the main symptoms in this stage. Slow festering, persistent discharging of pus with bad smell and lingering swelling are usually the sign of bone injury.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material from within and promoting tissue regeneration.

Prescreption: *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (1) and *Simiao Tang* (43) (Decoction of Four Wonderful Drugs).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Yejuhua	Flos Chrysanthemi Indici	12 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	15 g
Tiankuizi	Radix Semiaquilegiae	10 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times and taken separatelv in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External treatment

(1) In the early stage

Infection at the tip of a finger is treated like this.

Xionghuang	Realgar	10 g
Baifan	Alumen	10 g
Chansu	Venenum Bufonis	1 g

Wugong Scolopendra 1 piece.

are ground into fine powder. Each time 3 g of the powder is put into a gallbladder of a pig or an egg whose one end has been broken and stirred evenly. The infected finger is put into the gallbladder or egg until the medicinal paste is nearly coagulated. The above is repeated until the finger is cured. infection on other parts of the hand is treated by external application of *Daqing Gao* (18), *Jinhuang Gao* (17) or *Qianchui Gao* (16),

(2) In the middle stage

Timely incision for draining pus should be conducted after suppuration and before the appearance of fluctuation lest osteomyelitis occur due to blood circulatory disturbance. After incision, dressing change with *Jiu Yi Dan* (23) and *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) is conducted. If there is profuse pus being discharged from the opening of the sore and apparent red–swelling, *Jiedu Xiyao* is first used for steeping and washing the sore, following which is routine dressing change. The surface of the sore on which there is highly–raised pterygium is cut and covered with *Pingnu Dan* (Powder for treating pterygium) and *Dahuang Youshabu* (21). *Pingnu Dan* consists of:

Wumeirou	carbonized Fructus Mume	4. 5 g
Pengsha	Borax	4. 5 g
Qingfen	Calomelas	1. 5 g
Bingpian	Borneolum Syntheticum	0. 9 g.

(3) In the healing stage

When there is less pus and fresh granulation, small amount of *Shengji San* (26) is dusted over the sore and dressing change with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) is conducted.

(4) Complicated Syndrome

If the infection is complicated by necrosis of phalanx, the sequestra may be taken out with a hemostatic forceps after they are loosened up. By so doing, the sore may be healed sooner.

4. 6 Acute Lymphangitis

Acute lymphangitis is an acute inflammation due to diffusion of pyogenic bacteria through lymphatic vessels after their entering the injury on the skin. TCM includes it in the category of *"Hongsiding"*, red–streaked infection.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Up–flowing of toxins through the channels due to boils on the hands or feet, erosion from Hongkong foot or injuries on the skin and affection of exogenous intense heat is the cause of this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

After a wound on the hands or feet is infected, there appears a longitudinal red line on the skin of the inward side of the upper arm or shank which is stretching from the wound towards the heart. It may stop at the elbow or armpit in the arm, at the popliteal fossa or the groin in the leg, causing lymphadenectasis and tenderness there. When the pathologic change is superficial, the line is apparent, burning and tender. When the pathologic change is deep, the line is invisible, the affected limb is swollen and distending, and tender due to hard cord–like thing. Mild, there is no evident general symptom. Severe, there are such symptoms as chills, fever, headache, acratia, yellow tongue coating and rapid pulse, and even the toxins enter the blood system and *Zang* and *Fu* organs, resulting in severe general toxic symptoms

(septicemia due to boils).

1. Internal Treatment

Main Symptoms: Infected wound in the hands or feet which is followed by red line on the skin of the inward–side of the limbs, gradually stretching towards the heart, slightly swollen, burning and tender; aversion to cold, fever, thirst with desire for drink, yellow urine, constipation, thin yellow thogue coating, and rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, cooling blood and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: *Jinyinhua Yin* (45) (Decoction of Honeysuckle Flower).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	30 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Daqingye	Folium Isatidis	15 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Fendanpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Shengzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Zhuye	Herba Lophatheri	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times and separately taken in the morning and evening.

Modification: If the red line occurs in the upper limbs, the drugs added are

Sangzhi	Ramulus Mori	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g.

If the red line ocurs in the lower limbs, the drugs added are

Chuanniuxi Radix Cyathulae 10 g.

Huangbai Cortex Phellodendri 10 g

In case of swelling and distension of the limbs, the drugs added are

Mutong Caulis Clematidis Armandii 6 g

Fangji Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae 10 g

Zelan Herba Lycopi 15 g.

In case of constipation, the drug added is

Shengdahuang Radix et Rhizoma Rhei (added last) 10 g,

In case of primary difficulty in draining pus, the drugs added are

Zaojiaoci Spina Gleditsiae 10 g

Baizhi Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 10 g.

In the healing stage, the red line has disappeared, the pus in the original sore has been drained up, and the cure will be gradually obtained without internal treatmment.

2. External Treatment

(1) After adequate drainage of the primarily infected sore, dressing change with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) is conducted, or small amount of *Jiu Yi Dan*(23)is dusted over the sore, which is then covered with *Badu Gao* (14)

(2) If the red line is apparent, acupuncture bloodletting is performed before the front end of the red line after local disinfection of the skin, which is followed by external application of *Badu Gao* (14); or acupuncture is done at the points every two of which are 2 cm apart along the red line until the punctured points are slightly-bloodletted. This will accelerate the subsiding of the red line; or *Zijin Ding* (46) is ground in vinegar and spread on the affected part.

4. 7 Acute Lymphnoditis

This disease is an acute inflammation due to invasion of pyogenic bacteria in the infective focus into local lymph nodes through lymphatic vessels. TCM includes it in the category of "*Yong*"—carbuncle, and names that in the neck as "*Jingyong*", that under the armpit as "*Yeyong*", that in the groin as "*Kuafuyong*", and that in the popliteal fossa as "*Weizhongdu*".

Etiology and Pathogenesis

When noxious-fire in the liver and stomach accompanied by phlegm, stagnation of *Qi* of both the liver and spleen and downward-flowing of damp-heat are complicated by affection of exopathogens such as wind-warmth, wind-heat and damp-heat, the toxins on the surface of the head, face and limbs will enter the the body and flow through the channels to the neck, axillary fossa, groin and popliteal fossa so as to lead to local stagnation of *Qi* and blood there, causing this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

Swollen and painful lymph node and the skin with normal color in the early stage followed by gradually-enlarged mass which is as large as a yolk, tender, burning and painful, and such symptoms often seen as fever, chills, headache, yellow tongue coating and rapid pulse. Red skin and wave motion of the mass shows that abscess has formed.

Treatment according to Stage

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the early stage

① Cervical Lymphnoditis

Main Symptoms: Burning, swollen and painful mass as large

as a yolk and with normal skin–color, alternate attacks of chills and fever, headache, stiff neck, thin yellow tongue coating, and taut slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Dispersing wind, clearing away heat, resolving phlegm and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Niubang Jieji Tang* (47) (Arctium Fruit Decoction for Expelling Pathogens form Muscles and Skin)

Ingredients:

Niubangzi	Fructus Arctii	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	15 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophullariae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Fendanpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

② Axillary lymphnoditis.

Main Symptoms: Sudden swelling, the skin with normal color, burning–pain and limited movement of the upper limbs are often seen in the early stage and accompanied by general symptoms.

Therapeutic Method: Soothing the liver, clearing away heat, removing toxic material and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Chaihu Shugan Tang* (38) (Bupleurum Decoction for Removing Heat from the Liver).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Zhebeium	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water 2 times for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

③ Inguinal and Popliteal Lymphnoditis

Main Sympotms: Hard swelling, burning-pain and the skin which is not red or slightly red in the early stage, limited flection and extention of the affected limb seen when the mass becomes evident, and general symptoms such as fever.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, eliminating dampness, regulating the *Ying* system and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Wushen Tang* (3) and *Huoxue Sanyu Tang* (48) (Decoction for Promoting Blood Circulation and Removing Blood Stasis).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	20 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g

Thfuling	Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cythulae	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Fendanpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g.
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis (wrapped in a piece of cloth and then decocted)	10 g

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) In the suppurative stage

The main symptoms, therapeutic methods and prescriptions are the same as those of the above three types of lymphnoditis in the suppurative stage.

Main Symptoms: Localized red swollen and bright mass with distending or jumping pain and wave motion, presistent fever or shiver, dry mouth wiith desire for cold drink, reddened tongue with yellow coating, and full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat and toxic material, promoting blood circulation and expelling pus.

Recipe: Modified *Xianfang Huoming Yin* (2).

Ingredients:

Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g

Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Fangfeng	Radix Saposhinkoviae	6 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: *Shenghuangqi* Radix Astragali is added for the debilitated, the dosage is 15 g.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

The main symptoms, therapeutic methods and prescriptions are the same as those of the above three types of lymphnoditis in the ulcerative stage.

Main Symptoms: The pus is expelled, the fever is retired, the swelling is subdued and the pain is relieved after the diabrosis.

Therapeutic Method: Regulating and supplementing both *Qi* and blood and removing lingering heat.

Prescreption: Modified *Simiao Tang* (43) (decoction of Four Wonderful Drugs).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Loincerae	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction,

which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(4) Chronic and hard-healing lymphnoditis due to localized lingering hard mass may be treated with *Jingong Wan*. The following is the introduction to that kind of pill.

Ingredients:

Wugong	Scolopendra	50 pieces
Quanxie	Scorpio	30 g
Jiangcan	Bombyx Batryticatus	15 g
Shanjiazi	Squama Manitis Preparata	45 g
Chuandahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	10 g
Xionghuang	Realgar	10 g
Zhusha	Cinnabaris	6 g.

Preparation: Ground into fine powder and made into pills with cooked yellow rice which has been pounded into a paste.

Effects: Subduing swelling and dispersing mass.

Administration: 3 g of the pills is taken each time, 2–3 times daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Jinhuanggao (17) or *Daqinggao* (18) is externally applied. Or small amount of *Xiaozhongsan* (Powder for Treating Swelling) is spread over *Badugao*(14) and then externally applied on the affected part. *Xiaozhongsan* is the powder of the following ingredients:

Bibo	Fructus Piperis Longi	30 g
Caowu	Radix Aconiti Kusnezoffii	15 g
Shannai	Rhizoma Kaempferiae	15 g
Ercha	Catechu	15 g
Gansong	Radix seu Rhizoma Nardostaehyos	15 g

Xuejie	Resina Draconis	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Ruxiang	Olibanum	3 g
Moyao	Myrrha	3 g
Dingxiang	Flos Caryophylli	3 g.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Drainage of pus through incision is carried out.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

Dressing change is conducted with *Jiuyidan* (23) and *Dahuang Youshabu* (21). When the slough is scaling and fresh tissue is generating, the dressing change is conducted with *Shengjisan* (26) and *Shengjiyuhonggaoyoushabu* (22).

4.8 Acute Pyogenic Parotitis

This disease is an acute pyogenic inflammation due to invasion of pyogenic bacteria into the parotid gland through the parotid duct. Because it is located in the lower cheek, TCM names it as *"Fayi"*–suppurative inflammation of cheek.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Exhaustion of body fluid. insufficiency of *Qi* and *Yin* and weakened function of the parotid gland in secretion which occur in the advanced stage of a febrile dissease or after an operation are complicated by invasion of wind–warm or wind–heat pathogen into the parotid gland to lead to stagnation of *Qi* and blood and accumulation of noxious–heat in Shaoyang and Yangming Channels, which usually causes this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

In the beginning, there appear pain and tension around the

parotid gland and difficulty in opening the mouth. after that, the red–swelling and tenderness become obvious. In the suppurative stage, wave motion may be felt and local pressure on the affected part may make you see the red–swelling around the opening of the parotid duct out of which pus is flowing. If there is no timely incision for drainage of the pus, Diabrosis may occur somewhere, in the mucous membrane of mouth or in the external auditory canal. All of the above are accompanied by general symptoms such as chills and fever. Occasionally, there will result temporary facial paralysis, which may be healed following the cure of the disease.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1)In the early stage

Main Symptoms: Slight swelling and pain around the parotid gland, small difficulty in opening the mouth, mild fever, white and greasy tongue coating, and slightly rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Mathod: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, dispersing wind and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Puji Xiaodu Yin* (37) (Universal Relief Decoction for Disinfection).

Ingredients:

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Niubangzi	Fructus Arctii	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Jiangcan	Bombyx Batryticatus	10 g
Shengma	Rhizoma Cimicifugae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g

Gegen	Radix Puerariae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	15 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Main Symptoms: Doubled pain, slightly red skin, remarkable tenderness, probable wave motion, chills, fever, thirst, anorexia, yellow tongue coating, and taut slippery rapid or full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material and draining pus.

Prescreption: Modified *puji Xiaodu Yin* (37).

Ingredients:

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	15 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g

Zaojiaoci Spina Gleditsiae 10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

The main symptoms, therapeutic method and prescription in this stage are the same as those in general pyogenic infection except that tonifying method is not allowed.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Jinhuanggao (17) or *Daqinggao* (18) is applied externally. Or 10 g of *Erweibadusan* (powder made of same amount of *Xionghuang* Realgar and *Baifan* Alumen) and 30 g of fresh *Machixian* Herba Portulacae are pounded into a paste and applied on the affected part. Dressing change is conducted once daily.

(2) In the suppurative stage

There exists difficulty for the pus to flow out through the tact and strong capsule of the parotid gland. In order to prevent the pus from affecting other parts such as the external auditory canal, incision for draining the pus should be conducted as early as possible once the diagnosis is made.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

Dressing change is conducted as that is done in treating general pyogenic infection.

4. 9 Abscess of Iliac Fossa

Abscess of iliac fossa is a pyogenic infection in the iliac fassa. It is common in children. Because the iliopsoas muscle is irritated

by the inflammation, the leg of the affected side is kept flexed. That's why TCM names this disease as *Suo Jiao Liu Zhu*, abscess of iliac fossa with flexed leg.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Affection of exogenous summer–dampness or scatter of noxious–heat due to skin and external diseases to the iliac fossa along the vessels leads to local obstruction of the channels and collaterals, causing stagnation of both *Qi* and blood. Prolonged stagnation of this kind makes heat produced and this excessive heat turns the flesh into abscess. Or toxins due to infection of the trauma in the lower limbs or due to skin and external diseases flow to the iliac fossa along the vessels and result in this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

In the beginning, there is pain in the iliac fossa, the hip joint is kept flexed, the stretch and flection of the knee joint remain nearly normal, and legtraction will cause severe pain. Then the pain grows more and more severe and mass and tenderness may be felt in the iliac fossa. Meanwhile, there exist general symptoms such as chills, fever and anorexia. High fever and enlarged mass with soft center indicate the formation of pus. After yellow and thick pus is discharged, all the symptoms are gradually relieved until the disease is cured. Usually, the flexed hip joint will be returned to normal only through functional training.

Differential Diagnosis

1. Retrocecal appendiceal abscess

There exist typical shifting pain and localized tenderness in the right lower abdomen. The site of tenderness or tender mass is inward above abscess of iliac fossa. The psoas test is positive. The hip joint is not kept flexed.

2. Cold-natured abscess of spondylocace

Slow onset, lumbago, tidal fever, night sweat, cold-natured abscess below the groin, obvious wave motion, no sign of acute inflammation, remarkedly-accelerated blood sedimentation, and spondylocace shown on the roentgenogram.

Treatment

1. internal Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Main Symptoms: Chills, fever, headache, sore of the lower limbs, pain or mass in the iliac fossa, flexed hip joint of the affected side, thin yellow tongue coating, and taut rapid pulse.

Theurapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, promoting blood circulation and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (1)

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Tiankuizi	Radix Semiaquilegiae	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: *Xingxiao Wan* (49) (Pill of Olibanum, Myrrha, Musk and Realgar) is added for the severe cases. 1. 5 g of the pills

is swallowed each time, twice daily.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Main Symptoms: Persistent high fever, enlarged mass with soft center, evident tenderness, flexed hip joint of the affected side, reddened tongue with yellow coating, and taut slippery rapid or full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, expelling toxins form within and draining pus.

Prescreption: Modified *Wuwei Xiaodu Yin* (1)

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyąthulae	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sineneis	10 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

Main Symptoms: The pus has been discharged, the pain has been relieved, the pulse has been calmed, the fever has retired, and the sore has been healed on time. So there is no need to take any medicine. If the pus is clear and thin, the sore is unhealing

and the pulse is rapid and weak, treatment to be carried out is as follows.

Therapeutic Method: Tonifying *Qi* and blood, expelling toxins from within and promoting generation of new tissue.

Prescreption: *Tuoli Xiaodu San* (10)

Ingredients:

Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sineneis	15 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Daqinggao (18) or *Jinhuanggao* (17) is applied externally.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Timely incision for draining pus is conducted.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

Drainage and dressing change are conducted with *Dahuang Youshabu*. (21)

4.10 General Pyogenic Infection

General pyogenic infection is a systemic reaction due to invasion of pyogenic bacteria and their toxins into blood circulation. It is similar to such severe syndromes in TCM as "*Dingchuang Zouhuang*"—carbuncle complicated by septicemia or "*Judu Neixian*"—invasion of toxins due to cellulitis into the interior.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

When noxious-fire due to furuncle impairs the vital *Qi* or noxious-heat due to boils takes the advantage of weakened vital-*Qi* to invade the interior, the toxins will scatter into the *Ying* and blood systems where they attack *Zang* and *Fu* and cause this disease. Attack of noxious-heat on the heart leads to irritability, coma and delirium; impairment of the liver by noxious-heat, spasm and clonic convulsion; injury of the spleen and stomach by noxious-heat, abdominal distension and eructation with fetid odor; damage of the lung by noxious-heat, dyspnea and asthma; attack of noxious-heat on the kidney, oliguria and anuresis; invasion of noxious-heat into blood, skin eruption and apistaxis.

Clinical Manifestations

Sudden onset, severe condition, rapid development, evident general toxic symptoms such as shiver and high fever (40℃ -41℃), headache, nausea, abdominal distension, profuse sweat, thirst, anemia, acratia, ecchymosis on the skin and mucous membrane, reddened tongue with yellow coating, thready rapid pulse; and coma, delirium, irritability and even toxic shock in severe cases; shifting abscess on the surface of the body seen when

bacterial emboli have entered blood circulation; corresponding symptoms indicating abscess in the internal organs seen when the shifting abscess has reached the interior ;higher white cell count, higher neutrophilic granulocyte count, higher juvenile leukocyte count, toxic granules in white cells in severe cases. and nositive bloood test made when there are shiver and high fever.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Type of Intense Heat in Both *Qi* and *Ying* Systems (to be equal to the period of toxemia)

Main Symptoms: Sudden onset, shiver, high fever, most thirst, profuse sweat, scanty and deep-colored urine, reddened tongue with thin yellow or yellow rough coating, and taut rapid or full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Mathod: Clearing away heat from the *Qi* system and removing toxins from the *Ying* system

Prescreption: *Baihu Tang* (50) (White-tiger Decoction) and *Huanglian Jiedu Tang* (31), modified.

Ingredients:

Shengshigao	Gypsum Fibrosum	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	30 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	15 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g

Shanzhi Fructus Gardeniae 10 g

Huangqin Radix Scutellariae 10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of high fever, spasm and convulsion, the drug added is

Lingyangjiao Fen Cornu Saigae Tataricae (in the form of powder and taken after being infused in water) 1–1.5 g.

In case of constipation, the drugs added are

Shengdahuang Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 10 g (added last)

Mangxiao Natrii Sulfas 10 g (taken after being infused in water)

In case of profuse and dribbing sweat due to deficiency of *Qi*, the drugs added are

Shenghuangqi Radix Astragali 30 g

Shashen Radix Glehniae 15 g

Xiyangshen Radix Panacis Quinquefolii 6 g.

(2) Type of Invasion of Heat into the *Ying* and Blood Systems (to be equal to the period of septicemia or pyemia)

Main Symptoms: Persistent high fever, coma, irritability, skin eruption, epistaxis, deep red tongue with little dry coating, and thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat and toxic material and cooling the blood and *Ying* systems

Prescreption: Modified *Qingying Tang* (52) (Decoction for Clearing Heat from *Ying* System).

Ingredients:

Xijiao Fen	Cornu Rhinocerotis (taken after being infused in water)	3 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos lonicerae	45 g
Daqingye	Folium Isatidis	30 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	15 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Chisaho	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Zaoxiu	Rhizoma Paridis	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Shengzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Danzhuye	Herba Lophatheri	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of coma and delirium, 1 bolus of *Angong Niuhuang Wan* (53) (Bezoar Bolus for Resurrection) is added which is taken after being infused in water.

If there is abscess, the drugs added are

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g.

In case of thick sputum, the drugs added are

Yuxingcao	Herba Houttuyniae	30 g
Dongguaren	Semen Benincasae	15 g.

If there appears jaundice, the drugs added are

Yinchen	Herba Artemisiae Scopariae	30 g
Jinqiancao	Herba Lysimachiae	30 g.

In case of anuresis, the drugs added are

Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis	10 g
Zhuye	Herba Lophatheri	10 g.

(3) Type of *Yin* Depletion due to Intense Heat. (to be equal to the advanced stage of septicemia and pyemia)

Main Symptoms: Fever, irritability, profuse sweat, warm limbs, dyspnea, thirst with desire for cold drink, dry fissured lips, red and dry tongue, and thready weak pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing Yin to activate pulse, cooling blood and detoxicating.

Prescreption: Modified *Qingying Tang* (52) and *Shengmai San* (54) (Pulse–activating powder)

Ingredients:

Xijiao Fen	Cornu Rhinocerotis (taken after being infused in water)	3 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	45 g
Daqingye	Folium Isatidis	30 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	15 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Zaoxiu	Rhizoma Paridis	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Shengzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Danzhuye	Herba Lophatheri	6 g
Xiyangshen	Radix Panacis Quinquefolii	10 g
Wuweizi	Fructus Schisandrae	10 g

Maidong Radix Ophiopogonis 15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(4) Type of *Yang* Deleption due to Excess of Heat

(to be equal to toxic shock)

Main Symptoms: Greasy sweat, cold limbs, weak breathing, no thirst, pale and moist tongue, and indistinct pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Recuperating depleted *Yang* and rescuing patients from collapse

Prescreption: *Shen Fu Tang* (55) (Decoction of Ginseng and Prepared Aconte Root).

Ingredients:

Renshen Radix Ginseng 15 g

Shufuzi Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata 15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water for oral dose.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Before pus has fromed in the mass, *Daqinggao* (18) or *Jinhuanggao* (17) is applied externally.

(2) In the suppurative stage

After abscess has formed, incision for drainage should be done as early as possible.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

In case of smaller sore opening but more necrotic tissue, the opening should be enlarged and the necrotic tissue cut off for the purpose of free drainage. Routine dressing change is conducted on the opening as it is done in treating general ulcer.

(4) If this disease is caused by large–area burn, intestinal obstruction or infection of biliary tract, treatment of burn wound or

operation is needed in order to eliminate the origin.

Severe general pyogenic infection should be treated in the way of integrated Western and Chinese medicines. For instance, proper antibiotics are chosen according to bacterial culture of blood, imbalance of water–electrolyte is corrected, blood transfusion for severe cases is repeated again and again, and adequate vitamins are given.

4. 11 Lymphoid Tuberculosis

Lymphoid tuberculosis is a chronic specific infection due to invasion of Mycobacteria tuberculosis into the lymphonodi cervicales. It is common in children and youth. Because the tubercles are in the form of strings of beads, TCM calls this disease as scrofula.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

In the early stage, fire due to stagnation of the liver–*Qi* turns body fluid into phlegm, the fire and phlegm are combined to form the cause. Up to the advanced stage, the kidney–*Yin* has been burned by the ever–growing liver–fire or both *Qi* and blood have been exhausted because pus stands dribbing, leading to fever due to *Yin* deficiency or deficiency of both *Qi* and blood. Sometimes, deficiency of the lung and kidney will lead to exhaustion of body fluid, accumulation of fire and failure of the lung fluid to be distributed, the accumulated fire will burn the obstructed fluid into phlegm, and the fire and phlegm are combined to cause this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

In the early stage, there appears on one or both sides of the

neck one or more lymphoid masses which are in different sizes and with normal color but not fixed and nor painful. Then, the masses grow larger, cement with the skin and combine into lumps. With the development of the disease. the central part of a mass is softened, waved and deep-colored, with abscess of cold nature formed. After dibrosis, thin pus and caseous necrotic tissue are discharged from the sore opening, within which a creeping cavity is formed and around which there appears dark purple skin and sinuses and ulcer which are hard to heal. In the middle and advanced stages, there may exist tidal fever, sweat, poor appetite and general weakness.

Diagnosis and Differential Diagnosis

Sure diagnosis may be made according to tubercular contact history, local swollen lymph nodes, cold-natured abscess, unhealing sinuses and ulcer or quite a few scars, accelerated blood sedimentation, and pulmonary tuberculosis found through chest-fluoroscopy. Infantile tuberculin test may aid in diagnosis. When there is difficulty in diagnosis, examination with pathological section of biopsy specimen may be made. This disease should be clinically differentiated from the following ones.

(1) Chronic lymphnoditis

It is usually due to stomatoglossitis. The swollen lymph nodes are bright, movable, half-hard and slightly tender. There is no general symptom.

(2) Metastatic carcinoma of cervical lymph node

It is usually due to shifting of malignant tumors of the mouth and nasopharynx to the lymphonodi cervicales.

The subjects are usually more than 40, the uneven and fixed masses are as hard as stone. And there often exist headache and

epistaxis.

(3) Malignant lymphoma

In the beginning, the lymph nodes are swollen and movable. Soon, they cement with each other into larger and harder ones, which are fixed at the base. Meanwhile, there exist general lymphadenectasis, hepatosplenomegaly and fever.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Main Symptoms: Swollen cervical lymph nodes which are movable, not painful and normally-colored, or cement with each other into lumps, general symptoms not seen usually, white tongue coating, and taut thready slippery pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Relieving the depressed liver, resolving phlegm and dispersing mass.

Prescreption: Modified *Xiaoyao San* (7) and *Neixiao Luoli Wan* (97) (Bolus for Resolving Scrofula in the Interior).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Qingbanxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	10 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	30 g
Maozhaocao	Radix Ranunculus Ternati	30 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	30 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g

Kunbu	Thallus Echloniae seu Laminariae	15 g
Haizao	Sargassum	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) In the middle stage

Main Symptoms: The masses have grown larger, comented with the skin and the peripheral tissue, become deep red, and felt a bit hot, slightly tender and wavely moved. There may exist acratia, low fever, etc. with white or slightly yellow tongue coating and taut rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, resolving phlegm and expelling pus from within by eruption.

Prescreption: *Maozhaocao Tang* (Decoction of Ternate Buttercup Root), a proven prescription.

Ingredients:

Maozhaocao	Radix Ranunculus Ternati	30 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) In the late stage

Main Symptoms: Ulceration of the abscess, thin pus with caseous necrotic tissue, greyish white or pale granulation, hard-healing sore opening with creeping cavity, all of the above are accompanied by tidal fever, night sweat, lassitude, weakness, anorexia, light-red tongue with thin white coating, and deep thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Replenishing *Qi*, nourishing *Yin* and expelling pus from within by eruption and clearing away heat.

Recipe: *Simiao Tang* (43), modified.

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Huangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Yuzhu	Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati	15 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Lücao	Herba Humuli Scandentis	15 g
Chaomaiya	parched Fructus Hordei Germinatus	15 g
Duanmuli	forged Concha Ostreae	30 g
Baiwei	Radix Cynanchi Atrati	10 g
Zhebeimu	Búlbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Chaozaojiaoci	parched Spina Gleditsiae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, whichis taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Jingong Wan (56) (Gold Centipede Bolus), *Xiaojin Dan* (57) (Minor Golden Bolus) or *Sanjie Pian* (58) (Tablet for Resolving Masses) may be taken in the treatment of the whole course. If

necessary, antituberculotics are added. The following is the introduction to *Sanjie Pian.*

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	2 500 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	2 500 g
Maozhaocao	Radix Ranunculus Ternati	2 500 g
Xuanshen	Rhizoma Cyperi	2 500 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	2 500 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	2 500 g
Yujin	Radix Curcumae	2 500 g
Juhong	Exocarpium Citri Rubrum	2 500 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	2 500 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	2 500 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	2 500 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	2 500 g
Kunbu	Thallus Echloniae Laminariae	2 500 g
Haizao	Sargassum	2 500 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	3 750 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	5 00 g
Tubeimu	Rhizoma Bolbostemmae	1 250 g
Shancigu	Pseudobulbus Cremastrae seu Pleiones	1 250 g.

Preparation: Ground into fine powder and made into tablets, each of which weighs 0.3 g.

Effect: Softening and resolving masses, promoting blood circulation and removing blood stasis, subduing swelling and relieving pain.

Administration: 10 tablets are taken each time, 3 times daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Xiaohe Gao (59) or *Yanghe Jiening Gao* (15) is applied externally on the affected part. Or, *Huozhenliaofa* is used which is operated as follows: locally disinfect the affected part, burn a needle red over an alcohol lamp, rapidly insert the needle into a hard mass, and withdraw the needle and apply externally *Xiaohe Gao* (59). Do this once a week.

(2) In the middle stage

Incision for discharging pus after suppuration.

(3) In the late stage

After ulceration, small amount of *Wuwu Dan* (24) is spread over the sore and then dressing change with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) is conducted on the sore in order that the necrotic tissue removed and new flesh be produced sooner. For those allergic to *Wuwu Dan*, *Qianchui Gao* (16) or *Maoyancao* Gao may be used instead. *Maoyancao Gao* is prepared this way. A bundle of *Maoyancao* Herba Euphorbiae Lunulatae is decocted in water for the decoction, which is concentrated into a paste for use.

4. 12 Acute Appendicitis

Acute appendicitis, the commonest acute abdomen in surgery, is the acute inflammation of the appendix due to various pathogenic factros. TCM includes it in the category of intestinal abscess.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Disorder of *Qi* in the intestinal tract and dysfunction of the appendix due to affection of the six pathogenic factors, improper diet, overstrain and emotional disturbance lead to stagnation of *Qi* and blood. Prolonged stagnation results in production of heat.

Long–time of excessive heat causes formation of necrotic tissue and pus. The disease is thus developed. As the excessive heat turns into fire, syndromes due to fire are usually seen. For instance, when noxious–fire is accumulated in the *Yangming Fu*. there will appear syndromes of excess type marked by fullness, distension, dryness and excessiveness; when fire is combined with damp–heat, syndromes of damp–heat manifested as diarrhea, tenesmus, etc; when noxious–fire stays in the interior, cold syndrome in which the deeper the pathogenic heat, the colder the limbs.

Clinical Manifestations

1. Symptoms

(1) Abdominal pain

Paroxysmal migratory pain due to stagntion of *Qi* begins in the upper abdomen or around the umbilicus. Several hours to 24 hours or so later, the pain shifts to the appendix in the right lower abdomen and becomes fixed and persistent, which is a sign of stagnation of *Qi* and blood. This shifting pain which finally stays in the right lower abdomen is a typical symptom of acute appendicitis. Pain due to acute attack of chronic appendicitis usually begins in the right lower abdomen and dose not shift.

(2) Symptoms of the gastrointestinal tract

They are nausea, vomiting, constipation, dry stools or diarrhea. In the early stage (type of stagnation), the nausea and vomiting are due to failure of the *Fu–Qi* to descend and due to upward adverse flowing of the stomach–*Qi*, with nausea more evident than vomiting. In the suppurative stage (type of accumulated heat), the vomiting is due to delivery of noxious–heat to the stomach. In the ulcerative stage (type of noxious–heat), the vom-

iting is due to obstruction of the *Fu–Qi* and its adverse flow, the dry stools is due to impairment of body fluid by heat or due to accumulation of excessive heat in the interior, and diarrhea and tenesmus are due to downward flowing of damp–heat.

(3) General symptoms

In the early stage (type of stagnation), they may be headache, dizziness, lassitude and acratia, which are caused by incoordination between *Ying* and *Qi* and disorder of *Qi* and blood. Following that, there will appear fever, thirst, yellow urine, etc. which are due to heat coming from long stagnation of *Qi* and blood.

2. Signs and Examination

(1) Tongue coating and pulse

White tongue coating and taut tense pulse are usually seen in the early stage. Deep red tongue with yellow greasy or yellow dry coating and rapid or slippery rapid or full rapid pulse appear when heat has resulted from stagnation.

(2) Local signs

Localized tenderness in the right lower abdomen, rebound pain in severe cases, guarding of the abdominal muscles, painful mass palpable in the right lower abdomen are usually the peripheral infiltrating signs due to appendiceal abscess or gangrenous appendicitis.

(3) Examination

Positive psoas test is usually seen in retrocecal appendicitis. Positive internal obturator test usually shows pelvic appendicitis or inflammation at the far–end of the appendix and near the obturator fascia. Positive colic retrograde air test indicates that the inflammatory part in the right lower abdomen has connected

with the cecum. Tenderness in the right upper found in digital examination of rectum indicates the lower position of the appendix; fullness of the rectum, sharp tenderness and wave motion point out that plevic abscess has formed. Guarding of abdominal muscle is the manifestation occurring when the parietal peritoneum is stimulated, which is usually in gangrenous appendicitis or peritonitis due to appendiceal perforation. Positive reaction fo tenderness is seen in 60–80% patients when pressure is exerted on both the acupoints of Lanwei(EX–LE 7) between Zusanli (ST 36) and Shangjuxu(ST 37).

(4) Test

White blood cell and neutrophil counts are usually higher. A small number of white and red blood cells may be found through routine uronoscopy when appendicitis has referred to the neighboring ureter or the the urinary bladder. If there are a great number of red and white blood cells, differentiation form diseases of the urinary system is needed.

Diagnosis

The diagnosis may be made according to the main sign of acute appendicitis–typical migrating pain to the right lower abdomen and localized severe tenderness in the right lower abdomen, the symptoms, test for inducing appendiceal tenderness and lab examinations. But differentiation from relevant diseases is needed when a suspected disease is diagnosed or a non–typical patient is treated.

Type and Treatment

1. Indications

(1) Acute simple appendicitis and mild pyogenic appendicitis.

(2) Periappendicular abscess with the mass smaller than one phrase and mild general toxic symptoms.

(3) Appendiceal perforation complicated by localized or diffuse peritonitis and with milder toxic and other regular symptoms.

2. Commonly-used Treating Methods

(1) Treatment according to the Types

①Type of Stagnation of *Qi* and Blood (in the early stage)

This type is similar to simple acute appendicitis or the late stage of subsiding of periappendicular abscess.

Main Symptoms: This stage is the period in which *Qi* and blood are stagnated and there are the follwing symptoms and signs: tenderness and rebound pain in the right lower abdomen, not obvious guarding of the abdominal muscles or palpable masses, distension and fullness in the epigastrium and abdomen, nausea, anorexia, normal stools or constipation, no fever or mild fever, normal or slightly higher white blood cell count, pain shifting around the umbilicus occurring when stagnation of *Qi* is severe, fixed pain aggraviated when pressed or masses seen when stagnation of blood is severe, thin white tongue coating, and taut tense or taut slightly rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Purgating, promoting the flow of *Qi* and removing blood stasis which are strengthened by clearing away heat and toxic material

Prescreption: *Lanwei Huayu Tang* (60) (Decoction for Treating Appendicitis by Removing Blood Stasis).

Ingredients:

Chuanlianzi	Fructus Toosendan	15 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	15 g

Yanhusuo	Rhizoma Corydalis	10 g
Fendanpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Muxiang	Radix Aucklandiae	10 g
Shengdahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei (added later)	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For severe stagnation of *Qi*, the drugs added are

Qingpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride	10 g
Wuyao	Radix Linderae	10 g.

For severe stagnation of blood, the drugs added are

Hongteng	Caulis Sargentodoxae	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g.

For fever, the drugs added are

Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g.

For masses, the drugs added are

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g
Sanleng	Rhizoma Sparganii	10 g
Ezhu	Rhizoma Gurcumae	10 g.

For abdominal distension and nausea, the drugs added are

Zhiqiao	Fructus Aurantii	1 g
Zhuru	Caulis Bambusae in Taeniam	0 g.

② Type of Accumulated Heat (in the suppurative stage)

This type is equal to pyogenic appendicitis, acute appendicitis complicated by localized peritonitis and periappendicular ab-

scess.

Main Symptoms: This stage is the period in which heat is being produced due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood, symptoms due to damp–heat are also seen and there are the following symptoms and signs: severe abdominal pain in the right lower abdomen, obvious guarding of the abdominal muscles or localized masses, such symptoms existing when dampness is more severe than heat as mild fever, thirst without desire for drink, fullness in the epigastrium and abdomen, loose stools, yellow and turbid urine, reddened tongue with yellow greasy coating, and taut slippery rapid pulse, and such symptoms existing when heat is more severe than dampness as high fever, thirst with desire for drink, constipation, yellow urine, reddened tongue with yellow dry coating, and taut rapid or full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Purgating, clearing away heat and removing toxic material which are enhanced by promoting the circulation or *Qi* and blood, eliminating dampness and expelling pus.

Prescreption: *Lanwei Qinghua Tang* (61) (Decoction for Treating Appendicitis by Clearing away Heat and Eliminating Dampness).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Fendanpi	Cortex Moutan	15 g
Shengdahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei (added Later)	15 g
Chuanlianzi	Fructus Toosendan	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily. Or decocted in water for the decoction, which is taken 4 times, 2 doses daily.

Modification: When dampness is more severe than heat, the drugs added are

Peilan	Herba Eupatorii	10 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	30 g
Baikou	Semen Amomi Cardamomi	10 g
Huogeng	Herba Pogostemonis	10 g.

When heat is more severe than dampness, the drugs added are

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g.

③ Type of Noxious–heat (in the ulcerative stage)

This type includes severe gangrenous appendicitis or acute appendicitis complicated by diffuse peritonitis.

Main Symptoms: This stage is the period in which excessive noxious–heat is being turned into fire, deteriorated syndromes tend to appear and there exist the follewing symptoms and signs: severe abdominal pain, obvious stimulation sign due to peritonitis, higher white cell count, such symptoms occurring when *Yin* has been damaged by noxious–heat as high fever or chills and fever, sweating, thirst, dry lips, flushed face, reddened eyes, constipation, scanty and deep–colored urine, deep red tongue with yellow dry coating, and taut rapid or full rapid pulse, and such symptoms occurring when both *Yin* and then *Yang* have been impaired by noxious–heat as not high fever or no fever, listlessness, cold limbs, spontaneous sweat, dry tongue with yel-

low dry or black coating, and deep thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material and purgating which are reinforced by promoting the flow of *Qi* and cooling blood.

Prescreption: *Lanwei Qingjie Tang* (62) (Decoction for Treating Appendicitis by Clearing away Heat and Detoxicating).

Ingredients:

jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Shengdahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei (added later)	30 g
Dongguaren	Semen Benincasae	30 g
Fendanpi	Cortex Moutan	15 g
Baijiangcao	Herba Patriniae	30 g
Muxiang	Radix Aucklandiae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily. Or decocted in water for the decoction, which is taken 4 times, 2 doses daily.

Modification: If *Yin* has been damaged by noxious-heat, the drugs added are

Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	15 g.

When noxious-heat has injurred *Yin* and impaired *Yang*, the drugs added are

Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	12 g
Ganjiang	Rhizoma Zingiberis	9 g.

In case of abdominal distension, the drugs added are

Chuanhoupo Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis 10 g

Laifuzi Semen Raphani 12 g.

In case of vomiting, the drugs added are

Jiangbanxia Rhizoma Pinelliae Preparata 10 g

Zhiqiao Fructus Aurantii 10 g.

In case of high fever and dire thirst. the drug added is

Shengshigao Gypsum Fibrosum 30 g.

No matter what type the acute appendicitis belongs to, the herbal medicines having been taken before should be used for another week in order to ensure the curative effects.

② Acupuncture Therapy

Indications: Acute simple appendicitis or mild pyogenic appendicitis. (This therapy may be used as an adjuvant one when the other types of appendicitis are treated.)

Body Acupuncture:

Point Selection: Lanwei (EX–LE 7), Shangjuxu (ST 37), Zusanli (ST 36), and point of tenderness of the appendix in the right lower abdomen (non–fixed point).

Modification: In case of nausea and vomiting, the point added is

Neiguan (PC 6).

In case of fever, the points added are

Quchi (LI 11) and Hegu (LI 4).

Manipulation: Reducing method, 20–30 minutes each time, 2–3 times daily.

Auriculoacupuncture:

Point Selection: Appendix, tender point of appendix, large intestine, sympathetic point and Shenmen (HT 7).

Manipulation: The needles are retained for 30 minutes after strong stimulation has been induced, 1–2 times daily.

(3) External Treatment

Prescreption 1: *Suan Xiao Huang Cu Huji.*

Indications: Acute simple appendicitis and pyogenic appendicitis in its early stage.

Ingredients:

Dasuan	Bulbus Allii	60 g
Mangxiao	Natrii Sulfas	30 g
Dahuang Fen	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei (in the form of powder)	30 g
Cu vinegar		a proper amount.

Administration: *Mangxiao* and *Dasuan* are pounded into a paste. The most painful part on the right lower abdomen is first coated with vaseline so as to prevent burn and then covered with the paste. 2 hours later, the paste is taken off and a new paste made of *Dahuang Fen* and *Cu* is externally applied for 6–8 hours, during which *Cu* may be added to moisturize the drying paste or a piece of plastic film is covered over the paste to prevent the *Cu* in it from volatilizhing.

Prescreption 2: *Xiaoyan San*

Indications: Pyogenic appendicitis and appendiceal abscess complicated by peritonitis.

Ingreedients:

Furongye	Folium Hibisci	300 g
Dahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	300 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	250 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	250 g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	250 g

Bingpian	Borneolum Syntheticum	10 g.

Administration: The above is ground into fine powder. The powder is mixed into a paste with yellow rice wine or the decoction of scallion and yellow rice wine. The paste is externally applied on the affected part, twice daily.

Prescreption 3: *Xiaojie Gao*

Indications: Chronic inflammatory mass formed in the late stage of appendicitis.

Ingredients:

Shengbanxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	30 g
Shengnanxing	Rhizoma Arisaema	30 g
Shengchuanwu	Radix Aconiti	30 g
Zhuyazao	Fructus Gleditsiae Abnormalis	30 g
Tubeimu	Rhizoma Bolbostemmae	30 g
Jianghuang	Rhizoma Curcumae Longae	30 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	30 g
Dahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	30 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	60 g
Baijiangcao	Herba Patriniae	60 g
Furongye	Folium Hibisci	60 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	45 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	15 g.

Administration: The above ingredients are ground into fine powder for use. A proper amount of the powder is mixed with vaseline or honey into a paste. The paste is externally applied on the affected part, once daily.

(4) Adjuvant Treatment and Points for Attention

① While the above treatments are carried out, the patients should be kept in bed and liquid or semi–liquid diet or fast is

suggested.

② Patients with peritonitis should be kept semireclining position.

③ Fluid infusion should be conducted for patients in fast or dehydration and acid–base dysequilibrium.

④ Gastrointestinal decompression should be done for patients with appendicitis complicated by diffuse peritonitis or paralytic intestinal obstruction, and antibiotics should be given to the severe cases.

⑤ In the course of treatment with non operation, careful observation is imperative to the changes of abdominal pain, signs of the abdomen. blood picture, body temperature, tongue coating and pulse. Operation should be performed if the disease is being deteriorated.

⑥ Treatment with operation is necessary to acute pyogenic or gangrenous appendicitis with severe clinical symptoms, acute appendiceal perforation complicated by diffuse peritonitis and with shock, acute appendicitis in the young and aged, and repeated recurrence of chronic appendicitis.

5 Mastosis

5. 1 General Statement

Mastosis is common in female adults owing to their unique physiological characteristics.

Physiology of Female Mammary Gland

A girl has her mammae and papillae on the both sides increased gradually when she reaches her adolescence. As she is 14, an age when menstrual function begins, *Ren* Channel starts to function and Taichong Channel is in full swing, she begins to have menstruation monthly, her mammary tissue grows rapidly, with a breast raised like a semi-hemisphere, the papilla becoming larger and sticking out and the mammary areola widened and deep-colored, which indicates that she is nearly well-developed. In her pregnant and breast feeding periods, her mammae are gradually enlarged with the weight doubled or more, for the lactiferous ducts are growing and becoming more in number and the mammary acinises begin to secrete milk. After the breast feeding period, her mammae decline a little and then remain relatively stable. After the climacterium, as the menstrual function comes to an end, the kidney-*Qi* declines and amenorrhea occurs, her mammae begin to become smaller, flaccid or shrivelled.

Milk originates from the stomach, comes from *Qi* and blood.

It is, in fact, derived from food essence. Therefore, when the spleen and stomach function vigorously and *Qi* and blood are adequate, milk is profuse and thick. Scarce and thin milk is resulted from dysfunction of the spleen and stomach and insufficiency of *Qi* and blood. In addition, milk is related to *Chong* and *Ren* Channels, which were the sea of *Qi* and blood. Those going upward are turned into milk, while those going downward, menstruation. In the breast feeding period, the *Qi* and blood in *Chong* and *Ren* Channels only go upward, that's why there is no menstruation. After the breast feeding period, the *Qi* and blood only go downward, that's why there is menstruation. Furthermore, the liver plays an important role in the secretion, excretion and control of milk, for it takes charge of dredging. When there is disorder of the liver–*Qi* and dysfunction in dredging, milk will be stagnated. Stagnation of milk will lead to mastitis or disturb the secretion of milk to cause hypogalactia or lack of lactation.

Relationship between Mammae and *Zang–Fu* or Channels

The mammae are close related to *Zang–Fu* such as the spleen, stomach, liver, gall–bladder and kidney and to the channels such as *Chong* and *Ren* . For instance, Liver Channel of Foot–Jueyin goes throughout the diaphragm and hypochondriac region, Gall Bladder Channel of Foot–Shaoyang passes through the supraclavicular fossa, thorax, liver and inner side of the hypochondrium, Kidney Channel of Foot–Shaoyin connects the mammae by going upward through the liver and diaphragm, Stomach Channel of Foot–Yangming goes through the mammae, diaphragm, stomach and spleen, Spleen Channel of Foot–Taiyin passes throughout the Stomach and goes upward to

the diaphragm, *Ren* Channel originates from the uterus and goes upward through Guanyuan (RN 4) to reach the thorax, and *Chong* Channel originates from the uterus, goes upward by the umbilicus and distributes in the thorax. From what is stated above, we can see that the papillae connect with the liver, the mammae with the stomach and the breasts of a male with the kidney, and that mastosis is close related to Liver, Stomach, Gall-bladder, Spleen, Kidney, *Chong* and *Ren* Channels, especially to the first two. The above is a part of TCM theorise, which is of certain practical significance in preventing and treating mastosis.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

General infectious disorders of the mammae are usually due to affection of the six pathogenic factors, improper diet, stagnation of the liver-*Qi* or accumulated excessive heat in the stomach. Mastosis due to endocrine disturbance and non-tumorous or tumorous diseases are usually caused by insufficiency of the liver and kidney, disorder of *Chong* and *Ren* Channels, depressed liver-*Qi*, deficiency of the spleen, accumulation of phlegm, obstructioin of the channels by blood stasis, etc. Among the causes, stagnation of the liver-*Qi* is the main one. So, whether a mastosis is acute, chronic, deficient or excessive, it should be treated with drugs having the action of relieving the depressed liver so as to dredge the mammary vessels and promote the circulation of *Qi* and blood.

Symptoms and Signs of Mastosis

1. Mass in Mamma

Mass is the main sign of mammary infection, tumor or non-tumor. What should be paid attention to about it is as fol-

lows: site, time of onset, size, number, speed of growing, distinct or indistinct border, smooth or unsmooth surface, hardness, movability, pain or no pain, tenderness or no tenderness, involvement of one or both mammae, and relation to menstruation, pregnancy, breast-feeding, infection and trauma. Red, swelling, burning and painful mass is the sign of acute mastitis;mass larger and distending before menstruation but smaller, and less painful after menstruation is the sign of hyperplasia of mammary gland; one or more masses with egg size, distinct border, smooth surface, movability and no pain is the sign of mastofibroma; mass not painful, as hard as stone, unsmooth and fixed is the sign of mammary cancer.

2. Pain of Mamma

In general, benign or malignant mammary tumor is not painful. Pain usually indicates mammary inflammation and hyperplasia of mammary gland. For example, burning pain which becomes severa after suppuration and relieved after ulceration is often in acute mastitis, distending pain before menstruation which is relieved after menstruation is usually found in hyperplasia of mammary gland.

3. Change of Mammary Surface

Obvious change of mammary surface is seen only in some but not in most mamary disorders. Red and bright surface is seen in acute mastitis; localized dark purple surface in the late stage of mammary tuberculosis; red-swelling and burning-pain of the arepla and crater nipple in duct dilation of mammary glands; and mass cementing with the skin, skin edema and skin in orange-peel appearance or purplish skin, a sign of ulceration, in mammary tumor.

4. Change of Nipple and Areola

It is normal for both the nipples to be at the same level. retracted and crater nipple is due to contraction and traction of the mammary vessels and their peripheral tissues, which have been affected by the tumorous mass below or near the nipple. Tumorous mass nearer a nipple will draw the nipple to it. The affected nipple is usually higher than the normal one, for tumorous mass is usually above a nipple, with the exception of higher nipple due to congenital crater and flatness or due to acute / chronic inflammation near the nipple. Erosion, exudation and scab on the skin of nipple and areola, granular bright–red granulation appearing when the scab is taken off, subsequently thickened and hardened black–purple skin, and crater nipple are all the changes seen in eczematoid carcinoma of nipple. Fissure of the skin of the whole nipple, discharge of yellow fluid or blood, scab and cut pain at feeding are seen in cracked nipple.

5. Secretion of Nipple

Secrtetion of the nipple not in breast feeding period usually means that a disease has taken place. Ordinary pyogenic discharge is often due to an inflammation, serous or serous bloody discharge is resulted mostly from hyperplasia of mammary gland and seldom from papilloma in mammary ducts or mammary cancer, grumous bloody discharge accompanied by red–swelling and burning–pain in the areola is usually led to by duct dilation of mammary glands, bloody discharge is caused ofter by papilloma in mammary ducts and seldom by hyperplasia of mammary glands and mammary cancer, discharge from the nipple after menopause is usually due to mammary cancer, and watery discharge ofter comes from hyperplasia of mammary glands,

papilloma in the ducts or capsules or mammary cancer. However, small amount of milk coming out due to pressure after more than one year of weaning does't mean anything if all the results of examination are normal. Spontaneous excreting of milk is called as lactorrhea syndrome and lactorrhea complicated by amenorrhea, lactorrhea–amenorrhea syndrome.

6. Axillary Lymphadenectasis and Edema of the Upper Limbs

Cancer is suggested when there is axillary lymphadenectasis with hard mass not complicated by acute / chronic inflammation in the upper limbs and chest but accmpanied by mass in a breast which is not painful. Edema of the upper limbs is usually the sign of cancer in its advanced stage. Wax white or dark purple edema in the upper limbs of the affected side may be caused when there are skin edema of mamma, crater nipple and a few larger hard and fixed transfer pymph nodes at the same side.

Method of Palpation

1. Posture

In general, lying posture is suggested. Sitting posture is suitable for thd cases without mastoptosis and with the disorder on or above the areola of mamma.

2. Maneuver

Stretch the palm straight with the four fingers except for the thumb closed, softly touch the breast with slowly sliding finger–bellies, be sure not to hold or knead the breast with the fingers for fear that glandular tissue or lumps of fat be diagnosed as masses.

3. Order of Examination

Examine first the normal side then the affected side for com-

parison. In general, examine first of all the upper inside, the patient hanging her upper limbs freely, then the upper outside, the patient putting her hands on the hips with the elbows backwards; finally the lower outside, the lower inside and the center. Have the patient raise or turn outwards her hands when examing the lower part of the breast.

4. Time for Examination

Within 7–10 days after menstruation is the best when the physiological change of mammary glands is slow, the mammary tissue is soft and thinner and the mass is easy to find. There exist congestion, edema and thickness of mammary tissue before menstruation, physiological pachynsis will be mistaken for tumor if examination is carried out at this time.

5. Examination of Lymph Nodes

Examination is carried out in the order of axillary lymph nodes. The examiner puts her left hand from the front into the patient's right axillary fossa and right hand into left axillary fossa, having the patient hold her upper arms near the chest walls and put her relaxed front arms on the examiner's front arms. In this way, the axillary fossa may be completely relaxed and the enlarged lymph nodes in the central group of axillary fossa or pectoral group may be easy to find. When examining the posterior axillary lymph nodes (posterior scapular group), have the patient raise her upper arms. When examining supraclavicular lymph nodes, stand behind the patient and have her move her head towards the examined side.

5.2 Cracked Nipple

This disease is common in breast feeding period. It may induce inflammation or abscess in different parts of breast. TCM names this disease as *Ru Tou Po Lie* (Broken Nipple) and *Ru Tou Feng* (Cracks in Nipple).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Anger has the liver impaired and the liver–*Qi* stagnated, and fire is thus produced. Too much pungent and fatty food causes dysfunction of the spleen and stomach, and damp–heat is thus developed in the interior. The fire and the damp–heat combine to result in this disease. This is the internal cause. As to the external one, it is as follows: tenderness of nipple skin which can not stand the maceration of saliva and the suck, crater nipple or hypomastia which can not bear too strong suck, and hyperlactation which damps the nipple too much.

Clinical Manifestations

Cracks in different sizes throughout the nipple of a breast feeding woman, hard–standing cut pain occurring when sucking is going on, sticky fluid coming out of the cracks and then becoming yellow scabs and pain taking place after the scabs are dried, cracks in the areola leading to erosion with fat fluid, itching and pain, white or yellow tongue coating, and taut pulse.

Differential Diagnosis

1. Eczematoid Carcinoma of Nipple

Onest usually in women not in lactation, erosion of the nipple with its neck unhealing, rotten nipple in the advanced stage which is covered with bright red granular granulation and bloody

discharge and around which there is dark purple and hardened skin, and pathological section needed if necessary for identifying the diagnosis.

2. Eczema of Nipple

Sudden onset usually in women at middle age; papular eruption, blister, erosion, exudate, scab and itching on the nipple; no ulcer in general, and attack often on the both sides.

Treatment according to stage

1. Internal Treatment

Generauy speaking, there is no need to take any medicines. In case of excessive liver–fire and damp–heat marked by exudate, erosion, itching, bitter taste, yellow tongue coating, and taut rapid pulse, *Longdan Xiegan Tang* (40) is taken for the purpose of clearing away heat from the liver and eliminating dampness. Or, 6 g of *Longdan Xiegan Wan* is taken with warm boiled water each time, 3 times daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) *Fufang Baizhi Xiyao*

Ingredients:

Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	10 g
Kushen	Radix Sophorae Flavescentis	10 g
Pengsha	Borax	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g.

Administration: The above is decocted in water for the decoction. While the decoction is warm, wash the affected part with the help of a piece of sterile gauze for 15–20 minutes, heating the decoction when it is cooled. Do this twice daily. 1 dose is for 1 day and cure may come in 4–5 days.

(2) *Danhuang You*

Ingredients:

Shujidanhuang yolk of cooked egg 3 ones

Administration: The yolks are stir–fried up to brown and spread over the affected part, twice daily.

Huanglian Gao (63) (Coptis Ointment) may be used instead.

Prevention

1. In the late stage of pregnancy, wash the nipples with soap and warm water and coat them with a layer of lipa after they are wiped dry.

2. Those with crater nipples which are lower than the skin around them may wash the nipples clean and then crush, pinch, draw and pull them with the fingers, or cover the nipples with small wine cups for correction. Remember to tie the cups tightly with cloth bands. A inward– turning nipple is corrected in the following way. The nipple is covered with one end of a syringe of 5 ml, the other end is connected to a rubber tube which is connected with an injector, and vaccum suction is performed.

5.3 Acute Mastitis

Acute mastitis is an acute pyogenic inflammation caused by secondary infection due to invasion of bacteria after occurring of cracks in nipple or galactostasis. This disease is seen nearly all in breast feeding period. TCM calls it as *Ru Yong* (mammary abscess).

Etiology and pathogenesis

Such factors as stagnation of the liver–*Qi* , accumulation of excessive stomach–heat, heat due to galactostasis resulting from

cracked nipple, deformity of nipple, crater nipple, hyperlactation and crushing of nipple, and affection of exogenous wind–heat and noxious–fire are combined to lead to obstruction of the channels and collaterals and stagnation of *Qi* and blood, which finally causes this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

Red–swelling and burning–pain or swelling–distension and burning–pain, mass or no mass and difficulty in excreting milk of the affected breast; worsened pain, obvious tenderness, mass with the center softened and wave motion in the suppurative stage; deep abscess usually unilocular but seldom multilocular without red skin and obvious wave motion and retromammary abscess in a small number of cases; enlarged lymph nodes in the axillary fossa of the affected side and general symptoms such as chills, fever, thirst, anorexia, yellow tongue coating, and taut or taut rapid or full rapid pulse; and raised total number of white blood cells and neutrophilic granulocytes.

Differential Diagnosis

1. Inflammatory Mammary Cancer

Onset usually in the pregnant or breast feeding period, extensive infiltrative plastic swelling of the affected breast, feverish and deep or dark red surface of the focus which is in orange peel appearance, transfer mass often in the axillary lymph nodes of the affected side, mild or no general inflammatory reaction, and abscence of evident pain and tenderness. If there is difficulty in diagnosis, biopsy after weaning is suggested.

2. Mammary Tuberculosis

Seen usually in women at middle age, clinical inflammatory manifestations, masses in the from of nodes whose sizes are

changed now and then, slow development, mild pain, no high fever and shiver, thin pus and caseous substance discharged from festered mass which will develop into unhealing ulcer and sinus, and mycobacterium tuberculosis which may be found on the smear of pus. This disease may have the history of other tuberculoses.

3. Dilation of Ducts of Mammary Glands

Onset not in breast feeding period, retreating of the nipple with light yellow or comedo–like secretion, hard and tough and nodes–like masses beneath the areola which are cementing with the skin, red and swollen and burning and painful in the acute stage, and discharging pus after their festering. Finally, there form fistulas opening to the sores on the areola at one end and to the nipple at the other end.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the stage of stagnation

Main Symptoms: Swelling and distension of the affected breast with difficulty in excreting milk, masses, tenderness, mildly feverish sensation and normal or slightly red skin; no obvious general symptoms, white tongue coating, and taut or taut and slightly rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Relieving the depressed liver, removing stagnated milk, regulating *Ying* , detoxicating and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: *Ruxianyan Tang Yihao* (Prescription 1 for Treating Mastitis).

Ingredients:

Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g

Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	15 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Qingpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Loulu	Radix Rhapontici	10 g
Guangyujin	Radix Curcumae	10 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	10 g
Sigualuo	Retinervus Luffae Fructus	6 g
Shénggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of obvious stagnation of milk, the drugs added are

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Wangbuliuxing	Semen Vaccariae	10 g.

In case of stagnation due to hyperlactation, the drugs added are

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Wangbuliuxing	Semen Vaccariae	10 g
Shengmaiya	Fructus Hordei Germinatus	30 g
Shengshanzha	Fructus Crataegi	15 g.

(2) In the stage of heat–production

Main Symptoms: Swollen distending painful affected breast with difficulty in excreting milk, enlarged and tender axillary lymph nodes of the affected side, fever, chills, thirst, anorexia, yellow tongue coating, and taut rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Relieving the depressed liver, cleaaring

away heat, detoxicating, subduing swelling, removing stagnated milk and regulating *Ying* .

Prescreption: *Ruxianyan Tang Erhao* (Prescription 2 for Treating Mastitis).

Ingredients:

Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	15 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Daqingye	Herba Isatidis	15 g
Kushen	Radix Sophorae Flavescentis	10 g
Qingpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Shengzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Loulu	Radix Rhapontici	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice fro the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For remarkable red–sweliing and burning–pain, the drug added is *Xi Huang Wan* (79) (Bolus of Rhinoceros Horn and Bezoar). 1.5–3 g of it is taken after being infused in water, twice daily.

In case of high fever, the dosage of *Chaihu* in the prescription is doubled and 10 g fo *Huanglian* (Rhizoma Coptidis) is added.

(3) In the suppurative stage

Main symptoms: Swollen burning red and bright raised af-

fected part which feels waved, or local diffuse swelling with evident tenderness, rebound pain and pus sucked out through puncture, fever, yellow tongue coating, and full rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, detoxicating, discharging pus and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: *Ruxianyan Tang Sanhao* (Prescription 3 for Treating Mastitis).

Ingredients:

Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	15 g
Baijiangcao	Herba Patriniae	15 g
Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	15 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	12 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	12 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuriae	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In ease of deficiency of *Qi* , the drug added is

Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g.

In case of smaller abscess and localized inflammation, the drug added is

Xiaoji	Herba Cirsii	15 g.

(4) In the postulcerative stage

①Type of Weakened Body Resistance and Lingering Toxins

Main Symptoms: Relieved red-swelling and burning-pain or mere mild hard swelling with burning-pain, yellow white thick pus, lassitude, subsiding of fever or mild fever, slightly yellow tongue coating, and thready taut slightly rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Strengthening the body resistance, clearing away heat and removing toxic material.

Prescreption: *Ruxianyan Tang Sihao* (Prescription 4 for Treating Mastitis).

Ingredients:

Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Tianhuafen	Radix Trichosanthis	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	12 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	12 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: If there are masses, the drug added is

Zhebeium Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii 10g.

If there is milk flowing out of the sore, the drugs added are

Shengmaiya Fructus Hordei Germinatus 15g

Shenghuangqi Radix Astragali 30g.

②Type of Deficiency of Both *Qi* and Blood.

Main Symptoms: Disappearance of red –swelling and burning–pain in the affected part, thin pus, slow growing of pale granulation, debility, sallow complexion, anorexia, pale tongue with white coating, adn thready weak pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Supplementing *Qi* and blood

Prescreption: Modified *Bazhen Tang* (11).

Ingredients:

Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	30 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	15 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	6 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	6 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Notes:

The remaining of chills, fever, swelling, pain and higher white blood cell count is usually due to incomplete drainage of the vomicae (The incision is too small or only one of the loculi is cut out.) or inflammation / abscess occurring again because of infection of other mammary lobules. The treatment is the same as what has been stated in the stage of heat / pus–production.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the stage of stagnation

Mammary massage may be conducted in the following way to treat obvious milk stasis due to stagnation of milk. Gentle massage with the five fingers but without crush and revolving pressure circles the breast and moves gradually towards the nipple. At the same time, the nipple is pulled many times so as to dilate the lactiferous ducts. Better effects will be attained if damp–hot compress is performed before the massage. If there is remarkable mass, *Jinhuanggao* (17) is externally applied on the affected part, once daily.

(2) In the stage of heat–production

Daqinggao (18) is externally applied on the affected part, once daily. Or, 90 g of *Xianrenzhang* (cactus) and 10 g of *Baifan* (Alumen) are pounded into a paste and applied externally. Or, 60 g of *Xianpugongying* (fresh Herba Taraxaci) and 60 g of *Xianzididing* (fresh Herba Violae) are pounded and applied externally. 200 g of *Mangxiao* (Natrii Sulfas) is wrapped in gauze, moisturized with small amount of wine and warm water and applied externally, once daily, to treat milk stagnation with swelling and burning–pain until it is relieved. Prolonged application should be avoided in case milk be reduced.

(3) In the suppurative stage

Incision and drainage is needed once abscess is formed which does not respond to drug therapy. Another operation may be performed to dilate the small incision which contributes to incomplete drainage. When multilocular abscess is operated on, a finger should be put into the vomicae to separate the multilocular fibrous septa from each other. Be sure not to force cord–like tissues to be separated, or else ducts of mammary glands will be

broken and fistula of mammary glands is led to.

(4) In the ulcerative stage

In general; dressing change is conducted with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21). In case of too much pud and necrotic tissue, *Dahuang Youshabu* with small amount of *Jiuyidan* (23) on is used instead. When there is almost no necrotic tissue and pus on the sore, *Dahuang Youshabu* with small amount of *Qufu Shengji San* (25) on is used for dressing change. When there appears fresh granulation on the sore with less pus, dressing change with *Shengji Yuhonggao Youshabu* (22) is needed and *Shengji San* (26) may be added if the fresh granulation grows slowly.

Prevention

1. Avoid anger and remain optimistic and happy.

2. Ensure nutrietion but avoid over-intake of fatty and pungent food or tonics.

3. Keep wearing a bra in the breast feeding period.

4. Regular lactation is important, and 6-7 times daily and 10-15 minutes each time are generally accepted. Wash the hands and nipples with warm boiled water before lactation. Have the baby suck up the milk each time and suck out the remains, if any , with a milk-pump in order to prevent milk stagnation. Timely treatment of cracked nipple is needed. Those with crater nipple may act according to the "prevention" in section 2 of chapter 5 — cracked nipple.

5. 4 Mammary Tuberculosis

Mammary tuberculosis is usually due to invasion of Mycobacteria tuberculosis into mammae through blood circula-

tion or due to direct spreading of thoracic tuberculosis to mammae. TCM names it as *Rulao* (mammary consumptive disease) because it has slow course and symptoms of consumptive diseases, as *Rutan* (mammary phlegm) because the pus discharged after its festering is as thin as phlegm.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Hyperactivity of fire due to *Yin* deficiency of the lung and kidney or pulmonary consumptive disease combines fire due to depression of the liver—*Qi* to turn body fluid into phlegm. The phlegm and fire unite as one and lead to this disease. In the late stage, fever due to *Yin* deficiency is often because the liver–fire goes down to burn the kidney—*Yin* , and insufficiency of *Qi* and blood is usually due to exhaustion of them.

Clinical Manifestations

Usually seen in women of 20—40 who have given birth, slow course, one or more not so tender nodular masses in the affected breast appearing in the early stage which are separated not distinctly from the surrounding tissues before cementing gradually with the skin; several months after which the masses are softened, the skin becomes dark purple and cold–natured abscess is formed; ulceration after which bean–dreg–like thin pus is discharged and a few sinuses or ulcer occurs; breast deformation and crater nipples usually due to hard masses from thoses not softened occasionally: no obvious general symptoms in the early stage; tidal fever, night sweat, or anorexia, listlessness, insufficiency of *Qi* and blood, etc. appearing in the middle and late stages.

Diagnosis

In the early stage, the masses are not easy to distinguish from

tumorous ones. So, biopsy is often needed to make the diagnosis. In the late stage when the sinuses or ulcer have been formed, the diagnosis may be more easily made according to the following: dark red skin around the sore, creeping cavity opening to the sore, pale and shrivelled granulation, bean-dreg-like thin pus, and Mycobacteria tuberculosis found through chromoscopy of pus.

Treatment according to Satge

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Main Symptoms: One or more indistinctly-bordered harder not or slightly painful masses in the breast with normal color, white tongue coating, and thready taut pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin* , resolving phlegm, soothing the liver and promoting the flow of the liver-*Qi* .

Prescreption: Modified *Xiaoluo Wan* (64) (Scrofula-eliminating pill), *Kaiyu San* (65) (Stagnation-relieving Powder) and *Loubei San* (66) (Powder of Trichosanthes Fruit and Fritillary Bulb).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	15 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	10 g
Guangyujin	Radix Curcumae	10 g
Quanxie	Scorpio	10 g
Baijiezi	Semen Sinapis Alba	10 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	30 g

Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	30 g
Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Main Symptoms: Gradually enlarged and softened masses which have cemented with the skin which has become slightly red or dark red, mild pain, tidal fever, listlessness, thin yellow tongue coating, and thready taut rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, resolving phlegm, expelling pus from within by eruption.

Recipe: *Tounong San* (9), modified.

Ingredients:

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

Main Symptoms: One or more ulcers or sinuses from which bean–dreg–like thin pus is discharged, *Yin* deficiency marked by tidal fever, night sweat, flushed cheeks, poor appetite, reddened tongue, and thready rapid pulse, and deficiency of *Qi* and blood marked by sallow complexion, weakness, pale tongue with white coating, and deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin* and clearing away heat in case of *Yin* deficienyc, regulating and supplementing *Qi* and blood in case of deficiency of them.

Prescreption 1: *Kangjiehe Tang* for *Yin* deficiency.

Ingredients:

Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	30 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g
Yuzhu	Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati	15 g
Duanmuli	forged Concha Ostreae	15 g
Lucao	Herba Humuli Scandentis	15 g
Yinchaihu	Radix Stellariae	12 g
Baibu	Radix Stemonae	12 g
Baiwei	Radix Cynanchi Atrati	12 g
Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	12 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Digupi	Cortex Lycii	10 g
Biejia	Carapax Trionycis	10 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken twice, in the morning and evening.

Prescreption 2: *Xiangbei Yangrong Tang* for deficiency of *Qi* and blood.

Ingredients:

Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Baishao	Radxi Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	6 g
Shenggancao	Radxi Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

In the early stage, the medicines which may be added are *Xiaojin Dan* (57) (Minor Gold Bolus) or *Jingong Wan* (56) (Bolus of Centipede) or *Sanjie Pian* (58) (Tablet for Dispersing Masses).

2. External Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Yanghe Jiening Gao (15) is applied

(2) In the suppurative stage

Incision is done to expel pus when wave motion is obvious.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

7 g of *Shushigao* (Gypsum Fibrosum Preparata) and 3 g of *Hongsheng Dan* (Hydrargyri Oxydum Rubrum) are ground into very fine powder for use. Small amount of it is spread over the sore and dressing change with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) is followed. Or, the sinuses are filled with *Dahuang Youshabu* stained with small amount of this powder in order that the pus

can be expelled and the necrotic tissue can be removed. When the necrotic tissue has been replaced by fresh one, dressing change with *Shengji San* (26) or *Shengji Yuhonggao* (22) is performed instead.

In the course of treatment, drugs of antituberculosis may be added. If drug therapy fails to play its part, the local focus or the affected breast may be incised off, and even the axillary lymph nodes of the affected side, if necessary.

5.5 Hyperplasia of Mammary Glands

Hyperplasia of mammary glands, not inflammatory or tumorous, is a proliferative disease, which is included, in TCM, in the catetory of *Rupi* (nodules of breast) and *Ruzhongjiehe* (nodules in breast). Some type of it will develop into cancer. Most of its subjects are women of 30–45, 5–15% and even 30% of whom will be ill with it.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

1. Anger impairs and depresses the liver, *Qi* stagnation is due to the depressed liver, and blood stasis is due to *Qi* stagnation.

2. Stagnation of *Qi* and blood tends to occur in the breast, for it is on the route of Stomach Channel of Yangming with plenty of *Qi* and blood.

3. Transverse flow of the liver–*Qi* or anxiety impairs the spleen, the impaired spleen fails to perform its function in transportation, and phlegm–dampness is thus produced.

Stagnation of the liver–*Qi* , blood stasis and accumulation of phlegm get together to form lumps, causing this disease.

Stagnation of the liver—*Qi* can result in this disease alone or lead to this disease by disturbing *Chong* and *Ren* Channels.

Clinical Manifestations

The following three types are established according to different pathologic manifestations.

1. Syndrome of Mammary Pain

Usually intermittent dull, stabbing or vague pain as the main symptom which is induced often before menstruation, aggravated by anger and relieved or wiped away when menstruation or happiness comes; the pain worsened by the clothes worn or bed—clothes used and sometimes referring to the armpit, shoulder or upper limbs; examination through which no evident masses are found but hypertrophic mammary tissue or granular nodules with mild tenderness may be palpable; often—seen emotional depression and irritability.

2. Hyperplasia of Lobules of Mammary Glands

Onset usually in both the mammae but occasionally limited in one; pain of mammary glands with masses as the main symptom which is severe usually before menstruation, aggravated often by anger and relieved or stopped after menstruation with the masses remarkably reduced in size; the pain manifested in the same way as syndrome of mammary pain; the masses in different sizes and shapes, tough, indistinctly—bordered and not cementing with the muscular layers; discharge from nipple in a small number of cases; hypomenorrhea in most cases, and sexual hypoesthesia. in part of cases.

3. Cystic Hyperplasia of Breast

Masses of mammary glands as the main symptom which is accompanied by mild mammary pain and manifested as one or

more differently–sized round tough movable indistinctly–bordered and not obviously painful cysts, general distending pain in the breast, the masses more painful before menstruation but softened and shrivelled with the pain reduced after menstruation comes, brown or bloody fluid discharged out of the nipple in some cases, and symptoms due to emotional disorders. Because this disease may develop into cancer, examination with pathological section should be made to identify the diagnosis if cancer is suspected.

Differential Diagnosis

1. Adenoscarcoma of Breast

Usually seen in women of 20–25; one or more masses in the breast which are round or egg–shaped, distinctly–bordered, smooth, tough, movable and developing slowly; and no general symptoms.

2. Mammary Cancer

Usually seen in women of 40–60 just before or after climacteric; masses in the breast which are as hard as stone, rough, movable in the early stage and fixed in the advanced stage; skin dimpling, retreated nipple, enlarged and hard axillary lymph nodes which become cauliflower–like or rock–like ulcers after festreing, and bloody fluid with awful smell discharged from the ulcers. In the early stage pathological section is needed to make the diagnosis.

Type and Treatment

Good effects will be obtained if TCM is relied on in treating this disease. Remarkable effects without side ones come from correct differentiation, and proper administration, and long taking, of Chinese drugs.

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Syndrome due to depression of the liver—*Qi* , blood stasis and accumulation of phlegm

Main Symptoms: Evident tough masses enlarged or reduced with the change of emotion, irritability, choking sensation in the chest, distending or stabbing pain in the breast, white tongue coating, and taut slippery pulse.

Therapeutic Mathod: Soothing the liver, promoting the flow of the liver—*Qi*, activating blood circulation to remove blood stasis, resolving phlegm and dispersing masses.

Prescreption: *Rukuaixiao Tang* (Decoction for Resolving Masses in the Breast).

Ingredients:

Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	15 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	30 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	30 g
Haizao	Sargassum	30 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Tiandong	Radix Asparagi	10 g
Sanleng	Rhizoma Sparganii	10 g
Ezhu	Rhizoma Curcumae	10 g
Juye	Folium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Juhe	Semen Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Banxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily. 1 course of treatment consists of 12 days.

Modification: In case of irritability and fullness in the chest, the drugs added are.

Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Qingpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride	10 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	10 g.

In case of harder masses, the drug added is

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g.

In case of severe pain, the drug added is

Yanhusuo	Rhizoma Corydalis	10 g.

(2) Syndrome due to disorder of *Chong* and *Ren* Channels resulting from stagnation of the liver–*Qi*

Main Symptoms: Softer mass with indistinct border, soreness of the waist, irregular menstruation, scanty and pale menstruation, distending pain of the breast before menstruation, pale red tongue with white coating, and taut thready or deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Soothing the liver and promoting the flow of the liver–*Qi* , regulating *Chong* and *Ren* Channels, resolving phlegm and masses.

Prescreption: Modified *Rukuaixiao Tang* .

Ingredients:

Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	15 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	30 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	30 g
Haizao	Sargassum	30 g
Yinyanghuo	Herba Epimedii	30 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	15 g
Xuduan	Radix Dipsaci	15 g

Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g
Xianmao	Rhizoma Curculiginis	10 g
Lujiaoshuang	Cornu Cervi Degelatinatum	12 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Tiandong	Radix Asparagi	10 g
Juye	Folium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Juhe	Semen Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Banxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

For a few localized masses, *Yanghe Jiening Gao* (15) or *Huiyang Yulong Gao* is applied externally. The following is the introduction to *Huiyang Yulong Gao* .

Ingredients:

Caowu	Radix Aconiti Kusnezoffii	60 g
Ganjiang	Rhizoma Zingiberis	60 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	30 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	30 g
Nanxing	Rhizoma Arisaematis	30 g
Rougui	Cotex Cinnamomi	15 g.

Administration: Ground into fine powder and made into a paste, which is applied externally.

Prevention

1. Live a joyful life and treat irregular menstruation.

2. Try to live a natural life such as marrying not too late, giving birth after marriage, doing breast feeding after giving birth and living a normal sexual life.

3. Take measure for birth control and avoid artificial abor-

tion. The breast is distended during pregnancy. Sudden pause of pregnancy will make mammary glands fail to be supported by hormone. However, this sudden restoration of mammary glands is often incomplete, and masses and pain in mammary glands are easy to lead to .

4. In case of prolonged unhealing hard tough masses in the breast , biopsy with pathological section is needed to make sure whether cancer has been developed or not.

5. 6 Intraductal Papilloma

Intraductal papilloma, commonly seen in women of 30–49, is a benign pathologic change. It is included in the category of *Runiu* (bleeding form the nipple) of TCM.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Fire due to long stagnation of the liver–*Qi* impairs the vessels of the nipple and causes this disease. Or, stagnation of the liver–*Qi* affects the spleen and has it fail to control blood. As a result, hemorrhage takes place in the nipple and the disease is thus caused.

Clinical Manifestations

Natural intermittent discharge on the nipple, no palpable mass, fluid flowing out from the opening of mammary duct when certain part of the areola is crushed and pressed, the fluid which is usually purple black blood or purple black blood in the beginning but brown yellow one appearing when the disease begings to be relieved or purple black blood flowing out before and after brown yellow one, palpable cystic mass in the areola in a small number of cases which will become smaller and fluid flows out form the

nipple after it is pressed, fidgets, irritability, dry mouth, bitter taste, chocking sensation, palpitation, short breath, and acratia. Cytolgical examination with smear of discharge from the nipple may help identify the nature of pathological change. Mammary ductography may show obvious filling defect, which may help localize this disease. Biopsy is needed when diagnosis is hard to make.

Type and Treatment

1. Syndrome due to excessive liver fire

Main Symptoms: Purple black blood discharged from the nipple, fidgets, irritability, distending pain in the chest and hypochondrium, bitter taste, dry throat, reddened tongue tip and margin, thin yellow tongue coating, and thready rapid or taut slightly rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Relieving the depressed liver, clearing away heat and cooling blood.

Prescreption: *Shugan Xiehuo Zhixue Tang* (Proven Prescription for Soothing the Liver, Dispersing Fire and Stopping Bleeding).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Longdancao	Radix Gentianae	10 g
Shengbaishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Qingpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride	10 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Chaopuhuang	parched Pollen Typhae	10 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Shengzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	6 g
Hualeishi	Ophicalcitum	6 g

Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Sanqifen	Radix Notoginseng (in the form of powder and taken after being infused in water)	3 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: If there are masses, the drugs added are

Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	15 g
Haizao	Sargassum	15 g.

the drug omitted is

Gancao Radix Glycyrrhizae.

If there is distending pain in the breast, the drug added is

Juye Folium Citri Reticulatae 10 g.

2. Syndrome due to depressed liver and weak spleen

Main Symptoms: Brownish yellow fluid usually discharged form the nippple, lassitude of the limbs, palpitation, short breath, insomnia, anorexia, pale red tongue with thin white coating, and thready weak pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Relieving the depressed liver, strengthening the spleen and controlling blood.

Prescreption; *Shugan Jianpi Shexue Tang* (Proven Prescription for Soothing the Liver, strengthening the Spleen and Controlling Blood).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	15 g

Hongqiancaotan	Radix Rubiae Carbonisatus	15 g
Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Huangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Fuling	Poria	15 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	15 g
Yimiren	Semen Coicis	15 g
Chaozaoren	parched Semen Ziziphi Spinosae	15 g.
Xianhecao	Herba Agrimoniae	15 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

5. 7 Disorder of Mammary Development

Disorder of mammary development is equal to *Ruli* (puberty mastitis) of TCM. If its onset is in the adolescence, it is called adolescent (primary) disorder of mammary development, which is common in young children of about 10. If its onset is in those after middle age, it is called male (secondary) disorder of mammary development.

Etiology and pathogenesis

1. The nipple is connected with the liver, the breast of a female with the stomach, the breast of a male with the kidney. Disorder of *Qi* is the main cause in male, while disorder of blood in female.

2. Emotional disorder and anger impair the liver, leading to stagnation of the liver–*Qi* . Stagnation of the liver–*Qi* results in production of fire. The fire turns body fluid into phlegm. The phlegm and the stagnated *Qi* unite as one, causing this disease.

3. Fire due to stagnation of the liver–*Qi* goes down to burn the kidney–*Yin* . Or, over sexual intercourse impairs the kidney, leading to insufficiency of the kidney–*Yin* and flaring–up of fire of deficiency type. The fire burns body fluid into phlegm. The fire and the phlegm get together to cause this disease.

4. Weak spleen and stomach in adolescent female will dysfunction in transportation and transformation, which reduces the supplement of *Qi* and blood, leads to dysfunction of Chong and Ren Channels, results in incoordination between *Qi* and blood and causes stagnation of blood in the vessels, with this disease coming into being.

5. Insufficiency of the kidney–essence and blood in adolescent male makes the liver fail to be nourished, which leads to stagnation of the liver–*Qi* and accumulation of phlegm and causes this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

Oval middle–hard distincyly–bordered smooth movable mildly–tender or distending–painful masses at the center of the areola of one or both breasts, not enlarged axillary lymph nodes, no general symptoms in adolescent disorder of mammary development, male disorder of mammary development with the above symptoms and hypermastia (looking like breasts of developed female), chocking sensation in the chest, anxiety, irritability, or soreness and weakness of the loins and knees, dizziness, vertigo. sexual hypoesthesia, sharp voice, and reduced beard. If the disorder is limited in one breast and the mass is harder, differentiation from mammary cancer is needed.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Type of Stagnation of the Liver–*Qi* and Accumulation of Phlegm

Main Symptoms: Chocking sensation in the chest, anxiety, irritability, impatience, reddish tongue with thin white coating, and thready taut pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Soothing the liver and promoting the flow of the liver–*Qi* , resolving phlegm and dispersing masses.

Prescreption: *Ruli Tang* (Proven Prescription for Treating Gynecomastia).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Qingpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride	10 g
Banxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	10 g
Juye	Folium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	15 g
Haizao	Sargassum	15 g
Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	15 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	30 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Multiorrhizae	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily. 1 course of treatment involves 2 weeks.

Modification: In case of harder masses, the drug added is

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g.

In case of fullness in the chest and pain in the hypochondriac region, the drug added is.

Guangyujin	Radix Curcumae	10 g.

(2) Type of Insufficiency of the Liver and Kidney

Main Symptoms: Soreness and weakness of the loins and knees, dizziness, vertigo, blackened orbits, sexual hypoesthesia, reddened tongue with little coating, and thready slightly rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: First of all tonifying the liver and kiendy and secondly resolving phlegm and softening masses.

Prescreption: Modified *Liuwei Dihuang Tang* (12).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Shanzhuyu	Fructus Corni	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Shanyao	Rhizoma Dioscoreae	10 g
Gouqizi	Fructus Lycii	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	30 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	15 g
Haizao	Sargassum	15 g
Gualou	Fructus Trichosanthis	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For those with sexual hypoesthesia, sharp voice and reduced beard, the drugs added are

Yinyanghuo	Herba Epimedii	30 g
Bajitian	Radix Morindae Officinalis	15 g

Lujiaoshuang	Cornu Cervi Degelatinatum	10 g.

In case of dry mouth adn throat, thd drugs added are

Guiban	Carapax et Plastrum Testudinis	10 g
Feizhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	6 g.

For mild cases of adolescent disorder of mammary development and male disorder of mammary development, *Liuwei Dihuang Wan* (12) and *Sanjie Pian* (58) may be taken together.

2. External Treatment

Yanghe Jiening Gao (15) is applied on the affected part and dressing change is conducted once a week.

In short, treatment of this disease should aim at searching for and eliminating the etiological and pathological factors, curing the primary diseases and stopping administration of the drugs which tend to induce abnormal development of male breasts.

6 Peripheral Vascular Diseases

Peripheral vascular disease is the total name of angiopathy occurring in the limbs. Generally speaking, it includes thromboangiitis obliterans, arteriosclerosis obliterans, multiple aorto-arteritis, Raynaud's disease, deep or superficial thrombotic phlebitis and varix of lower limbs. According to their main symptoms and sings, development and prognoses, TCm may include them in the categories of *Tuoju* (gangrene of finger or toe), *Xuanzheng* (cord-like mass), *Maibi* (rheumatism with the blood vessels involved) and *Emai* (superficial phlebitis)

Peripheral vascular diseases have the same characteristics in the onset, development and treatment. For instance, stasis blocks the channels and causes pain, which is the main cause of peripheral vascular diseases; promoting the circulation of blood through the vessels and removing blood stasis from the channels is the main therapeutic method of them; because the moving of blood depends on the moving of *Qi*-*Qi* moves and blood follows. *Qi* stops moving and blood does the same, drugs with the action of promoting the flow of, and tongifying, *Qi* are usually used in treating peripheral vascular diseases. However, differential treatment is still important, for they are different in stages, deficiency or excess, and cold / heat nature.

6. 1 Thromboangiitis obliterans

Thromboangiitis obliterans is a chronic peripheral vascular disease, which is characterized by periodic exacerbation, onset usually at the far end of a middle or small artery in the limbs especially in the lower limb, one side affected usually in the beginning, often attack of young or middle-aged males, little affection of females and higher incidence in cold places. TCM calls this disease as *Tuoju* (gangrene of finger or toe), for it causes the limb to be cold, painful, acrotic and necrotic, and the toe or finger knuckles to fall off.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Stagnation of *Qi* and blood in the vessels and stasis in the channels and collaterals due to factors such as deficiency of the kidney-*Yin* , hyperactivity of ministerial fire, over-anxiety, improper diet, dysfunction of the spleen and stomach, cold and dampness, accumulation of toxins, nicotinism and trauma lead to formation of blood stasis (thrombuses), which blocks the vessels and causes this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

1. Symptoms and Signs

(1) Impairment of *Yang* by Cold-dampness

Heaviness of the affected limb, difficulty in walking, pain of the sole, soreness and occasional convulsive pain of the leg, inability of walking long distance, laming, chills, aversion to cold, numbness, pain relieved in the day and worsened in the night which makes the patient unable to go to sleep for the whole night sitting with his / her knees held in his / her arms, localized pale or

purplish red skin, or chronic purple cold mass on the skin, gradual myophagism with dry skin, scarce or no fine hair on the dorsum of the foot, deformed and thickened nails which grow slowly, accompanying of migratory superficial thrombotic phlebitis in most cases, weakened or unfelt dorsal artery of the foot and posterior tibial artery, wizened necrosis as black as painted and turning into dry gangrene in most cases when cold has been turned into heat, and moist gangrene probably due to secondary infection.

(2) Impairment of *Yin* by Noxious–fire

Possible irritability and thirst before onset, numbness and pain of the affected limb, unbearable burning pain in severe case which casues the patient to shake with the foot in his hands through the night and relief of which allows him / her to go to sleep with the foot hanging down, emaciation, listlessness, anorexia, dry mouth, fever, localized hectic or dark purple skin followed by the one blackened and with yellow blisters around which there appears distending and dark purple or indigo–blue skin in the appearance of cooked Chinese date, purplish dark pus and purplish black granulation with uncovered tendons and bones and awful smell occurring after festering, accompanying of migratory superficial thrombotic phlebitis in most cases, unfelt dorsal artery of the foot and posterior tibial artery; and possible unhealing nectosis of dampness type with diffused erosion, infected toes which fall off gradually, affected dorsum of the foot and even the malleolus.

2. Clinical Stages

According to the course, three stages are defined for the advantage of making the diagnosis and differentiating the

condition.

Stage One (stage of local ischemia)

Numbness, chillness, aversion to cold, soreness, distension, pain, heaviness, intermittent lameness and weakened or unfelt pulse in the affected limb possibly accompanied by migratory superficial thrombotic phlebitis marked by disturbance of blood circulation.

Stage Two (stage of dystrophy)

Unfelt arteriopalmus, localized numbness, soreness, chillness, aversion to cold, aggravated intermittent lameness, stationary pain, often-seen hectic or purplish red or pale yellow skin of the affected limb, dry and desquamatory skin of the foot, thickened and deformed nails which grow slowly, falling off of fine hair, and myophagism of the leg.

Stage Three (stage of necrosis)

Severly and unbearably painful ulcer or gangrene caused by severe disturbance of blood circulation, usually localized on the toes or in the foot but seldom involving the ankle joint and leg; and falling off of the gangrened toe followed by unhealing ulcer. According to the degree and range, necrosis is divided into the following three.

Degree 1: localized on the toe.

Degree 2: stretching beyond the metatarsophalangeal joint.

Degree 3: extending to the dorsum of foot or above the ankle joint.

Diagnosis and Differential Diagnosis

1. Thromboangiitis Obliterans

Common in young and middle-aged males usually with smoking history, long course, slow development, persistent cold

limb at the extremity of which there exist pain and numbness, intermittent lameness, aggravated stationary pain, ulcer an gangrene in severe case, weakened or unfelt dorsal artery of foot and posterior tibial artery, and accompanying of migratory superficial thrombotic phlebitis.

2. Arteriosclerosis Obliterans

Common in males above 50, usually accompanied by hypertension, hyperlipemia, coronary heart disease and diabetes, nearly the same local symptoms and signs as those of thromboangiitis obliterans with the exception of onset in both the lower limbs, shorter course, quicker development, early and extensive gangrene, involved leg and thigh, milder pain, taut hard zigzag superficial temporal artery and unaffected arteries of the limbs, fundus arteriosclerosis of retina, and shadow of calcification of the arterial walls of the affected limb shown in the roentgenogram.

3. Raynaud's Disease

Common in young and middle-aged females, generally symmetrical and paroxysmal onset which occurs more in the fingers than in the toes, the fingers and toes which become pale and grey purple and hectic due to cold or emotional excitation, normal pulse of arterise of the affected limb, and localized superficial ulcer occurring in the advanced stage in some cases.

4. Multiple Aorto-arteritis

Common in female teenagers, unfelt pulse and blood pressure usually seen in the upper limbs, cold and weakness and intermittent lameness of the lower limbs, little pain, not remarkable change of skin color, fever and palpitation and fatigue or joint pain accompanied in active stage, accelerated blood

sedimentation, and vascular murmur heared in the neck, abdomen and back.

5. Diabetic Gangrene

Diabetes complicated by arteriosclerosis in the patients, cold, numbness, pain, intermittent lameness and weakened or unfelt pulse of the affected limb, gangrene of dampness type with larger scope and quick development possibly complicated in the lower limbs, high level of blood sugar, and positive glycuresis.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Type of Deficiency–cold

Main Symptoms: Icy, pale or hectic, numb, sore, distending affected limb; intermittent lameness aggravated by cold but relieved by warmth; absence of ulcer or gangrene; pale tongue with thin white coating, and deep thready slow pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Warming the channels to disperse cold, removing blood stasis from the collaterals.

Prescreption: *Yanghe Tang* (8).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	3 g
Lujiaojiao	Colla Cornus Cervi	10 g
Mauhuang	Herba Ephedrae	1.5 g
Baijiezi	Semen Sinapis Alba	6 g
Paojiangtan	Rhizoma Zingiberis Carbonisatus	1.5 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of severe cold, the drug added is

Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g.

In case of ecchymosis, the drugs added are

Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	10 g
Dilong	Lumbricus	10 g
Tubiechong	Eupolyphaga seu Steleophaga	10 g.

In case of deficiency of blood, the drug added is

Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	20 g.

In case of deficiency of *Qi* , the drugs added are

Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g.

In case of the upper limbs affected, the drug added is

Guizhi	Ramulus Cinnamomi	10 g.

In case of the lower limbs affected, the drug added is

Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	10g.

(2) Type of Stagnation

Mian Symptoms: Aversion to cold, numbness, soreness, distension and persistent fixed pain of the affected limb with localized hectic, dark red or grey purple skin, ecchymosis at the extremity of the limb, the affected foot which becomes white or pale yellow after movement, myophagism of the limb, dark red tongue or tongue with ecchymosis, thin white tongue coating, and deep thready uneven pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Promoting blood circulation, removing blood stasis, strengthening the body resistance and detoxicating.

Prescreption: *Huoxue Tongbi Tang* (Proven Prescription for Promoting Blood Flowing and Treating Stagnation of *Qi* and Blood).

Ingredients:

Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Zanghonghua	Stigma Croci	3 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Zhiruxiang	Olibanum Preparata	10 g
Zhimoyao	Myrrha Preparata	10 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Yanhusuo	Rhizoma Corydalis	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g
Wugong	Scolopendra	2 pieces.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) Type of Damp–heat

Main Symptoms: The affected limb relieved by cold but aggravated by warmth; soreness, distension and pain of the leg; acratia; often–accompanying of migratory superficial thrombotic phlembitis; discharge and erosion possibly due to ulcer and gangrene, dark or pale sallow complexion, chocking sensation in the chest, anorexia, thirst without desire for drink, scanty and yellowish urine, yellow greasy tongue coating, and slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, promoting diuresis, eliminating dampness with aromatics.

Prescreption: *Yinchen Chixiaodou Tang* (Proven Prescription

Consisting of Oriental Wormwood, Red Bean, etc.).

Ingredients:

Yinchen	Herba Artemisiae Scopariae	24 g
Chixiaodou	Semen Phaseoli	20 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	30 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	10 g
Huangbai	Radix Phellodendri	10 g
Kushen	Radix Sophorae Flavescentis	12 g
Mufangji	Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Peilan	Herba Eupatorii	10 g
Baikou	Semen Amomi Cardamomi	10 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For more feverish affected limb, the drugs added are

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g.

In case of blood stasis, the drugs added are

Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15 g
Dilong	Lumbricus	10 g.

If there is much dampness, the drugs added are

Chifuling	Poria	15 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis	10 g
Zhuling	Polyporus	10 g

Huashi	Talcum	12 g.

(4) Type of Noxious–heat

Main Symptoms: The affected limb relieved by cold but worsened by heat with megalgia reduced in the day but aggravated in the night; red–swelling and burning–pain and awful smell all of which occur when there appears sceondary infection of gangrene or ulcer; fever or high fever, anorexia, thirst with desire for drink, constipation, deep–colored urine, deep red tongue with yellow greasy or black coating, and full rapid or full large pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, promoting blood circulation and nourishing *Yin* .

Prescreption: *Sihong Tang* (Proven Prescription with Four Red Drugs as the Main Ingredients).

Ingredients:

Zishen	Rhizoma Bistortae	24 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	20 g
Zicao	Radix Arnebiae seu Lithospermi	6 g
Qiancao	Radix Rubiae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	20 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm is the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of bitter taste and restlessness, the drugs added are

Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g.

For thirst with desire for drink, the drugs added are

Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	15 g
Shengshigao	Gypsum Fibrosum	15 g.

(5) Type of Deficiency of Both *Qi* and Blood

Main Symptoms: Longer course, listlessness, acratia, palpitation, insomnia, milder pain of the affected limb with dry skin and myophagism, ulcer followed by dark grey granulation and thin pus and unhealing sore, pale tongue with thin white coating, and deep thready weak pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Tonifying *Qi* and blood, strengthening the body resistance and expelling pathogenic factors.

Prescreption: *Renshen Yangrong Tang* (67) (Ginseng Decoction for Nourishing Blood).

Ingredients:

Renshen	Radix Ginseng	6 g
Huangqi	Radix Astragali	20 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	20 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Fuling	Proia	10 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	6 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Yuanzhi	Radix Polygalae	10 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g
Shihu	Herba Dendrobii	12 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the stage before ulceration

A. 120 g of *Shengjiang* (Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens), 60 g of *Shenggancao* (Radix Glycyrrhizae) and seven *Conggen* (Radix Allii Fistulosi) are decocted in water for the decoction, in which the affected limb is immersed 1–2 times daily.

B. *Shenggancao Fen* (Radix Glycyrrhizae in the form of powder) is mixed with *Mayou* (Oleum Sesami) into a paste, which is applied over the affected part with its thickness being 0. 2 cm. Dressing change is conducted every other day.

(2) In the stage after ulceration

A. Name: *Huangliangao Shabu*

Ingredients:

Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Mayou	Oleum Sesami	260 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Shengdihuang	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Jianghuang	Rhizoma Curcumae Longae	10 g
Huangla	wax	12 g.
Shabu	gauze	

Administration: The drugs except *Huangla* are steeped in *Mayou* for one day and then decocted with gentle heat up to brown. The brown drugs are filtered to get the medicated oil. The oil is mixed evenly with *Huangla* into a mixture. The mixture is added to the gauze and sterilized under high pressure. The gauze is called *Huangliangao Shabu*. Dressing change with it is con-

ducted once daily or every other day.

B. Name: *Zicaogao Shabu*

Ingredients:

Zicao	Radix Arnebiae seu Lithospermi	120 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	60 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	30 g
Shengdihuang	Radix Rehmanniae	120 g
Dahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	30 g
Baizhi	*Radix Angelicae Dahuricae*	*30 g*
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	30 g
Mayou	Oleum Sesami	100 g
Huangla	wax	240 g
Bingpianfen	Borneolum Syntheticum in the form of powder	10 g.

Administration: *Bingpian* needn't be decocted in *Mayou* , it is added to the mixture of the medicated oil and *Huangla* . The rest is the same as the administration of *Huangliangao Shabu* .

Notes

If there is slow-growing older granulation on the surface of sore, *Shengji Yuhonggao Youshabu* (22) is used. For sore covered by scab under which pus has been accumulated, dressing change should be conducted after the scab is cut off. Before control of infection, subsiding of inflammation and formation of distinction between normal tissue and necrotic one, extraction of nails, epluchage and incision of gangrene are not allowed in case the disease be worsened.

Proven Prescription

1. *Simiao Yongan Tang* (68) (Decoction of Four Wonderful Drugs for Quick Restoration of Health).

Ingredients:

Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	45 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	45 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	30 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	30 g.

Effect: Clearing away heat, removing toxic material, promoting blood circulation and nourishing *Yin* .

Indications: Erosion, red–swelling, burning–pain, restlessness, fever and thirst all of which are due to thromboangiitis obliterans.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction. which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. *Gubu Tang* (69) (Decoction for Treating Gangrene of Finger or Toe).

Ingredints:

Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Renshen	Radix Ginseng	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	90 g
Shihu	Herba Dendrobii	30 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	30 g.

Effect: Replenishing *Qi* , nourrshing *Yin* , clearing away heat and promoting blood circulation.

Indications: Purplish blackness and ulceration and swelling and pain of the extremity of the limb, thirst and acratia in thromboangiitis obliterans.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

3. *Danshen Zhusheye* (98) (Injection of Red Sage Root).

Administration: Intravenous drip is conducted with the mixture of 16 ml of *Danshen Zhusheye* and 500 ml of 5–10% glucose solution, once daily, 14 days are involved in one course of treatment.

6. 2 Arteriosclerosis obliterans

Included in the category of *Tuoju* (gangrene of finger or toe), arteriosclerosis obliterans is an arterial occlusive disease due to pathologic change of atherosclerosis or secondary thrombus. With onset in any season and more in the lower limbs than in the upper. on which gangrene may occur, this disease is common in males over 50 and often complicated by hypertension, hyperlipemia, coronary heart disease and diabetes.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

The etiology and pathogenesis of this disease is nearly the same as those of Büerger's disease, except that this disease is mainly due to over–intake of fatty food or indulgence in sexual pleasures and over–use of the mind. Too much fatty food impairs the spleen and stomach and leads to production of heat in the interior. Indulgence in sexual pleasures and over–use of the mind exhaust the heart and kidney. Dysfunction of *Zang–Fu* caused in this way results in stagnation of *Qi* and blood. Stagnated *Qi* and blood blocks the vessels. And this disease results at last.

Clinical Manifestations

1. In the early stage

Cold, numbness, soreness, distension, pain or burning sensation, pallor or hectic and mild in termittent lameness of the affected limb; maybe accompanied by thirst, anorexia and weak-

ened pulse of the dorsal artery of foot and posterior tibial artery.

2. In the advanced stage

Quicker development, myophagism and dry skin and milder pain of the affected limb; ecchymosis occurring on the toe or in the leg and then becoming light purple, dark purple, black, ulcerative and finally scaled off; gangrene extending to the dorsum of foot and even the leg or thigh; high fever, trance, poor appetite, and weakened or unfelt pulse of the femoral artery, popliteal artery, drosal artery of foot and posterior tibial artery of the affected limb.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Type of Blood Stasis

Main Symptoms: Cold, numbness, sore–distension and pain of the affected limb, ecchymosis at the extremity of the limb, pale or hectic skin, thirst, anorexia, ecchymosis on the margin of the tongue, white tongue coating, and taut uneven pulse. This type is usually included in the early and middle stages of the disease.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin* , clearing away heat, promoting blood circulation through the vessels.

Prescreption: Modified *Simiao Tang*(68).

Ingredients:

Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	45 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	30 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	15 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g

Shengshanzha	Fructus Crataegi	10 g
Dilong	Lumbricus	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) Type of Damp–heat Going Downwards

Main Symptoms: Swollin and distending affected limb worsened by heat but reliveed by cold, localized burning sensation and pain, more pus, high fever, thirst without desire for drink, anorexia, yellowish urine, yellow greasy tongue coating, and slippery rapid pulse. This type belongs to secondary infection of gangrene.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, inducing diuresis and promoting blood circulation to remove obstruction in the channels.

Prescreption: *Yinchen Chixiaodou Tang* (Proven Prescription with Oriental Wormwood and Red Bean).

Ingredients:

Yinchen	Herba Artemisiae Scopariae	24 g
Chixiaodou	Semen Phaseoli	20 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	30 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Kushen	Radix Sophorae Flavescentis	12 g
Mufangji	Radxi Stephaniae Tetrandrae	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Peilan	Herba Eupatorii	10 g
Baikou	Semen Amomi Cardamomi	10 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g

Shenggancao Radix Glycyrrhizae 3 g.

Adminstration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of severe heat and purplish red skin of the affected limb, the drugs added are

Rendongteng Caulis Lonicerae 30 g
Zelan Herba Lycopi 15 g
Chishao Radix Paeoniae Rubra 15 g.

(3) Type with Gangrene due to Diabetes

Main Symptoms: Swollen distending dark–purple affected toe which is usually the big one on which there appear pustulae; putrefaction infecting the five toes and extending to the dorsum of the foot with burning swelling and pain; fever, polyphagia, polydipsia, polyuria, reddened tongue without coating, and taut rapid weak or thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin* , reducing pathogenic fire, detoxicating and removing blood stasis.

Prescreption: Modified *Zhibai Dihuang Tang* (70) (Decoction of Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia).

Ingredients:

Shudi Radix Rehmanniae Preparata 24 g
Huaishanyao Radix Dioscoreae 12 g
Shanyurou Fructus Corni 12 g
Fendanpi Cortex Moutan 10 g
Fuling Poria 10 g
Zexie Rhizoma Alismatis 10 g
Zhimu Rhizoma Anemarrhenae 12 g
Huangbai Cortex Phellodendri 10 g
Jinyinhua Flos Lonicerae 30 g

Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	20 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	12 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

Refer to that of Buerger's disease.

6. 3 Raynaud's Disease

Common in young and middle–aged women and usually affecting the upper limbs but less involving the lower one, this disease is due to over excitement or cold stimulus and manifested as symmetrical and paroxysmal sudden pallor of the finger or toe followed by light purple, hectic and sensation of pain and numbness.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Failure of the tendons to be nourished by blood due to insufficiency of the liver–*Yin* resulting from stagnation of the liver–*Qi* results in numbness and spasm of the limbs. Deficiency of *Qi* and blood due to stagnation of *Qi* and shortage of blood leads to pale fingers. Absence of enough heat due to *Yang*–deficiency of the spleen and kidney is responsible for very cold hands and feet. Accumulation of cold, *Yin* pathogen, in the channels causes greyish purple extremities of the limbs. Incoordination between *Ying* and *Wei* and debility of *Wei–Qi* give rise to hectic skin. Blood stasis is due to stagnation fo *Qi* , obstruction is due to

blood stasis, and pain is due to obstruction. Inability of the tendons and vessels to be nourished due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood brings about withered skin, myophagism and even ulcer. In short, insufficiency of the liver—*Yin* , *Yang* —deficiency of the spleen and kidney and stagnation of *Qi* and blood are the original causes of this disease, while exogenous cold, the external pathogenic factor.

Clinical Manifestations

After sudden anger or rage, the skin of fingers or toes symmetrically and paroxysmally becomes pale, greyish purple and finally hectic and then returns to normal, which is accompanied by cold, numbness and dysesthesia of the finger which are relieved by warmth but aggravated by cold, and distending thin smaller pointed extremity of the limb with dry skin and myophagism or superficial small ulcers in severe cases, with the arterial pulse of the affected limb being normal.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Type of *Yin*—cold

Main Symptoms: Cold extremities whose color is changed symmetrically by cold, thin white tongue coating, and deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Warming the channels to disperse cold, promoting blood circulation to remove obstruction form the vessels.

Prescreption: *Danggui Sini Tang* (Decoction with Chinese Angelica for Restoring *Yang*).

Ingredients:

Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g

Shaoyao	Radix Paeoniae	10 g
Guizhi	Ramulus Cinnamomi	6 g
Xixin	Herba Asari	3 g
Zhigancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae Preparata	4.5 g
Tongcao	Medulla Tetrapanacis	4.5 g
Dazao	Fructus Jujubae	8 dates.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of severe cold, the drugs addef are

Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g
Paijiang	Rhizoma Zingiberis Preparata	10 g.

For contracture, the drugs added are

Gouteng	Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis	15 g
Quanxie	Scorpio	10 g.

(2) Type of Stagnation:

Main Symptoms: Symmetrical color change in the extremity of the limb occurring after mental depression or excitement, which is accompanied by distension and stabbing pain, ecchymosis on the tongue, and deep taut uneven pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Soothing the liver and promoting the flow of the liver–*Qi* , removing blood stasis from the vessels.

Prescreption: Modified *Xiaoyao San* (7).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Fuling	Poria	12 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Bohe	Herba Menthae	1.5 g

Zhigancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae Preparata	4.5 g
Weijiang	Rhizoma Zingiberis Preparata	3 pieces
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	10 g
Jixueteng	Caulis Spatholobi	15 g
Guizhi	Ramulus Cinnamomi	10 g
Dilong	Lumbricus	10 g
Tubiechong	Eupolyphaga seu Stelephaga	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) Type of Deficiency of Both *Qi* and Blood

Main Symptoms: Pale and numb affected limb with abnormal color, superficial ulcer and pale granulation which grows slowly, light red tongue, and thready weak pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Reinforcing *Qi* , nourishing blood, promoting blood circulation and removing blood stasis in the vessels.

Prescreption: Modified *Renshen Yangrong Tang* (67) (Ginseng Decoction for Nourishing Blood).

Ingredients:

Renshen	Radix Ginseng	6 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Yuanzhi	Radix Polygalae	10 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	6 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	20 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	20 g

Huangqi Radix Astragali 30 g
Gancao Radix Glycyrrhizae 6 g.

Administration:Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: If the upper limbs are affected, the drug omitted is.

Rougui Cortex Cinnamomi, the drug added is
Guizhi Ramulus Cinnamomi 10 g

If the lower limbs are affected, the drug added is
Niuxi Radix Cyathulae 10 g

For insufficiency of the liver—*Yin* , the drugs added are
Shanyurou Fructus Corni 12 g
Nuzhenzi Fructus Ligustri Lucidi 15 g.

2. External Treatment

Refer to that of Buerger's disease.

6.4 Multiple Aorto—arteritis

Multiple aorta—arteritis, also called pulseless disease, is a chronic progressive inflammation and stenosing disease of the aorta and its branches. It may involves the arteries of the four limbs and have systemic manifestation. In this disease, there is no clinical gangrene, because adequate collateral circulation has been formed while arteriostenosis and arterial occlusion are developing. Common in young females, it attacks the upper limbs more often than the lower ones. According to its special features, TCM includes this disease in the category of Maibi (rheumatism with the blood vessels involved).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Insufficiency of *Yang Qi* due to *Yang* deficiency of the spleen and kidney fails to give impetus to blood circulation, inadequate blood in the vessels due to insufficiency of *Qi* and blood fails to promote the circulation of *Yang Qi* , *Yin* deficiency of the liver and kidney makes the tendons and vessels fail to be nourished, and obstruction of the vessels due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood leads to this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

Fatigue, fever, palpitation and anorexia having existed several weeks or months before local symptoms and signs appear; general symptoms relieved or eradicated after local symptoms and signs appear; different manifestations of ischemia of the limbs due to different sites of the pathological changes; such symptoms and signs of the type of pulseless disorder of the upper limbs as easily-induced fatigue, pain, numbness and cold of the upper limb, headache, visual disturbance, weakened or unfelt pulse in one or both arms, no or remarkedly-lowered blood pressure in the upper limbs, vascular murmur maybe heard at both the flanks of the neck; such symptoms and signs of the type of pulseless disorder of the lower limbs as numbness, cold, pain, weakness, intermittert lameness, weakened or unfelt pulse, no or remarkedly-lowered blood pressure (possibly-raised blood pressure in the upper limbs) in the lower limbs and vascular murmur probably-heard in the abdomen or in the loins and back; mild anemia, raised neutrophil count and accelerated blood sedimentation which may be treated as the index in the active stage of the disease.

Type and Treatment

1. In ternal Treatment

(1) Type of *Yang*–deficiency of the Spleen and Kidney

Main Symptoms: Soreness, weakness, cold, numbness and acratia of the limb which are worsened by cold but relieved by warmth, listlessness, short breath, anroexia, pale tongue with white coating, and deep thready or feeble thready indistinct pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Warming and strengthening the spleen and kidney, warming and dredging the vessels.

Prescreption: *Yanghe Tang* (87)

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Ganjiang	Rhizoma Zingiberis	10 g
Guizhi	Ramulus Cinnamomi	10 g
Mahuang	Herba Ephedrae	1.5 g
Baijiezi	Semen Sinapis Alba	6 g
Lujiaojiao	Colla Cornus Cervi	10 g
Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Jixueteng	Caulis Spatholobi	15 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) Type of Deficiency of Both *Qi* and Blood

Main Symptoms: Numbness, cold, acratia and pain of the limbs, pale complexion, short breath, languor, insomnia, pale tongue with white coating, and thready feeble or indistinct pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Invigorating *Qi* and blood to remove obstruction in the vessels

Prescreption: Modified *Gubu Tang* (69) (Decoction for Treating Gangrene of Finger and Toe).

Ingredients:

Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Renshen	Radix Ginseng	10 g
jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	60 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	12 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	30 g
Jixueteng	Caulis Spatholobi	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: If the upper limbs are attacked, the drug added is

Pianjianghuang	Radix Curcumae Longae	10 g

If the lower limbs are attacked, the drug added is

Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	15 g.

(3) Type of *Yin*—deficiency of the Liver and Kidney

Main Symptoms: Soreness and weakness of the affected limb, low fever, visual disturbance, vertigo, tinnitus, amnesia, insomnia, reddened tongue with thin white coating, and deep thready or unfelt pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing the liver and kidney to replenish their *Yin*

Prescreption: Modified *Liuwei Dihuang Tang* (12).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g

Shanzhuyu	Fructus Corni	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Shanyao	Rhizoma Dioscoreae	10 g
Gouqizi	Fructus Lycii	10 g
Nuzhenzi	Fructus Ligustri Lucidi	15 g
Huainiuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Biejia	Carapax Trionycis	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. Acupuncture Therapy

Points Selected

Such main acupoints as Neiguan (PC 6), Taiyuan (LU 9) and Chize (LU 57) and such assistant ones as Quchi (LI 11), Hegu (LI 4), Tongli (HT 5) and Jianjing (GB 21) are selected for pulseless disorder in the upper limbs. For pulseless disorder in the lower limbs, the main points selected are Zusanli (ST 36), Sanyinjiao (SP 6), Yanglingquan (GB 34) and Fuliu (KI 7), and the assistant ones selected are Taixi (KI 3) and Chengshan (BL 57).

Manipulation: Strong stimulation is used.

3. Other Therapies

16 ml of *Danshen Zhusheye* (98) and 500 ml of 10% glucose solution are mixed and used for intravenous drip, once daily, and 2 weeks are involved in 1 course of treatment.

6. 5 Venous Thrombosis and Thrombophlebitis

This disease refers to a vascular disorder due to inflammato-

ry reaction on the venous walls resulting from various factors and accompanied by venous thrombosis. That attacking the superficial veins is called as thrombophlebitis, which usually affects the superficial veins of the limbs, thorax and abdomen and has milder symptoms and signs. That attacking the deep veins is called as deep-venous thrombosis, which usually affects the deep veins in the lower limbs and pelvic veins but seldom involves the superior and inferior vena cave with more serious symptoms and signs. In some cases, thrombus scaling may lead to pulmonary embolism, a severe complication. According to the main symptoms and features, TCM includes this disease in the categories of *Emai* (superficial phlebitis), *Xuanbing* (cord-like mass beside umbilicus), etc.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

This disease is usually resulted from disturbed back-flowing of blood due to accumulation of damp-heat or stagnation of cold-dampness in the vessels and due to obstruction of the vessels due to blood stasis. For instance, heat due to prolonged stagnation of dampness in the vessels (The dampness has been got because of long living in wet places.) or accumulation of noxious-damp-heat in the vessels leads to stagnation of *Qi* and blood; phlegm-dampness produced in the interior due to dysfunction of the weak spleen goes down to get together with the exogenous cold accumulated in the vessels and cause stagnation of *Qi* and blood; stagnation of *Qi* and blood may be also brought about by labour, operation, trauma, infection and long-time of keeping in bed (Long lying impairs *Qi*). In short, pathogenic dampness is the main cause, obstruction of the vessels is the main pathogenesis.

Clinical Manifestations

1. Thrombophlebitis

Obvious tenderness in the acute stage accompanied by fever and other general symptoms which may gradually retreat in 1–3 weeks, something cord–like lingering in the chronic stage, frequent recurrence after which there appears chromatosis in the skin around the diseased veins but there are no general symptoms. Different clinical manifestations due to different diseased parts are stated in the following.

(1) Superficial thrombophlebitis of limbs

Pain of the limb, a tender swollen red harder cord–like mass or node palpable in the diseased part, hard cord–like mass with chromatosis remaining after subsiding of the inflammation in the affected limb usually without swelling, and inflammation of several veins.

(2) Superficial thoraco–epigastric thrombophlebitis

In general, there appears under the thoraco–epigastric skin on one side of the trunk a cord–like mass as long as 10– some 10s cm and with mild stabbing pain and dragging pain which will be induced by movement. When the two ends of the cord–like mass are pressed with fingers, a umbilicate supersulcus will be seen on the skin.

(3) Migratory superficial thrombophlebitis

Superficial vein of the lower limbs often attacked, segmental red hot painful nodes and erythemas or cord–like masses which shift round, rise here and subside there in the diseased superficial veins; chromatosis and cord–like mass or hard node remaining in the skin after subsiding of the inflammation.

2. Deep venous thrombosis

Extensive swelling, pain and heaviness of the affected limb

which are aggravated after movement, full tense tough muscles of the shank, obvious pain due to dorsiflexion of the dorsum pedis or crushing and pressing of the shank belly, normal or dark red skin, general symptoms such as fever and discomfort in the early stage, higher temperature or short–time cold of some affected limbs with the latter caused by arteriospasm.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Type of Damp–heat

Main Symptoms: Swelling, pain, fever, dark red skin and tenderness of the affected limb which are relieved by cold but aggravated by heat, chocking sensation in the chest, anorexia, slight chills and fever, thirst without desire for drink, deep–colored and scanty urine, yellow greasy or thick greasy tongue coating, and slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, promoting diuresis, detoxicating adn removing obstruction in the channels.

Prescreption: *Yinchen Chixiaodou Tang* (Proven Prescription with Oriental Wormwood and Red Bean).

Ingredients:

Yinchen	Herba Artemisiae Scopariae	24 g
Chixiaodou	Semen Phaseoli	20 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	30 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Kushen	Radix Sophorae Flavescentis	12 g
Mufangji	Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g

Peilan	Herba Eupatorii	10 g
Baikou	Semen Amomi Cardamomi	10 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	10 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g
Sehggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For severe swelling and burning–pain, the drugs added are

Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	20 g.

For relieved swelling and unrelieved pain, the drugs added are

Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15 g
Dilong	Lumbricus	10 g
Rendongteng	Caulis Lonicerae	20 g.

(2) Type of Cold–dampness

Main Symptoms: Swelling relieved in the morning but worsened in the evening or by cold of the limb with normal skin and tense tough muscles on which there will appear pits when pressed with fingers, soreness and heaviness of the legs, poor appetite, white or white greasy tongue coating, and thready or deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Dispersing cold, resolving dampness, activating *Ying* and removing obstruction in the channels.

Prescreption 1: Modified *Bixie Huadu Tang* (71) (Decoction with Sevenlobed Yam for Detoxicating).

Ingredients:

Bixie	Rhizoma Dioscoreae Septelobae	30 g
Dangguiwei	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	10 g
Mugua	Fructus Chaenomelis	10 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	30 g
Qinjiao	Radix Gentianae Macrophyllae	10 g
Guizhi	Ramulus Cinnamomi	10 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Jixueteng	Caulis Spatholobi	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Prescreption 2: Modified *Duhuo Jisheng Tang* (72) (Decoction with Pubescent Angelica and Loranthus).

Ingredients:

Duhuo	Radix Angelicae Pubescentis	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Guizhi	Ramulus Cinnamomi	10 g
Qinjiao	Radix Gentianae Macrophyllae	10 g
Fangfeng	Radix Saposhinkoviae	10 g
Zhuling	Polyporus	15 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	15 g
Weilingxian	Radix Clematidis	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	12 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	12 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	30 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) Type of Blood Stasis

Main Symptoms: More severe swelling aggravated when the patient is walking and relieved after rest of the limb with slightly-abnormal or dark red skin, stabbing pain or soreness of the shank due to crush or pressure, ecchymosis on the tongue, white tongue coating, and deep taut or deep uneven pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Promoting blood circulation, removing blood stasis and dredging the vessels.

Prescreption: *Huoxue Tongmai Yin* (73) (Decoction for Promoting Blood Circulation and Activating Pulse).

Ingredients:

Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	30 g
Tufuling	Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae	30 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For severe swelling of the affected limb, the drugs added are

Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	20 g.

(4) Type of Deficiency of the Spleen

Main Symptoms: Pale or pale-yellow swollen limbs on which there will appear pits when pressed with fingers, sallow complexion, listlessness, lassitude, sensation of heaviness, acratia,

loss of appetite, pale enlarged tongue with white coating, and weak pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Warming up *Yang* , strengthening the spleen, promoting diuresis and removing obstruction in the channels.

Prescreption: *Wenyang Jianpi Tang* (Decoction for Warming *Yang* and Strengthening the Spleen).

Ingredients:

Huangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Shanyao	Rhizoma Dioscoreae	15 g
Huainiuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	15 g
Jixueteng	Caulis Spatholobi	15 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g
Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Prepatata	10 g
Ganjiang	Rhizoma Zingiberis	10 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Mugua	Fructus Chaenomaelis	10 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	30 g
Fuling	Poria	30 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dos daily.

(5) Type of Accumulation of Heat in Liver Channel

Main Symptoms: Cord–like mass with dragging, dull and tender pains in the thoraco–epigastric part; localized slightly–red skin, mild fever, dry mouth, bitter taste and discomfort throughout the body; yellow greasy tongue coating, and taut rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat from the liver, promoting blood circulation to subdue swelling.

Prescreption: *Chaihu Qinggan Tang* (38).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Shengdihuang	Radix Rehmanniae	15 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Zhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Huafen	Fructus Trichosanthis	10 g
Fangfeng	Radix Saposhinkoviae	10 g
Niubangzi	Fructus Arctii	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Clycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the acute stage of superficial thrombophlebitis, treatment should be based on "clearing away heat, detoxicating, subduing swelling and relieving pain". And *Xiaoyan Ruangao* (74) may be used externally. The following is the introduction to this *Ruangao* ointment.

Ingredients:

Furongye	Folium Hibisci Mutabilis	120 g
Dahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	30 g
Shengnanxing	Rhizoma Arisaematis	12 g
Shengma	Rhizoma Cimicifugae	15 g

Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	60 g.

Administration: The above drugs are ground into fine powder, to which 70% vaseline is added, and made into an ointment. The ointment is applied externally over the affected part, and dressing change with it is conducted once daily.

Instead, *Daqinggao* (18) may be externally applied, once daily.

(2) In the chronic stage of superficial and deep thrombophlebitis, treatment should be based on "promoting blood circulation, removing obstruction in the channels, dispersing wind and resolving masses". And the following prescription for fumigating and washing may be used.

Ingredients:

Dangguiwei	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	12 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Qianghuo	Radix seu Rhizoma Notopterygii	10 g
Duhuo	Radix Angelicae Pubescentis	10 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	12 g
Haitongpi	Cortex Erythrinae	10 g
Weilingxian	Radix Clematidis	12 g
Shengaiye	Folium Artemisiae Argyi	15 g
Shengjiang	Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens	60 g.

Administration: The drugs are decocted in water for the decoction. The affected part is firstly fumigated and then washed with the decoction while it is hot.

7 Diseases of Male External Genitalia

Diseases of male external genitalia consist of genital diseases and a part of diseases of the urinary system. In TCM, the genital organs and urinary system are both included in category of the kidney and urinary bladder.

7. 1 Balanoposthitis

This disease is the inflammation of both the balanus and prepuce due to reproduction of bacteria resulting from intracystic smegma and uncleanness in redundant phimosis or prepuce. It is included in the category of *Ganchuang* (chancre).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

The penis is controlled by the liver and the anus and external genital organ are dominated by the kidney. In the acute stage, damp–heat in the Liver Channel goes downwards to meet that invaded due to abrasion of the balanus and local uncleanness in the redundant prepuce in the external genitalia, where they stay and turn into heat which spoils the tissue into pus. If fire due to long accumulation of damp–heat in the Liver Channel goes downwards to burn the kidney–*Yin* , there will appear syndrome due to *Yin*–deficiency of the liver and kidney in the advanced stage.

Clinical Manifestations

Red, dampness, erosion and even small superficial ulcer with cream-white purulent secretion on the tunica intima of the balanus and prepuce; swelling, fever and mild pain and itching of the prepuce; enlarged and tender inguinal lymph nodes in most cases; no general symptons except for chills and fever in severe cases; yellow greasy tongue coating, and taut slippery rapid pulse. Improper treatment of the prolonged one may lead to cementation at the part of prepuce and balanus, incapability of the prepuce to be everted, stricture of external orifice of urethra and dysuria.

Differential Diagnosis

1. Soft Chancre

Soft chancre is one of the sexual diseases. The pathogenic bacterium is Hemophilic streptobacillus. Several days later after a dirty sexual intercourse, there appear red pimples usually on the balanus. Afterwards, they become pustules and ulcers. The ulcers are characterized by great number, superficiality, indistinct border, obvious red-swelling, softness, foul necrotic secretion and megalgia. Meanwhile, there exist enlarged inguinal lymph nodes on the both sides which tend to suppurate and fester, forming fish-mouth-like ulcers.

2. Hard Chancre

This disease is the early manifestation of apuired lues. The pathogenic bacterium is Spirochaeta pallida. The ulcers on the balanus are characterized by only one in number, distinct border, flat bottom, hardness of cartilage, no obvious red-swelling around, and no itching or pain. Although the inguinal lymph nodes on the both sides are enlarged, they do not tend to suppurate and fester.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the acute stage

Main Symptoms: Swelling, pain, hot sensation and itching of the penis and balanus on which there are even ulceration and purulent secretion, chills and fever in severe cases, deep-colored urine, yellow greasy tongue coating, and taut slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat from the liver, promoting diuresis and detoxicating.

Prescreption: Modified *Longdan Xiegan Tang* (40).

Ingredients:

Longdancao	Radix Gentianae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Difuzi	Fructus Kochiae	10 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis	10 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	15 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Tufuling	Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae	30 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For mild cases, *Longdan Xiegan Wan* may be taken with warm boiled water, 6 g each time, 2–3 times daily.

(2) In the chronic stage

Main Symptoms: Slow-growing purplish red granulation on

the surface of ulcer, soreness and weakness of the loins and knees, vertigo, reddened tongue with little coating, and thready slightly rapid pulse, all of which are due to *Yin*–deficiency of the liver and kidney; or fresh granulation on the surface of ulcer with little pyogenic secretion, but no general discomfort.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing the liver and kidney for the former, and external treatment for the latter.

Prescreption: *Liuwei Dihuang Wan* (12) or *Qiju Dihuang Wan* (75) (Bolus with Rehmannia, Wolfberry and Chysathemum).

Administration: 10 g is taken with warm boiled water each time, 3 times daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the acute stage

A. The affected part is fumigated and washed with hot decoction of *Jiedu Xiyao* (28), 20 minutes each time, twice daily.

B. The ulcer with pus is fumigated ad washed with the above decoction and then dusted with little *Niuhuang San* (95) (Cow–bezoare Powder) and *Dahuang Youshabu* (21). The following is the introduction to *Niuhuang San* .

Ingredients:

Niuhuang	Calculus Bovis	0.3 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Duanshijueming	forged Concha Haliotidis	3 g
Zhiruxiang	Olibanum Preparata	3 g
Zhimoyao	Myrrha Preparata	3 g
Duanmuli	forged Concha Ostreae	3 g
Duanlonggu	forged Os Draconis Fossilia	3 g
Xiongdan	Fel Ursi	1.5 g
Qingfen	Calomelas	1.5 g.

Administration: Ground into very fine powder for use.

(2) In the chronic stage

A. After fumigated and washed with *Manxing Kuiyang Xiyao* (29), the affected part is covered with *Shengji San* (26) and *Shengji Yuhonggao Youshabu* (22).

B. When there has appeared fresh granulation on the surface of ulcer without pus and necrosis, dressing change only with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21) or *Shengji Yuhonggao Youshabu* (22) is enough.

(3) Operative treatment

Circumcision is performed to treat redundant prepuce after the inflammation has subsided.

7.2 Induration of Penis

Induration of penis refers to fibrosis of cavernous body of penis. It is due to fibrous masses produced between tunica albuginea corporum cavernosorsum and fascia penis.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Qi and blood stagnated in the Liver Channel and phlegm produced in the interior due to dysfunction of the spleen go downwards to the penis, where they accumulate and cause this disease. Because Zushaoyin is connected with the penis, syndrome due to *Yin*–deficiency of the liver and kidney may be seen sometimes.

Clinical Manifestations

This disease is common in middle–aged males and manifested as: distinctly–bordered, usually fixed, hard cord–like or plaque–type nodes palpable on the dorsum penis. The nodes, in

general, do not attract any attention but make the penis painful and bent when it has erected, influencing sexual life in severe cases. However, they do not disturb urination nor fester. Shadow of calcification or ossification may be seen in roentgenogram.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Syndrome due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood

Main Symptoms: Harder nodes in the penis which are painful because of overstrain; irritability, impatience, white tongue coating, and taut pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Regulating *Qi* , Promoting blood circulation, resolving phlegm and dispersing nodes.

Prescreption: *Huajian Sanjie Tang* (Proven Prescription for Resolving Stronghold and Dispersing Masses).

Ingredients:

Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Xiangfu	Rhizoma Cyperi	10 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	20 g
Haizao	Sargassum	20 g
Niuxi	Radxi Achyranthis Bidentatae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Sanleng	Rhizoma Sparganii	10 g
Ezhu	Rhizoma Curcumae	10 g
Jiangcan	Bombyx Batryticatus	10 g
Banxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g
Baijiezi	Semen Sinapis Alba	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) Syndrome due to *Yin*—deficiency of the liver and kidney

Main Symptoms: Nodes in the penis with slightly red skin and mild pain, soreness and weakness of the loins and legs, vertigo, slightly red tongue with little coating, and thready slightly rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin* , clearing away heat, resolving phlegm and dispersing nodes.

Prescreption: Modified *Liuwei Dihuang Tang* (12).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Shanzhuyu	Fructus Corni	12 g
Fendanpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Fuling	Poria	12 g
Shanyao	Rhizoma Dioscoreae	12 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	12 g
Jiangcan	Bombyx Batryticatus	10 g
Banxia	Rhizoma Pinelliae	10 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	6 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Together with the decoction, 5–10 tablets of *Sichong Pian* (51) (Same amount of *Wugong* Scolopendra, *Quanxie* Scorpio, *Dilong* Lumbricus and *Zhechong* Eupolyphaga seu Steleophaga, are ground into fine powder and made into tablets, each weighing 0. 3 g.) or 6–8 tablets of *Sanjie Pian* (58) may be taken each time,

3 times daily.

2. External Treatment

Local application of small pieces of *Yanghe Jiening Gao* (15) is conducted with the dressing change taking place once a week. Or, audio frequency physiotherapy is carried out, 1–2 times each week, 10 times consisting of 1 course of treatment.

7. 3 Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis

Under normal condition, balance between secretion and absorption of fluid in the capsule of tunica vaginalis testis is kept. When hypersecretion or hypoabsorption has been caused by some pathogenic factor, hydrocele of tunica vaginalis results. This diseass falls into two types: congenital and secondary. The former is common in infants and very young children, while the latter in adults. As a common disease of scrotum, it is included in the category of *Shuishan* (hydrocele), in TCM.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

That in infants and very young children is usually caused by retention of fluid in the scrotum due to inadequate functional activity of the kidney–*Qi* resulting form congenital weakness. That in adults is often caused like this. Cold–dampness in the Kidney Channel caused by affection of exgenous cold–dampness and retention of water due to sweating after overstrain, catching in the rain or long sitting on wet ground, damp–heat in the Liver Channel and obstruction of blood stasis in the channels due to trauma or retention of water lead to water or damp–heat to go downwards to the scrotum and stay there to result in this disease.

Clinical Manifestations

Gradually enlarged unilateral scrotum with egg–shaped, smooth, cystic and not painful mass; tenesmus due to bigger mass, penis buried by the skin around due to too big mass which makes urination and sexual intercourse difficult, testis and epididymis impalpable because they are surrounded by hydrops, testis maybe palpable in funicular hydrocele of tunica vaginalis because the mass is above the testis, congenital hydrocele of tunica vaginalis gradually reduced up to vanishing when the patient is in lying position, ordinary hydrocele of tunica vaginalis remaining the same even if the patient is in different position, and positive transillumination of the cystic mass in hydrocele of tunica vaginalis.

differential Diagnosis

1. Inguinal Hernia

The mass capable of going into the abdominal cavity, bound of the mass sensed during coughing, no fluctuation, palpable testis, and negative transillumination.

2. Congenital Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis

The characteristics except positive transillumination are the same as those of hernia.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis in infants and very young children

Main Symptoms: Chills, cold limbs, pale complexion, shortness of breath, languor, frequent urination, pale tongue with white coating, and deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Warming the kidney, activating *Yang*, promoting the flow of *Qi* and inducing diuresis.

Prescreption: *Jisheng Shenqi Wan* (76) (Life Preserving Pill for Replenishing the kidney–*Qi*).

Administration: 1–3 g of the pills is taken wiht boiled water each time, 2–3 times daily.

(2) Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis in adults

①Syndrome due to cold–dampness resulting from deficiency of the kidney

Main Symptoms: Dampness and cold of the scrotum, cold–pain fo the loins and knees, clear and profuse urine, pale tongue with white greasy coating, and deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Warming the kidney, dispelling cold, promoting diuresis and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Baojian Danggui Sini Tang* (77) (Chinese Angelica Decoction for Restoring *Yang*) and *Daoqi Tang* (78) (Decoction for Inducing *Qi*).

Ingredients:

Dangguiwei	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	12 g
Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g
Xiaohuixiang	Fructus Foeniculi	6 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	10 g
Wuyao	Radix Linderae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	10 g
Yanhusuo	Rhizoma Corydalis	10 g
Chuanlianzi	Fructus Toosendan	10 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis	10 g
Chifuling	Poria	15 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction,

which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

②Syndrome due to damp–heat in Liver Channel

Main Symptoms: Damp and hot scrotum, swollen and painful testis and epididymis, yellowish urine, yellow and greasy tongue coating, and taut slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Methtod: Clearing away heat from the liver, promoting diuresis and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: *Longdan Xiegan Tang* (40) (Decoction with Gentiana for Purging the Liver–fire).

Ingredients:

Longdancao	Radix Gentianae	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Zhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	12 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	15 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	3 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

③Syndrome due to accumulation of blood stasis

Main Symptoms: Swollen and painful scrotum with dark purple skin, negative transillumination in most cases, purplish tongue with white coating, and taut uneven pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Promoting blood circulation to remove blood stasis, inducing diuresis to subdue swelling.

Recipe: Modified *Huoxue Sanyu Tang* (48).

Ingredients:

Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Dahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	6 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	12 g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	15 g
Zhuling	Polyporus	15 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) Ingredients:

Wubeizi	Galla Chinensis	30 g
Baifan	Alumen	15 g
Xiaohuixiang	Fructus Foeniculi	10 g.

Indications: Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis in infants and very young children

Administration: The druge are decocted in water for the decoction. The affected part is fumigated and then washed with the hot decoction, twice daily.

(2) Name:

Xiaofan Xiyao (Drugs with Mirabilite and Alum in for Washing).

Ingredients:

Mangxiao	Natrii Sulfas	12 g

Pengsha	Borax	10 g
Baifan	Alumen	10 g.

Indications: Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis with the syndrome due to damp–heat in the Liver Channel.

Administration: The drugs are infused with boiling water, which is kept warm with heat. The affected part is fumigated and washed with the warm water. 1 dose is used twice daily.

(3) Ingredients:

Xiaohuixiang	Fructus Foeniculi	30 g
Juhe	Semen Citri Reticulatae	30 g.

Indications: Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis with the syndrome due to cold–dampness resulting from deficiency of the kidney.

Administration: The drugs are ground into rough powder, parched warm and put into a cloth bag. The scrotum is compressed with the hot bag, once daily.

(4) Name:

Huoxue Zhiteng San (Powder for Promoting Blood Circulation and Arresting Pain).

Ingredients:

Tougucao	Herba Aperanskiae Tuberculatae	30 g
Chuanlianzi	Fructus Toosendan	15 g
Dangguiwei	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Jianghuang	Rhizoma Curcumae Longae	15 g
Haitongpi	Cortex Erythrinae	15 g
Weilingxian	Radix Clematidis	15 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	15 g
Qianghuo	Radix seu Rhizoma Notopterygii	15 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	15 g

Sumu	Lignum Sappan	15 g
Wujiapi	Cortex Acanthopanacis	15 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	15 g
Tufuling	Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae	15 g
Chuanjiao	Pericarpium Zanthoxyli	6 g
Ruxiang	Olibanum	6 g.

Indications: Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis with the syndrome due to accumulation of blood stasis.

Administration: The drugs are decocted in water for the decoction. The affected part is fumigated and washed with the hot decoction, twice daily.

3. Proven Prescription

Ingredients:

Xiaohuixiang	Fructus Foeniculi	1–3 g.
Lüpiyadan	duck's egg with green shell	one
Shiyan	Sodium Chloride	small amount
Huashengyou	Oleum Arachidis	Proper amount.

Indications: Hydrocele of Tunica Vaginalis in infants and very young children.

Administration: *Xiaohuixiang* is parched up to brown and then ground into very fine powder, which is mixed in an iron pot with *Shiyan* , *Huashengyou* and the duck's egg whose shell has been removed into a mixture. The mixture is stir–fried until it is well done and then taken at a draught. This is done once daily.

4. Operative Treatment

Too big mass in the scrotum or mass having been treated with drugs for one month but without curative effects should be treated with operation.

7. 4 Epididymitis

This diseass is mainly due to infection of bacteria through the spermatic duct, usually originating from infection of urethra, prostata or seminal vesicle. TCM includes it in the category of *Ziyong* (acute or chronic orchitis and epididymitis).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Stagnation of *Qi* and blood in the testis due to going down of damp–heat in the Liver Channel and retention of noxious–damp–heat in the channels lead to this disease. Excessive heat due to long stagnation of *Qi* and blood may turn flesh into pus. *Qi* and blood retained so long will turn into chronic mass.

Clinical Manifestations

Sudden onset in acute cases, swelling and pain of the epididymis, the testis enlarged when it has been involved in the inflammation, red–swelling and burning–pain of the scrotum, dragging pain in the lower abdomen occurring when the inflammation involves the funiculus, red swollen bright skin of the scrotum whose center is soft and raised due to suppuration, the symptoms vanishing more rapidly and the sore healing gradually after incision or ulceration of the abscess which is followed by discharging of pus and purging of toxins, chills, fever, thirst, deep–colored urine, enlarged remarkedly tender epididymis and testis seen through examination, complications of funiculitis and hydrocele testis, and slightly tender or tenesmic distending cold–painful tough mass or hard node in the epididymis or testis of chronic cases.

Differential Diagnosis

Chronic epididymitis need be differentiated from the following diseases.

1. Tuberculosis of epididymis

Some symptoms in the early stage of this disease are similar to those of acute epididymitis. By the late stage, the tail of epididymis or the whole epididymis has become a hard node without severe tenderness. Cementing with the skin of scrotum, this hard node may involve the testis and have sinus. There are nodes like a string of beads in the spermatic duct. Hard nodes in the prostata and seminal vesicle may be palpable when digital examination of rectum is conducted.

2. Cystis of epididymis

Tenser semi-transparent mass maybe occurring in any part of the epididymis and located at the back of the testis.

3. Orchioncus

Enlarged, not painful, solid and heavier testis with node-lik surface but without the original elasticity, possible distant transfer lymphnodes, and complications of hydrocele of tunica vaginalis and hematoma of scrotum.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the acute stage (syndrome due to damp-heat having gone down).

Main Symptoms: Red swollen burning painful tender epididymis and scrotum, chills, fever, thirst, yellowish urine, dry stools, yellow greasy tongue coating, and taut slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat from the liver, promoting diuresis, removing toxic material and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Longdan Xiegan Tang* (40).

Ingredients:

Longdancao	Radix Gentianae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Huangqi	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Zhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Juhe	Semen Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Zihuadiding	Herba Violae	20 g
Banlangen	Radix Isatidis	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of persistent high fever, the dosage of *Chaihu* and *Huangqin* in the original prescription is separately changed into 15 g, and 15 g of *Lianqiao* (Fructus Forsythiae) is added.

In case of constipation, 10 g of *Dahuang* (Radix et Rhizoma Rhei) is added last.

In case of severe swelling and pain, 1. 5–3 g of *Xihuang Wan* (79) is infused in water and then taken.

After suppuration, the drugs added are

Shanjiazhu	Squama Mantidis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g.

(2) In the chronic stage (syndrome due to stagnation of *Qi*

and blood)

Main Symptoms: Tough mass or hard node with mild tenderness in the affceted part; tenesmus, distension, cold-pain in the lower abdomen; the swelling and pain probably aggravated by overstrain or pungent food, white tongue coating, and thready taut pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Soothing the liver, regulating *Qi* , removing blood stasis and dispersing mass.

Prescreption: Modified *Gouju Tang* (80) (Decoction with Orange).

Ingredients:

Gouju	Fructus Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Chuanlianzi	Fructus Toosendan	10 g
Jiangcan	Bombyx Batryticatus	10 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Mantidis Preparata	10 g
Juhe	Semen Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Lizhihe	Semen Litchi	10 g
Shanzhahe	Semen Crataegi	15 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Wuyao	Radix Linderae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	20 g
Xiaohuixiang	Fructus Foeniculi	6 g
Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening. 1 dose daily.

Modification: Together with the decoction, *Sanjie Pian* (58)

is taken for the purpose of subduing swelling and resolving mass.

2. External Treatment

(1) In the acute stage

Jinhuang Gao (17) or *Daqing Gao* (18) is externally applied to the local part. Incision for drainage should be conducted after suppuration. Routine dressing change is carried out according to that in treatment of pyogenic diseases after ulceration. Bed rest is suggested with the scrotum supported with bandage of scrotal support.

(2) In the chronic stage

30 g of *Chonghegao Fen* (19) is infused with 300 ml of boiling water. The affected part is soaked in, and washed with, the medicated water. which is kept warm, 20 minutes each time, twice daily.

7. 5 Tuberculosis of Epididymis

Being one of the common tuberculoses of the reproductive system and a secondary disease of tuberculosis in other parts of the body, tuberculosis of epididymis is usually caused by the infection due to invasion of Myobactera tuberculosis into the epididymis through posterior urethra and spermatic duct. Modern TCM physicians called this disease as *Zitan* according to the nature of *Liutan* (tuberculosis of bones and joints).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Phlegm takes the advantage of weakness of the vessels due to impairment of the liver and kidney to go downwards into the testis, where it stays and casue this disease. Heat is produced because of long retention of phlegm and pus comes from spoiled

flesh due to excessive heat. In the course of suppuration, syndrome due to internal heat resulting from *Yin* –deficiency may be caused by heat from phlegm. Manifestations due to *Yang*–deficiency of the kidney may aslo appear when long time of *Yin* –deficiency has involved *Yang* .

Clinical Manifestations

1. Symptoms and Signs

Common in the young and middle–aged of 20–35, slow development, a hard node usually occurring at the tail of unilateral epididymis and then diffusing to the whole epididymis and testis, the node with usual tenderness, mild pain or tenesmic–distending pain, thickened funiculus, nodes like a string of beads existing in the spermatic duct, such things coming into being after months or years as cementation of masses in the testis with the skin, swelling gradually becoming obvious, dark–red skin and formation of abscess of cold nature, thin pus with necrotic tissue like bean dreg–like or caseous thing discharged after ulceration, unhealing sinus, no general symptoms usually in the early stage, and symptoms of internal heat due to *Yin* –deficiency or *Yang* –deficiency of the kidney probably appearing after suppuration and ulceration.

2. Examination

Slightly enlarged prostata and hard node seen in digital examination of rectum, higher lymphocyte count and accelerated blood sedimentation seen in blood test, red blood cells seen in mycroscopy of urine, and positive tuberculin test in most cases.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) In the early stage

Main Symptoms: Not painful or slightly tenesmic—distending mass with normal skin and temperature, no remarkable general symptoms in most cases, white tongue coating, and deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Tonifying the liver and kidney, warming the channels, dredging the collaterals, resolving phlegm and dispersing mass.

Prescreption: Modified *Yanghe Tang* (8).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Mahuang	Herba Ephedrae	3 g
Lujiaojiao	Colla Cornus Cervi	10 g
Baijiezi	Semen Sinapis Alba	10 g
Paojiangtan	Rhizoma Zingiberis Carbonisatus	6 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	6 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Huainiuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	12 g
Juhe	Semen Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Baibu	Radix Stemonae	10 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	20 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: *Xiaojin Dan* (57) or *Sichong Pian* (51) may be taken together with the decoction.

(2) In the suppurative stage

Main Symptoms: Enlarged scrotum, cementation of mass in the testis with the skin which is dark red, slight fever, tidal fever, night sweat, feverish sensation in the palms and soles, reddened

tongue with little coating, and thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin* , clearing away heat, eliminating dampness, resolving phlegm and expelling pus from within by eruption.

Prescreption: Modified *Ziyin Chushi Tang* (81) (Decoction for Nourishing *Yin* and Removing Dampness).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Digupi	Cortex Lycii	10 g
Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	12 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	12 g
Huainiuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	12 g
Shenghuangqi	Radix Astragali	20 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Mantidis Preparata	10 g
Zaojiaoci	Spina Gleditsiae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) In the postulcerative stage

① Syndrome due to deficiency of *Yang*

Main Symptoms: Pus as thin as sputum, grey and dark granulation on the surface of the sore, pale complexion, cold limbs, chills, loose stools, frequent urination, enlarged tender tongue with white coating, and deep thready slow pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Invigorating *Qi* , nourishing blood, drastically tonifying the liver and kidney.

Prescreption: Modified *Xiantian Dazao Wan* (82) (Miraculous Bolus for Clearing Bone–heat).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Heshouwu	Radix Polygoni Multiflori	12 g
Roucongrong	Herba Cistanches	10 g
Xianmao	Rhizoma Curculiginis	10 g
ZihecheFen	Placenta Hominis in the form of powder and taken after being infused in water	3 g
Tusizi	Semen Cuscutae	12 g
Huangjing	Rhizoma Polygonati	15 g
Gouqi	Fructus Lycii	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	12 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Fuling	Poria	12 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	3 g
Huangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Bolus of *Xiantian Dazao Wan* (82) or Bolus of *Yougui Wan* (83) may be taken by mild cases.

②Syndrome due to internal heat resulting from deficiency of *Yin*

Treatment is based on modified *Chushi Tang* used in the suppurative stage.

2. External Treatment

(1) *Yanghe Jiening Gao* (15) is applied in the early stage. Incision for drainage should be performed when pus fails to be absorbed. Dressing change is conducted, after ulceration, with drugs having the action of expelling pus and removing necrosis, but corrosive drugs should be cautiously used. Dressing change with drugs having the action of promoting the generation of tissues is suggested when necrosis is about to fall off and fresh tissue is going to generate.

(2) In the early stage, iontherapy may be tried locally. The diseased scrotum may be held with a scrotal support. If the sinus fails to respond to any treatment, operation should be considered.

7.6 Chronic Prostatitis

Chronic prostatitis is very very common in male adults, far more common than the acute one. With complicated clinical manifestations, it is hard to cure. According to the usually-seen white secretion from the urethra, TCM includes this disease in the category of *Jingzhuo* (turbid sperm).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

The door of essence room is unlocked because of excessive sexual intercourse. Damp-heat takes the opportunity to occupy the room, forcing sperm to flow to the urinary bladder and leave the body along with urine. Then, there will result deficiency of the kidney-*Yin* , hyperactivity of the ministerial fire, disturbance of essence room and retention of fire, all of which get together to lead to stagnation of *Qi* and blood in the spermatic duct and cause this disease at last. If the disease course is prolonged, the

deficient *Yin* will involve *Yang* . At this time, there will occur syndrome due to insufficiency of the kidney—*Yang* .

Clinical Manifestations

White and turbid drip from the urethral meatus commonly seen at the end of urination or in the course of having a bowel movement with one's strength, or white sticky secretion from the urethral meatus usually found after getting up in the morning; frequent urination and burning urine and stabbbing and itching urethra existing in most cases; tenesmus and distension and pain in the lower abdomen, lumbosacral portion, perineum and testes; listlessness, acratia, dizziness, insomnia, sexual hypoesthesia, spermatorrhea, prospermia, impotence and hemospermia.

Examination

Enlarged prostate with hard nodes and inflammatory infiltration seen through digital examination of rectum, hardened prostata with tenderness of different degree in cases of repeated recurrences, higher white blood cell count (more than 10 in a high power field) or piles of white blood cells and reduced lecithin corpuscles seen through smear examination of succus prostaticus obtained by massage, great number of pyocytes and dead sperms and even no sperms maybe found in spermoculture of severe cases.

Type and Treatment

1. Interanl Treatment

(1) Syndrome due to damp—heat

Main Symptoms: Frequent urination, burning—pain and stabbing—itching in the penis, yellowish turbid urine, white turbid drips from the urethral meatus appearing at the end of urination or in the course of defecating with one's strength, distension and

pain in the lower abdomen and perineum, dry mouth, yellow greasy tongue coating, and slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, promoting diuresis, keeping essence and removing the turbid.

Prescreption: Modified *Bixie Fenqing yin* (84) (Yam Decoction for Clearing Turbid Urine).

Ingredients:

Chuanbixie	Rhizoma Dioscoreae Septemlobae	15 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis decocted after being warpped in a piece of cloth	15g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15g
Baijiangcao	Herba Patriniae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	10 g
Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	10 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g
Chuanlianzi	Fructus Toosendan	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) Syndrome due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood

Main Symptoms: Tenesmus, distension and vague pain in the lower abdomen, lumbosacral portion, testes and perineum; little white turbid drips at the end of urination, or hematuria, hemospermia; ecchymosis on the tongue, dark purple tongue with

thin white coating, and deep uneven pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Promoting blood circulation, removing blood stasis, activating the flow of *Qi* and expelling stagnated *Qi* .

Prescreption: *Qianliexianyan Tang* (Decoction for Treating Prostatitis).

Ingredients:

Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	10 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Ruxiang	Olibanum	10 g
Moyao	Myrrha	10 g
Wangbuliuxing	Semen Vaccariae	12 g
Qingpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride	10 g
Chuanlianzi	Fructus Toosendan	10 g
Xiaohuixiang	Fructus Foeniculi	6 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	10 g
Baijiangcao	Herba Patriniae	30 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: For hematuria and hemospermia, the drug added is

Hansanqi Fen	Radix Notoginseng in the form of powder and taken twice after being infused with water	3 g.

In case of harder prostata, the drugs added are

Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Sanleng	Rhizoma Sparganii	10 g
Ezhu	Rhizoma Curcumae	10 g.

(3) Syndrome due to hyperactivity of fire resulting from deficiency of *Yin*

Main symptoms: Soreness and weakness fo the loins and knees, vertigo, insomnia, dreamfulness, spermatorrhea, tendency of erecting of the penis, white turbid drip from the meatus urinarius at the end of urination or at the though of sexual intercourse or in the course of having a bowel movement, or hemospermia, reddened tongue, and thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing the kidney—*Yin* and purging ministerial fire

Prescreption: Modified *Zhibai Dihuang Tang* (70) (Decoction with Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia) and *Bixie Fenqing Yin* (84).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	15 g
Bixie	Rhizoma Dioscoreae Sepemlobae	15 g
Qianshi	Semen Euryales	15 g
Shanzhuyu	Fructus Corni	12 g
Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Shichangpu	Radix Saposhinkoviae	10 g.
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis decocted after being wrapped in a piece of cloth	10 g

Niuxi Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae 10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in th morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(4) Syndrome due to insufficiency of the kidney–*Yang*

Main Symptoms: Soreness and cold of the loins and knees, impotence, prospermia, spermatorrhea, frequent urination, dizziness, white turbid drips from the meatus urinarius due to mild strain, enlarged tender tongue with white coating, and deep thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Reinforcing the kidney, strengthening *Yang* , controlling spermatorrhea and stopping dribbing of the turbid from the meatus urinarius.

Prescreption: Modified *Jinsuo Gujing Wan* (85) (Golden Lock Pill for Keeping the Kidney Essence) and *Yougui Wan* (83) (Bolus for Reinforcing the Kidney–*Yang*).

Ingredients:

Shayuanjili	Semen Astragali Complanati	30 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	30 g
Qianshi	Semen Euryales	30 g
Duanlonggu	forged Os Draconis Fossilia	15 g
Duanmuli	forged Concha Ostreae	15 g
Shanzhuyu	Fructus Corni	15 g
Gouqizi	Fructus Lycii	12 g
Huainiuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	12 g
Duzhongtan	Cortex Eucommiae Carbonisatus	12 g
Tusizi	Semen Cuscutae	12 g
Zhifuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	10 g
Lujiaojiao	Colla Cornus Cervi	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) *Jiedu Xiyao* (28) is decocted in water for the decoction and hip bath is taken in this hot decoction to wash the perineum, 30 minutes each time, twice daily. This may be done with *Huoxue Zhiteng San* (86) in the same way. The former is for the treatment of syndrome due to damp–heat, while the latter for syndrome due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood.

(2) Have the infective substance discharged out of the prostate by massage of it so as to promote the absorption of the inflammation, once a week.

(3) Physiotherapy is conducted with local ultrashort wave diathermy or iontherapy of effective antibiotics.

7.7 Hyperplasia of Prostate

Hyperplasia of prostate, also called as prostatic hyperplasia, is a common disease of the male aged. Its main symptoms are frequent urination, difficulty in urination and uroschesis. TCM includes this disease in the category of *Longbi*(uroschesis).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

The urinary bladder works as if it were a state officer in charge of the storage of water. When it is in good condition, urination will be normal. Dysfunction of it leads to uroschesis. So the pathologic change of hyperplasia of prostate takes place in the urinary bladder. However, normal smooth urination is dependent on the normal function of tri–*Jiao* and the normal function of tri–*Jiao* relies on the lung, spleen and kidney. For

instance, dysfunction of the lung (the upper–*Jiao*) in descending makes water passages fail to be drained, which prevents water from flowing to the bladder. Disorder of the spleen and stomach (the middle–*Jiao*) leads to accumulation of damp–heat in the bladder or weakness of the spleen–*Qi* brings about sinking of the *Qi* of the middle–*Jiao* to the bladder, either of which troubles the bladder. In addition, deficiency of the *Qi* of the kidney (the lower–Jiao) results in imbalance between *Yin* and *Yang* , which also influences the bladder. In short, disturbance of any of the above organs will, in the end, cause anuresis, uneven urination, enuresis and urinary incontinence. Moreover, symptoms such as anuresis may be induced due to accumulation of blood in the bladder, for the blood stasis will block water passages.

Clinical Manifestations

Slow onset, frequent urination occurring in the early stage which is especially obvious in the night, difficulty in urination appearing after the symptom frequent urination, urination taking place after long waiting, dribbing of urine at the end of urination which gives the feeling that the urination is not complete. Urinating in fraction because of incomplete urination, urination becoming more difficult as the obstructure is getting ever so severe, urinating within short range, thin urine scream, more and more urine retained in the bladder which is often distended so as to cause chronic uroschesis, even voluntary micturation (false urinary incontinence) or enuresis in the night, great amount of hematuria occasionally seen when the superficial cirsoid phleborrhexis of the glands occurs, stone and hyperemia of the prostata and the neck of the bladder and symptoms due to acute uroschesis or irritation to the bladder all of which are induced by

overstrain, affection of cold, excess of sexual intercourse, over–intake of pungent or irritant food or secondary infection of the bladder raised blood pressure, acratia, dizziness, vertigo, poor appetite, and complications of pile, hernia, proctoptosis and hematochezia.

Diagnosis

Digital examination of rectum is the main means. Diagnosis may be made according to the history. The prostate is smooth, distinctly–bordered, harder and elastic. The central sulcus shallows and even vanishes and its upper edge is impalpable sometimes. The hyperplasia is in the lateral and middle lobes, both of which feel enlarged. If the hyperplasia nearly all enters the bladder or it is little, there will no hyperplasia of prostate found out in the examination. If so, diagnosis should be made according to the history and other means of examination.

Type and Treatment

Anuresis, dribbing of urine and difficulty in urination are symptoms of excess type; urinary incontinence or enuresis, deficiency type; sudden anuresis, excess type; and long–time of anuresis, deficiency type. Synptoms of excess type are treated mainly through promoting diuresis, while deficiency type, through tonifying.

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Syndrome due to obstruction of water passage resulting from dysfunction of the lung

Main Symptoms: Uneven urination, even anuresis, dry throat and mouth, cough with sputum and dyspnea, thin yellow or white tongue coating, and rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Promoting the flow of the lung–*Qi* ,

clearing away heat and inducing diuesis.

Prescreption: Modified *Huangqin Qingfei Yin* (87) (Decoction with Scutellaria for Clearing away Lung Fire).

Ingredients:

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	12 g
Sangbaipi	Cortex Mori	12 g
Maidong	Radix Ophiopogonis	12 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	10 g
jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g
Xingren	Semen Armeniacae Amarum	10 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis decocted after being wrapped in a piece of cloth	15 g
Fuling	Poria	12 g
Baimaogen	Rhizoma Imperatae	30 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) Syndrome due to damp–heat descending to the urinary bladder

Main Symptoms: Uneven urination, yellowish and hot urine, itching and pain in the penis, even anuresis, spasm and distension of the lower abdomen, reddened tongue with yellow greasy coating, and slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away damp–heat from the urinary bladder

Prescreption: Modified *Bazheng San* (88) (Eight–healthy Restoring Powder).

Ingredients:

Bianxu	Herba Polygoni Avicularis	15 g

Qumai	Herba Dianthi	15 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis decocted in water after being wrapped in a piece of cloth)	15 g
Haijinsha	Spora Lygodii	15 g
Shiwei	Folium Pyrrosiae	15 g
Pugongying	Herba Taraxaci	30 g
Jinqiancao	Herba Lysimachiae	30 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	10 g
Shanzhizi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g
Dahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	10 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Gancaoshao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) Syndrome due to irresponsible bladder resulting from sinking of the *Qi* of the middle–*Jiao*

Main Symptoms: Urinary incontinence or enuresis, listlessness, shortness of breath, languor, pale complexion, pale tongue with white coating, and thready feeble pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Reinforcing the middle–*Jiao* . , invigorating *Qi* and restraining the bladder.

Prescreption: Modified *Buzhong Yiqi Tang* (89) (Decoction for Reinforcing the Middle–*Jiao* and Replenishing *Qi*).

Ingredients:

Huangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	12 g

Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	12 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Shengma	Rhizoma Cimicifugae	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g
Jinyingzi	Fructus Rosae Laevigatae	15 g
Yizhiren	Fructus Alpiniae Oxyphyllae	15 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(4) Syndrome due to incomplete urination resulting from insufficiency of the kidney–*Yin*

Main Symptoms: Frequent urination with dribbing and retained urine, dizziness, vertigo, soreness and weakness of the loins and knees, dreamfulness, insomnia; and reddened tongue, dry throat, yellowish hot urine and thready rapid pulse in cases with heat due to *Yin* –deficiency.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing the kidney–*Yin* and activating the bladder

Prescreption: Modified *Zhibai Dihuang Tang(70)*.

Ingredients:

Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	12 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	20 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	12 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Shanyao	Rhizoma Dioscoreae	12 g
Shanzhuyu	Fructus Corni	10 g
Qumai	Herba Dianthi	15 g

Bianxu	Herba Polygoni Avicularis	15 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g.
Chenqianzi	Semen Plantaginis (decocted after being warpped in a piece of cloth)	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(5) Syndrome due to dysfunction of *Qi* resulting from insufficiency of the kidney–*Yang*

Main symptoms: Anuresis or dribbing urine, pale complexion, soreness and cold of the loins and knees, pale tongue with white coating. and deep thready slow feeble pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Warming and reinforcing the kidney–*Yang* and removing obstruction to promote diuresis

Prescreption: Modified *Jisheng Shenqi Wan* (76).

Ingredients:

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	20 g
Shanyao	Rhizoma Dioscoreae	15 g
Fuling	Poria	15 g
Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis (decocted after being wrapped in a piece of cloth)	15 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	12 g
Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g
Rougui	Cortex Cinnamomi	10 g
Huainiuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Roucongrong	Herba Cistanches	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(6) Syndrome due to obstruction of the bladder resulting

from retention of blood in the lower—*Jiao*

Main Symptoms: Urinating with great efforts or anuresis, distending pain in the perineum and lower abdomen, occasional hematuria or hemospermia, dark purple or ecchymosis—dotted tongue, and thready taut uneven pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Promoting blood circulation, resolving mass and removing obstruction in the bladder.

Prescreption: A proven prescription

Ingredients:

Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	20 g
Haizao	Sargassum	20 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g
Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	15 g
Mabiancao	Herba Verbenae	15 g
Bianxu	Herba Polygoni Avicularis	15 g
Qumai	Herba Dianthi	15 g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15 g
Sanleng	Rhizoma Sparganii	10 g
Ezhu	Rhizoma Curcumae	10 g
Shanjiazhu	Squama Manitis Preparata	10 g
Wangbuliuxing	Semen Vaccariae	10 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

2. External Treatment

(1) External application

250 g of *Shiyan* (Natrii Chloride) is parched warm and then wrapped in a piece of cloth, which is used to compress the lower

abdomen, 30 minutes each time, twice daily. Remember to keep the *Shiyan* warm through another porching.

(2) Tuina therapy

Have the patient lie on his back and extend his legs straight in the way of abduction and extorsion. *Tui* (push) the point Jimen of the right leg area (on the surface of thigh below the inguinal ligament and above the knee joint) unidirectionally from the lower to the upper with an even forceful manipulation of moderate speed, 1000 times each time. In case of distending and full bladder due to long–time uroschesis, the two points of the both legs are Tuied (pushed) at the same time by two massagists.

(3) Acupuncture therapy

The points Zhongji (RN 3), Sanyinjiao (SP 6), Yinlingquan (SP 9) and Pangguangshu (BL 28) are punctured . In case of general weakness, moxibustion may be done over the points Guanyuan (RN 4)and Qihai(RN 6).

(4) Urethral catheterization

If there is no curative effects obtained from the above, an urinary catheter is inserted to drain the urine with aseptic manipulation.

(5) Operative treatment

Operation should be considered for those refusing all the other therapies.

8 Other Surgical Disorders

8.1 Burn

Damage of the body surface due to fire, hot water, hot steam, hot oil or other liquids with high temperature, flashing light, radioactive energy, electricity, strong acid, strong base, etc. has a total name—burn, which was called as *Tanghuoshang* (burn and scald)in ancient literature of TCM.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Disease is brought about once noxious fire and heat attack the body. In mild cases, damage with limited extent and depth is done to the skin, on which there appear erythema, blister and erosion, while in severe cases damage large and deep, to the muscles, *Yin*–fluid in the body and even the *Zang–Fu* organs, leading to incoordination between *Zang* and *Fu* , imbalance between *Yin* and *Yang* and many other syndromes.

Calculation of Burn Extent and Depth

1. Calculation of Extent

(1) Palm method

A palm of the patient with the five fingers stretched naturally is 1% of the total area of the whole body, which is convenient and usually used to measure small or scattered burns.

(2) Chinese rule of nine

The body surface area (BSA) is divided into 11 anatomic areas, each of which is 9% of the total BSA. The area of the head, face and neck is 9%, the upper limbs 18%, the front and back of

the trunk including the vulva 27%, and the lower limbs including the hips 45% plus 1%.

2. Calculation of Depth

In general, 3 degrees are divided into 4, that is, the depth of burn is classified as first degree, superficial second degree, deep second degree and third degree.

(1) First degree

Involving the horny layer, red–swelling, burning–pain, hyperesthesia, dry surface, desquamation and cure occurring 2–3 days later without scar left.

(2) Superficial second degree

The dermis involved with part of the germinative lager not damaged, megalgia, hyperesthesia, blisters on the surface, evenly–red basal part, dampness, local swelling, cure resulting 1–2 weeks later without scar but with pigmentation left.

(3) Deep second degree

The deep layer of dermis involved with appendages of the skin remaining, bradyesthesia, blisters on the surface, pale base dotted with erythemas, dampness, cure arriving 3–4 weeks later perhaps with scar left.

(4)Third degree

Involving all the layers of the skin, even damaging subcutaneous tissue and muscles and bones, analgesia, dry and leather–like skin which is elasticless, wax–white and borwn or carbonated, twig–like veins due to subcutaneous phlebothrombosis, eshar scaling 2–4 weeks later followed by formation of granulation, cure attained usually after skin grafting except burn of small area, leaving scar or contracture of scar.

Burn Condition

1. Mild burn

Second degree with the total extent below 10% in adults and below 5% in children

2. Moderate burn

Second degree with the total extent between 11–30% (between 6–15% in children) or third degree with the total extent below 10% (below 5 % in children)

3. Severe burn

Total extent between 31–50%or third degree with the total extent between 11–20% in adults, total extent between 15–25% or third degree with the total extent between 5–10% in children, and total extent below 31% but with any of the following: (1) poor general condition or shock, (2) other serious trauma or chemical poisoning, (3) severe burn of the respiratory tract, (4) burn of the head, face , neck, hand and perineum.

4. Serious burn

Total extent between 51–80% (between 20–40% in children) or third degree with the total extent between 21–50% (between 11–25% in children) or third degree with the total extent between 21–50% (between 11–25% in children).

5. Most serious burn

Total extent above 80% (above 40% in children) or third degree with the total extent above 50% (above 25% in children)

Treatment

1. Internal treatment

Burn of small area without obvious general symptoms is more common in clinical practice and local treatment is mainly used for it. Burn of large area tends to cause, within 48 hours, syndrome due to impairment of *Yin* and exhaustion of *Yang* and

timely treatment of it is needed. Because noxious-fire is abundant within 3–7 days after burn occurs, treatment should be differentially carried out according to different stages of the burn and its clinical manifestations besides giving fluid infusion, antibiotics, analgesia, alimentotherapy and local management.

(1) In the early stage (syndrome due to impairment of *Yin* and exhaustion of *Yang*)

Main Symptoms: Great amount of body fluid oozing out of the body within the first 2 days after the occurrence of the burn which is manifested as fever and thirst with desire for drink in mild cases; irritability, weak breathing, being in a trance, pale complexion, very cold limbs, scanty urine, uneven urination, lowered blood pressure, deep red tongue, indistinct or deep-sited pulse in severe cases.

Therapeutic Method: Nourishing *Yin* , clearing away heat, recuperating depleted *Yang* and rescuing the patient from collapse.

Prescreption: Modified *Qingying Tang* (52), *Shenfu Tang* (55) and *Shengmai San* (54).

Ingredients:

Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Maidong	Radix Ophiopogonis	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Zhimu	Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	15 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g
Shanzhi	Fructus Gardeniae	10 g

Renshen	Radxi Ginseng	12 g
Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g
Wuweizi	Fructus Schisandrae	10 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken 3 times in one day.

(2) In the middle stage (syndrome due to fire–toxin sinking into the interior)

Main Symptoms: 3–7 days later after burn with large area has occurred, the exudate begins to be absorbed. At this time, because the excessive fire–toxin is attacking the internal organs, there will result a syndrome marked by high fever, restlessness, thirst, irritability , dry mouth and lips, constipation, scanty and deep–colored urine, reddened or deep red tongue with yellow or yellow rough coating, and taut rapid pulse. Besides, irritability and coma and delirium indicate that the fire–toxin has invaded the heart; dyspnea with flaring of the nares and cough and rale in the throat, the lung; anuresis and edema or hematuria, the kidney; convulsion, the liver; and distendig abdomen, constipation or frequent sticky foul and loose stools or hematemesis and hemafecia, the spleen.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat and toxic material and cooling the *Ying* system and blood, which is the main means.

Perscreption: Modified *Qingying Tang* (52), *Huanglian Jiedu Tang* (31) and *Xijiao Dihuang Tang* (5).

Ingredients:

Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	30 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	30 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	10 g

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	10 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Shanzhizi	Furctus Gardeniae	10 g
Danpi	Cortex Moutan	10 g
Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	15 g
Lianqiao	Fructus Forsythiae	15 g
Xijiaofen	Cornu Rhinocerotis (in the form of powder and taken after being infused in water)	3 g
Zhuye	Herba Lophatheri	6 g
Shenggancao	Radix Clycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken 3 times in one day.

Modification: In case of invasion of heat–toxin into the heart, *Angong Niuhuang Wan* (53) is added, 1 bolus is taken after being infused with water each time, once daily, but twice for severe cases.

In case of invasion of noxious–heat into the lung, the drugs added are

Shengshigao	Gypsum Fibrosum	30 g
Yuxingcao	Herba Houttuyniae	30 g
Zhebeimu	Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	10 g
Jiegeng	Radix Platycodi	10 g.

In case of oliguria and anuresis due to invasion of noxious–heat into the kidney, the drugs added are

Cheqianzi	Semen Plantaginis	15g
Baimaogen	Rhizoma Imperatae	30 g
Zexie	Rhizoma Alismatis	15 g.

In case of invasion of noxious–heat into the liver, the drugs added are

Lingyangjiao Fen	Cornu Saigae Tataricae (in the from of powder and taken after being infused with water)	1.5 g
Gouteng	Ramulus Uncariae cum Uncis	15 g

In case of distension of the abdomen and constipation, the drugs added are

Shengdahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	15 g
Mangxiao	Natrii Sulfas	10 g
Laifuzi	Semen Raphani	10 g.

(3) In the late stage (syndrome due to weekness of *Qi*, blood, spleen and stomach)

Main symptoms: Not only *Qi* and blood but also spleen and stomach impaired after the pathogenic fire and heat have retreated, which is marked by emaciation, pale complexion, listlessness, acratia, erosion of the mouth and tongue, dry mouth with little saliva, anorexia, distending abdomen, difficult generation of skin and flesh on the surface of the burn, pale red or pale enlarged tongue with white or thin yellow coating, and thready weak or thready rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Invigorating *Qi* and blood. nourishing *Yin* and replenishing the stomach.

Prescreption: Modified *Bazhen Tang* (11) and *Yiwei Tang* (90) (Decoction for Nourishing the Stomach).

Ingredients:

Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Huangqi	Radix Astragali	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Yuzhu	Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati	15 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	10 g

Shudi	Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	10 g
Fuling	Poria	10 g
Maidong	Radix Ophiopogonis	10 g
Shashen	Radix Glehniae	10 g
Chaoguya	parched Fructus Setariae Germinatus	10 g
Chaomaiya	parched Fructus Hordei Germinatus	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening.

2. External Treatment

(1) Debridement

Aseptic manipulation should be strictly observed in the following. Douche the surface of the wound with sterilized isotonic saline whose temperature is 38℃ or so in order to eliminate polluted scaled epiderm and foreign bodies. While doing so, small blisters are not punctured, big ones are cut to drain the hydrops but cut-off is not needed if they are kept complete, they are spread flat on their original positions and then covered . Absorb with antiseptic gauze the surface of the wound dry and disinfect the skin around with 75% alcohol or tincture of bromogeramine. Intramuscular injection of 1 500 −3 000 IU of antitetanic serum is conducted if the surface of the wound has been severely polluted or the extent of burn of superficial second degree is above 5%.

(2) Bandaging

Bandaging is mainly for the protection of the surface of the wound and suitable for the treatment of burn on the limbs or with small area.

Prescreption: *Zicao Youshabu*

Ingredients:

Zicao	Radix Arnebiae seu Lithospermi	10 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	30 g
Rendongteng	Caulis Lonicerae	30 g
Shengdiyu	Radix Sanguisorbae	30 g
Huangla	wax	15 g
Bingpian	Borneolum Syntheticum	1.5 g
Xiangyou	Oleum Sesami	500 g.

Preparation: *Xiangyou* is heated. *Zicao* , *Baizhi* , *Rendongteng* and *Shengdiyu* are added to the heated *Xiangyou* and boiled up to brown and then removed. *Huangla* and Bingpian are put into the medicated *Xiangyou* and melted. Finally, antiseptic gauze is placed into the content. The medicated gauze is called *Zicao Youshabu* .

Manipulation: *Zicao Youshabu* is stuck to the surface of the wound and then covered successively with gauze, cotton pad and bandage and finally tied. Bandaging should be moderate in tense with the limb fixed in functional position and the fingers or tose separated from each other with gauze. Dressing change is not needed for not infected burn of superficial second degree. When the applied *Zicao Youshabu* is removed 1–2 weeks later, you will find a healed surface. If infection occurs, dressing change should be performed ahead of time.

(3) Exposure therapy

To have the surface of the wound dried rapidly and covered with a layer of dry scab so as to cut down the chance for bacteria to reproduce is the main purpose of using exposure therapy, which is suitable fro burn on the head, face , neck, perineum, hip

and trunk, or burn with large area or burn whose surface is badly polluted.

Manipulation: After the debridement is done, the patient is exposed to a disinfection bed in a isolation room in which the air is clear and clean, the temperature is kept at 25℃–28℃, this having the surface drying and scabbing. For accelerating the drying and scabbing, Chinese drugs with the action of restricting exudation, arresting pain, subduing inflammation and astringing may be applied to the surface of the wound, in addition to drying the surface with heat from a lamp.

Prescreption1: *Qingliang Gougao*

Ingredients:

Shengshihui	quick lime	25 g
Qingshui	clean water	1000 ml
Mayou	Oleum Sesami	proper amount.

Preparation: *Shengshihui* and *Qingshui* are mixed and stirred fully and then settled. The supernatant fluid is taken out and mixed with the same amount of *Mayou* and then stirred slowly up to full saponification. A lactescent paste is thus obtained at last.

Administration: The *Qingliangyou Gao* is directly applied to the surface of the wound, 1–2 times daily.

Indications: Burn of first degree or superficial second degree.

Prescreption2: *Dahuangdiyu Fen*

Ingredients:

Shengdahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	30 g
Shengdiyu	Radix Sanguisorbae	30 g
Bingpian	Borneolum Syntheticum	1.5 g.

Preparation: Ground into very fine powder.

Administration: Spread on the surface of the wound.

Indications: Exudate flowing out of the surface after scaling of the the epiderm.

Prescreption3: *Anyisanhaozhijiading*

Ingredients:

Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	100 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	100 g
Ercha	Catechu	100 g.

Preparation: The drugs are ground into fine powder and sifted with a No:7 sieve and then soaked in 1 000 ml of 80 % alcohol. 24 hours later, the content is filtered to get the solution.

Administration: Spray the solution upon the surface of the wound, once every 2 –4 hours, but 3 –4 times daily after scabbing.

(4) Dealing with eschar

When eschar begins to scale from a part of burn of second or third degree, infection under the eschar will occur, pus accumulated, toxins produced and chances for the onset of toxemia and hematosepsis provided. That is why the eschar need be cut off. However, external application of selected Chinese drugs may promote eschar of smaller burn of deep second or third degree to be dissolved, separated and scaled perhaps without scar left.

3. Cutting–off of scab and skin grafting

2–7 days later after the occurrence of burn, excision of eschar may be conducted as long as there is no infection and the area of the burn is within 10–20 %. Following that is instant skin grafting. Large eschar may be removed step by step and area after area and bit by bit. 48 hours later after the occurrence of the burn of deep second degree on the hand, the eschar in its early stage may be cut off in order to ensure the function of the hand and

prevent contracture of scar.

Scaling scab with Chinese drugs

Prescreption1: *Huanglian Jiedu Gao*

Ingredients:

Diyutan	Radix Sanguisorbae Carbonisatus	180 g
Dahuang	Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	180 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	180 g
Ruxiang	Olibanum	60 g
Zicao	Radix Arnebiae seu Lithospermi	60 g
Wubeizi	Galla Chinensis	60 g
Baizhi	Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	60 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	60 g
Shengma	Rhizoma Cimicifugae	60 g
Huangqin	Radix Scutellariae	60 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	60 g
Moyao	Myrrha	60 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	60 g
Huhuanglian	Rhizoma Picrorhizae	60 g
Shengdi	Radix Rehmanniae	120 g
Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	120 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	120 g
Bailian	Radix Ampelopsis	120 g
Hanliancao	Herba Ecliptae	120 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	30 g
Mubiezi	Semen Momordicae	30 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	90 g
Hamacao	Herba salviae Plebeiae	Proper amount
Huangbaila	wax	3 00 g

Mayou Oleum Sesami 12.5 g.

Preparatation: The above drugs are soaked in *Mayou* for 2 days with *Zicao, Jinyinhua* and *Honghua* added late and then decocted with gentle heat until *Baizhi* becomes brown. After that, the dregs are removed with the medicated *Mayou* left. Finally, *Huangbaila* is added and made into a paste, into which gauze is put and made into *Youshabu* .

Administration: Eschar is covered with the *Youshabu*, which is fixed with bandage.

Prescreption2: *Dongfang Yihao*

Ingredients:

Maozhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	30 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	30 g
Fangji	Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae	30 g
Xuanmugua	Fructus Chaenomelis	30 g
Yanhusuo	Rhizoma Corydalis	30 g
Yujin	Radix Curcumae	30 g
Shengdiyu	Radix Sanguisorbae	30 g
Baiji	Rhizoma Bletillae (cut into pieces)	60 g
Bingpian	Borneolum Syntheticum (ground into powder)	3 g
Duanshigao	forged Gypsum Fibrosum (ground into powder)	240 g
Duanluganshi	forged Calamina (ground into powder)	240 g
Mayou	Oleum Sesami	1 kg.

Preparation:

A. The first 8 drugs are boiled in *Mayou* up to brown and

then removed with the medicated *Mayou* left. The powder of *Duanluganshi* , *Duanshigao* and *Bingpian* is mixed with the medicated *Mayou* into an even mixture for use.

B. The first 8 drugs are boiled in *Mayou* up to brown and then removed with the medicated *Mayou* left. The medicated *Mayou* is decocted until its drops can take the shape of beads. The powder of *Duanshigao* and *Duanluganshi* is added to the prepared *Mayou* and heated for about 2 hours until no floating oil can be found and a semi-solid ointment can be got. Finally, the powder of *Bingpian* is mixed with the warm onitment evenly.

Administration:

A. The even mixture is directly applied to the surface of the wound.

B. The ointment is spread on a piece of nonabsorbable paper and applied to the affected part and bandaged.

8. 2 Cold Injury

Cold injury is a seasonal disorder taking place in cold area. It is an injury due to attack of cold on certain parts of the body such as the hand, foot, ear, nose and face which are exposed to the air. TCM includes this disorder in the category of *Dongchuang* (chilblain).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

This disorder is due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood caused by local obstruction of the channels and collaterals. And this local obstruction is result from general debility after severe diseases, hunger, fatigue, thin clothes and too small headgears and shose and socks in cold winter, lack of exercise and cold-resistance, and

affection of exogenous cold pathogen.

Clinical Manifestations

Local injury seen in mild cases and common in the hand, foot, nose tip, auricle or cheeks on the pale and cold skin of which there are erythemas; burning–pain, numbness, itching, or blisters, and obvious swelling, damaged superficial or all layers of the skin, and no scar left after cure; anaesthetic and analgesic affected part in severe cases, of which the skin changes from pallor successively to blue and black, around which there are swelling and big hematic blisters, on which dry or damp gangrene are even caused, infection of which may be accompanied by shiver, high fever, etc. , from which if toxins sink into the interior, the patient's life is endangered, and cure of which is followed by scar.

Treatment

1 Internal Treatment

(1) Mild cold injury

Generally speaking, there is no need to take any medicine.

(2) Severe cold injury

Prescreption: *Guizhi Jia Danggui Tang* (91) (Decoction with Cinnamon Twig plus Chinese Angelica Root) and *Sini Tang* (92). Decoction for Treating Cold Limbs, both are modified.

Ingredients:

Guizhi	Ramulus Cinnamomi	12 g
Baishao	Radix Paeoniae Alba	12 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Jixueteng	Caulis Spatholobi	15 g
Shufuzi	Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	10 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g

Shengjiang Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens 10 g

Dazao Fructus Jujubae 3 dates

Huangjiu yellow rice wine 30 ml.

Administration: Decocted in water for the decoction, which is taken at once.

Modification: In case of general debility and deficiency of *Qi* and blood, the drugs added are

Shenghuangqi Radix Astragali 15 g

Shudi Radix Rehmanniae Preparata 15 g

Renshen Radix Ginseng 10 g

Baizhu Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae 10 g.

(3) Secondary infection after ulceration

Routine treatment of surgical infective diseases is needed and antibiotics, antitetanic serum and an tigas—gangrene serum may be considered if necessary.

2. External Treatment

(1) Mild symptoms

Local cold injury is treated in this way. The limb with cold injury is steeped in warm water of 35℃—40℃ as soon as possible for 5—7 minutes and then dried and kept warm, avoiding to be roasted from fire, rubbed with snow or soaked in cold water.

Localized burning, painful and itching erythemas without blisters are treated with any of the following means.

A. *Yanghe Jiening Gao* (15) is applied externally.

B. Warm decoction of such drugs as

Shengjiang Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens 30 g

Lajiao Fructus Capsici 5 ones

Huajiao Pericarpium Zanthxyli 10 g.

(15 g of *Aiye* Folium Artemisiae Argyi may be used instead

of *Lajiao*.)

is used to steep and wash the affected part for 30 minutes. Then, *Dongchuang Gao* (93) (Ointment for Treating Frostbite) is applied to the dried affected part. The abvoe is done once daily.

C. Name: *Honghua* Ding

Ingredients:

Shengjiang Zhi	juice of Shengjiang Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens	150 ml
Honghua	Flos Carthami	90 g
Zhangnao	Camphorae	90 g
Jiujing	75 % alcohol	3000 ml.

Administration: *Honghua* is steeped in *Jiujing* for 5 days and removed, with the medicated *Jiujing* left. *Zhangnao* and *Jiangzhi* are mixed with the medicated *Jiujing* into a mixture, which is filtered to get *Honghua Ding* . This *Honghua Ding* is applied on the affected part, 3 times daily.

Honey and lard are mixed into a paste, which is applied on localized burning painful and itching erythemas with obvious swelling.

Let not infected small blisters dry. Cut off the scaled skin on the ulcerated blisters, on which dressing change with *Shengji Yuhuonggao Youshabu* (22) is this instantly performed.

(2) Severe symptoms

The affected part is warmed and kept warm and dry. The necrotic tissue is cut off if it can be separated from the normal one. Skin grafting may be done on larger surface of wound and routine dressing change for surgical infection is conducted on smaller surface.

8.3 Tyroid Adenoma

Thyroid adenoma is a benign tumor commonly seen in the neck. Its subjects are usually females below 40. TCM believes that this disorder is similar to *Rouying* (fleshy goiter).

Etiology and Pathogenesis

1. Emotional depression leads to stagnation of the liver–*Qi* , which, in turn, results in stasis of blood.

2. Stagnation of the liver–*Qi* affects the spleen. The affected spleen dysfunctions in transportation, which, in turn, causes accumulation of phlegm–dampness in the interior.

3. The front of the neck is along the routes of the *Ren* Channel and the branch of the *Du* Channel. Both the *Ren* and *Du* Channels go through the liver and kidney.

4. The stagnated *Qi* , blood and phlegm–dampness go through the *Ren* and *Du* Channles to the neck and stay there to develop into this disorder.

Clinical Manifestations

Distinctly–bordered, soft, fixed, not tender and slow–growing mass in the shape of a ball or semi–ball occasionally found in the front of the neck, intracapsular bleeding in some adenoma which may be enlarged rapidly within short time with the occurrence of distending pain and discomfort due to pressure, dyspnea due to oppression of the trachea by larger adenoma, irritability, fullness in the chest, etc.

Examination

A round smooth mass may be palpable where the thyroid is located. The mass will move up and down as swallowing is going.

Radioisotope scanning gets warm or hot nodule picture, and cool or cold nodule picture indicates cystic adenoma. Fluid level reflection is seen in ultrasonic echogram, and tiny wave in fluid level indicates thick capsular fluid.

Differential Diagnosis

1. Subacute thyroiditis

History of catching cold or sore throat usually before the appearance of swollen, harder and tender thyroid with severe pain due to swallowing which may refer to the ear and occiput, disease course of 1–3 months or so.

2. Thyroglossal cyst

This disorder is common in children below 15. The mass without tenderness is located below the hyoid bone at the middle line of anterior cervical region. Round, cystic, distinctly–bordered and smooth, it moves up and down usually not as swallowing but as movement of the tongue is going. Cyst complicated by infection may fester an give off yellow mucus–like fluid. If so, there will form a fistule.

Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

Therapeutic Method: Regulating the flow of *Qi* ,promoting the circulation of blood, dissolving phlegm and softening masses.

Prescreption: *Xiaoying Tang* (Proven Prescription for Resolving Goiter).

Ingredients:

Haizao	Sargassum	15–30 g
Kunbu	Thallus Laminariae seu Echloniae	15–30 g
Shengmuli	Concha Ostreae	30 g
Xiakucao	Spica Prunellae	15 g

Chishao Radix Paeoniae Rubra 15 g

Huangyaozi Rhizoma Dioscoreae Bulbiferae 9–15g

Chaunxiong Rhizoma Chuanxiong 10 g

Sanleng Rhizoma Sparganii 10 g

Ezhu Rhizoma Curcumae 10 g

Xiangfu Rhizoma Cyperi 10 g

Qingbanxia Rhizoma Pinelliae 10 g

Shancigu Pseudobulbus Cremastrae seu Pleionae 6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: In case of irritability, the drugs added are

Chaihu Radix Bupleuri 10 g

Shanzhizi Fructus Gardeniae 10 g

In case of dyspnea, the drug added is

Suzi Fructus Perillae 10 g

In case of fullness in the chest, the drug added is

Yujin Radix Curcumae 10 g.

For suddenly-enlarged tumor with distending-pain, the drug added is

Sanqi Fen Radix Notoginseng in the form of powder and taken after being infused in water 3 g.

For harder tumor, the dosage of *Chishao* in the prescription is changed into 30 g and 6 g of *Tubeimu* (Rhizoma Bolbostemmae) is added.

For liver disorders, the drug omitted is *Huangyaozi* Rhizoma Dioscoreae Bulbiferae.

Besides, *Sanjie Pian* (58) and *Sichong Pian* may be also given in the treatment.

12 cases were cured with this prescription, according to the author's report in 1987, and 3–12 years of follow–up had been done among 9 with no recurrence found. Its was found out that the curative effects are related with the duration of the disorder and the hardness of tumor. Generally, small and soft ones with short duration and cystic sensation are easy to cure, while those large and solid are difficult.

2. External Treatment

(1) Local application of *Yanghe Jiening Gao* (15).

(2) After systemic treatment with Chinese herbal medicines has been continued for one month, if the mass is almost as large as before or still harder or developing, operation should be considered.

8.4 Ulcer of Lower Limbs

Ulcer of lower limbs refers to the chronic ulcer in both the medial and lateral sides of the lower part of the leg. TCM calles it as *Lianchuang* (ulcus cruris), *Qunbianchuang* (skirt–edge sore) and *Kukoudu* (trouser–leg toxin). With the characteristics of hard–healing and recurrence, it gets a popular name, ie. *Laolanjiao* (old ulcerative foot). Those standing to work or with varicose vein of lower limb tend to be the subjects of this disorder.

Etiology and Pathogenesis

Exhaustion and impairment of *Qi* and blood and sinking of *Qi* of the middle–Jiao often due to long standing or distant loaded waking lead to dysfunction of the vessels of lower limbs, where free flowing of *Qi* and blood is disturbed. Under this condition, if

inanition of the skin due to stagnation of *Qi* and blood resulting from going–down of damp–heat is complicated by trauma on the skin, bites by insects and damp sore, this disorder is bound to be induced.

Clinical Manifestations

Itching followed by pain in the beginning on the affected part which is red and swollen, ulcer with fluid formed days later, circular or elliptic ulcer with umbilicated center and raised and hard edge, dark red or grey white granulation, stink and foul and thin pus, pigmentation around the ulcer, eczema often due to infusion of pus; exposed vein which is less obvious in the morning than in the evening on the heavy leg, fatigue, long disease course, difficulty in curing, tendency of bleeding from cauliflower–like ulcer worth of biopsy to see whether the ulcer is malignant or not.

Type and Treatment

1. Internal Treatment

(1) Syndrome due to damp–heat going downwards

Main Symptoms: Much pus with stink and foul odour discharged from the ulcer around which the skin is red and hot, exudate and itching due to eczema, yellow greasy tongue coating, and slippery rapid pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Clearing away heat, inducing diuresis, regulating *Ying* and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Simiao Yongan Tang* (68).

Ingredients:

Jinyinhua	Flos Lonicerae	30 g
Xuanshen	Radix Scrophulariae	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g

Chuanniuxi	Radix Cyathulae	15 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	15 g
Fangji	Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae	10 g
Zicao	Radix Arnebiae seu Lithospermi	10 g
Shenggancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	10 g
Honghua	Flos Carthami	6 g
Mutong	Caulis Clematidis Armandii	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(2) Syndrome due to retention of dampness and stasis of blood

Main Symptoms: Ulcer with dark red granulation and bloody pus, pigmentation in the tensed and thinned skin around the ulcer, or purplish red ecchymosis and cord–like mass in the skin, dark purple tongue with white greasy coating, and deep thready uneven pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Promoting blood circulation, removing blood stasis, inducing diuresis and dredging the vessels.

Prescreption: Modified *Huoxue Tongmai Yin* (73).

Ingredients:

Danshen	Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	30 g
Rendongteng	Caulis Lonicerae	20 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Chuanxiong	Rhizoma Chuanxiong	10 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	12 g
Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	10 g
Niuxi	Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	10 g
Dilong	Lumbricus	10 g

Tuling	Rhizoma Bolostemmae	20 g
Yiyiren	Semen Coicis	20 g
Taoren	Semen Persicae	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

(3) Syndrome due to sinking of *Qi* of the middle-*Jiao*

Main Symptoms: Unhealing ulcer with grey white granulation and thin pus, swelling of the affected leg which is mild in the morning but severe in the evening, pale tongue with white coating, and thready pulse.

Therapeutic Method: Strengthening the middle-*Jiao* , invigorating *Qi* , regulating *Ying* and subduing swelling.

Prescreption: Modified *Buzhong Yiqi Tang* (89)

Ingredients:

Huangqi	Radix Astragali	30 g
Dangshen	Radix Codonopsis	15 g
Rendongateng	Caulis Lonicerae	15 g
Zelan	Herba Lycopi	15 g
Chishao	Radix Paeoniae Rubra	15 g
Danggui	Radix Angelicae Sinensis	15 g
Chenpi	Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	10 g
Shengma	Rhizoma Cimicifugae	10 g
Chaihu	Radix Bupleuri	10 g
Baizhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	10 g
Gancao	Radix Glycyrrhizae	6 g.

Administration: Decocted in water twice for the decoction, which is taken warm in the morning and evening, 1 dose daily.

Modification: If there is deficiency of both *Qi* and blood,

Shiquandabu Wan (94) is added.

If there is insufficiency of the liver and kidney, *Liuwei Dihuang Wan* (12) is added.

2. External Treatment

(1) Name: *Huangbai San*

Ingredients:

Huangbai	Cortex Phellodendri	30 g
Huanglian	Rhizoma Coptidis	6 g
Luhui	Alöe	6 g
Cangzhu	Rhizoma Atractylodis	10 g
Huashi	Talcum	10 g
Songxiang	Colophonium	12 g
Bingpian	Borneolum Syntheticum	0.6 g.

Administration: Ground into fine powder for use. Proper amount of the powdre is applied over the affected part and covered with gauze and finally bandaged.

Indications: Itching, pain, red-swelling, ulceration and exudate all of which exist in the beginning.

(2) More pus from the ulcer around which itching eczema is giving off exudate is treated by covering the surface of the ulcer with small amount of *Niuhuang San* (95) and *Dahuang Youshabu* (21). *Huangbai San* (96) is spread over the eczema around.

(3) More necrotic tissue on the ulcer is treated by spreading *Baer Dan* 8 g of the powder of *Duanshigao* (forged Gypsum Fibrosum) and 2 g of *Hongsheng Dan* (Hydrargyri Oxydum Rubrum) over it, which is then covered with *Dahuang Youshabu* (21). Hot decoction of *Manxing Kuiyang Xiyao* (29) is used to fumigate and wash the ulcer with grey white and slow-growing granulation. Then , dressing change is conducted with *Shengji*

Zhenzhu San (27) and *Shengji Yuhonggaoy Yushabu* (22). Or, 3 cooked *Dazao* (Fructus Jujubae) with the cores removed, and 3 cm of cooked *Congbai* (Bulbus Allii Fistulosi) are pounded together into a paste. The paste is spread over the affected part, once daily.

Nursing and Prevention

1. Improve the circulation of blood of the lower limbs and promote the healing of ulcer by raising the affected limb high, cutting down the time of standing and the distance of walking and banding the leg with elastic bandage.

2. Protect the leg with medical leg cap in case trauma cause relapse after the ulcer is cured. If obvious varicose vein of lower limb is not complicated by obstruction of deep vein, high ligation of the great saphenous vein and venous stripping may be considered.

Index of Prescreption

方 剂 索 引

Angong Niuhuang Wan 安宫牛黄丸(53)
English Name: Bezoar Bolus for Resurrection
Source: The Book *Wen Bing Tiao Bian* 温病条辨
Ingredients

Calculus Bovis	牛黄(*Niuhuang*)
Radix Curcuma	郁金(*Yujin*)
Cornu Rhinocerotis	犀角(*Xijiao*)
Rhizoma Coptidis	黄连(*Huanglian*)
Cinnabaris	朱砂(*Zhusha*)
Borneolum Syntheticum	冰片(*Bingpian*)
Margarita	珍珠(*Zhenzhu*)
Fructus Gardeniae	山栀(*Shanzhi*)
Realgar	雄黄(*Xionghuang*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Moschus	麝香(Shexiang)
gold foil	金泊衣(*Jinboyi*)

Badu Gao 拔毒膏(14)
English Name: Adhesive Plaster for Removing Toxic Substances

Ingredients

Radix Ampelopsis 白薇(*Bailian*)	96 g
Rhizoma Atractylodis 苍术(*Cangzhu*)	96 g
Fructus Forsythiae 连翘(*Lianqiao*)	96 g
Radix Scutellariae 黄芩(*Huangqin*)	96 g
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	96 g
Semen Momordicae 木鳖子(*Mubiezi*)	96 g
Fructus Toosendan 川楝子	96 g
Ridix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	96 g
Fructus Gardeniae 栀子(*zhizi*)	96 g
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄(*Dahuang*)	96 g
Semen Ricini 蓖麻子(*Bimazi*)	96 g
Flos Lonicerae 金银花(*Jinyinhua*)	96 g
Radix Rehmanniae 生地(*GShengdi*)	96 g
Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归(*Danggui*)	96 g
Cortex Phellodendri 黄柏(*Huangbai*)	96 g
Rhizoma Coptidis 黄连(*Huanglian*)	96 g
Scolopendra 蜈蚣(*Wugong*)	18 g
Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	18 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	18 g
Resina Draconis 血竭(*Xuejie*)	18 g
Catachu 儿茶(*Frcha*)	18 g
Calomelas 轻粉(*Qingfen*)	18 g
Camphor 樟脑(*Zhangnao*)	18 g
Hydrargyri Oxydum Rubrum 红粉(*Hongfen*)	18 g

Preparation and Administration

The six drugs *Ruxiang* , *Moyao* , *Xuejie*, *Ercha* , *Qingfen* and *Hongfen* are ground into fine powder and mixed evenly. The rest drugs except *Zhangnao* are put into a pot with 7200 g of Mayou

(Oleum sesami) in and decocted with gentle and then strong heat up to brown and removed with the medicated *Mayou* left. The medicated *Mayau* is boiled until it can take the shape of pearls after being dropped into water. Then the thicker *Mayau* and 2150 −3050 g of *Huangdan* (lead oxide) are mixed evenly into a mixture and cooled. The warm mixture is finally mixed with the powder made of the six drugs and stirred evenly and cooled again. *Badu Gao* is at last well−prapared. It is admistered by being spread over the affected part.

Baihu Tang 白虎汤(50)

English Name: White Tiger Decoction

Source: The Book *Shang Han Lun* 伤寒论

Ingredients

Gypsum Fibrosum	生石膏(*Shengshigao*)
Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	知母(*Zhimu*)
Semen Oryzae Sativae	粳米(*Jingmi*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Baojian Dangui Sini Tang 宝鉴当归四逆汤(77)

English Name: Chinese Angelica Decoction for Restoring *Yang*

Ingredients

Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	附子(*Fuzi*)
Fructus Foeniculi	茴香(*Huixiang*)
Cortex Cinnamomi	肉桂(*Rougui*)
Radix Bupleuri	柴胡(*Chaihu*

Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Rhizoma Corydalis	元胡(*Yuanhu*)
Fructus Toosendan	川楝子(*Chuanlianzi*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)

Bazheng San 八正散 (88)

English Name: Eight Health Restoring Powder

Source: The Book *Tai Ping Hui Min He Ji Ju Fang* 太平惠民和剂局方

Ingredients

Caulis Aristolochiae Manshuriensis	木通(*Mutong*)
Herba Dianthi	瞿麦(*Qumai*)
Semen Plantaginis	车前子(*Cheqianzi*)
Herba Polygoni Avicularis	萹蓄(*Bianxu*)
Talcum	滑石(*Huashi*)
Fructus Gardeniae	栀子(*Zhizi*)
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	大黄(*Dahuang*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae Preparata	炙甘草(*Zhigancao*)

Bzahen Tang 八珍汤(11)

English Name: Eight Precious Ingredient Decoction

Source: The Book *Zheng Ti Lei Yao* 正体类要

Ingredients

Radix Gineseng	人参(*Renshen*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	白术(*Baizhu*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)

Bixie Fenqing Yin 萆薢分清饮(84)

English Name: Yam Decoction for Clearing Turbid Urine

Source: The Book *Yin Xue Xin Wu* 医学心悟

Ingredients

Rhizoma Dioscoreae Septemlobae	萆 (*Bixie*)
Rhizoma Acori Tatarinowii	石菖蒲(*Shichangpu*)
Cortex Phellodendri	黄柏(*Huangbai*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Semen Plantaginis	车前子(*Cheqianzi*)
Plumula Nelumbinis	莲子心(*Lianzixin*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	白术(*Baizhu*)

Bixie Huadu Tang 萆薢化毒汤(71)

English Name: Decoction of Sevenlobed Yam for Detoxicating

Source: The Book *Yang Ke Xin De Ji* 疡科心得集

Ingredients

Rhizoma Dioscoreae Septemlobae	萆薢(*Bixie*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	牛膝(*Niuxi*)
Radix Stephaniae Tetrandrae	防己(*Fangji*)

Fructus Chaenomaelis 木瓜(*Mugua*)
Semen Coicis 薏米(*Yimi*)
Radix Gentianae Macrophyllae 秦艽(*Qinjiao*)

Buzhong Yiqi Tang 补中益气汤(89)

English Name: Decoction for Reinforcing Middle-*jiao* and Replenishing *Qi*

Source: The Book *Pi Wei Lun* 脾胃论

Ingredients

Radix Astragali 黄芪(*Huangqi*)
Radix Cinseng 人参(*Renshen*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae 白术(*Baizhu*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归(*Danggui*)
Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae 陈皮(*Chenpi*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae Preparata 炙甘草(*Zhigancao*)
Rhizoma Cimicifugae 升麻(*Shengma*)
Radix Bupleuri 柴胡(*Chaihu*)

Chaihu Qinggan Tang 柴胡清肝汤(38)

English Name: Bupleurum Decoction for Clearing heat from the Liver

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Zheng Zong* 外科正宗

Ingredients

Radix Bupleuri 柴胡(*Chaihu*)
Radix Rehmanniae 生地(*Shengdi*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)

Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)
Fructus Arctii	牛蒡子(*Niubangzi*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Fructus Gardeniae	生栀子(*Shengzhizi*)
Radix Trichosanthis	天花粉(*Tianhuafen*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)
Radix Saposhinkoviae	防风(*Fangfeng*)

Chansu Wan (a Chinese Patent Drug) 蟾酥丸(44)
English Name: Toad Venom Pill

Chonghe Gao 冲和膏(19)
English Name: Miraculous Ointment
Ingredients

Cortex Cercis Chinesis 紫荆皮(*Zijingpi*)	150 g
Radix Angelicae Pubescentis 独活(*Duhuo*)	90g
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	30 g
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	30 g
Radix Acori Tatarinowii 石菖蒲(*Shichangpu*)	45 g

Dahuang Ruangao 大黄软膏(20)
Rhubarb Ointment
Ingredients

Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄(*Dahunag*)	100 g

Preparation and Administration

Dahuang is boiled in 300 ml of water in a pot for 20 minutes to get the decoction with *Dahuang* remaining in the pot. This is done with the same amount of water but for 15 minutes. The 2 decoctions are mixed together and boiled in another pot until 100 ml of it is left to get 100 % decoction of *Dahuang* , 30 ml of which is mixed with 100 g of vaseline into 30 % *Dahuang Ruangao* . It is spread on a piece of gauze with its area being depended on the size of the surface of the sore, and applied externally. Or, it may be used to make *Dahuang Youshabu* , which is sterilized under high pressure for use.

Danshen Zhusheye 丹参注射液(41)
English Name: Injection of Red Sage Root
Ingredients
Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae 丹参(*Danshen*)

Daoqi Tang 导气汤(78)
English Name: Decoction for Inducing *Qi*
Ingredients

Fructus Toosendan	川楝子(*Chuanlianzi*)
Radix Aucklandiae	木香(*Muxiang*)
Fructus Foeniculi	小茴香(*Xiaohuixiang*)
Fructus Euodiae	吴茱萸(*Wuzhuyu*)

Daqing Gao 大青膏(18)
English Name: Isatis Leaf Ointment

Ingredients

Folium Isatis 大青叶(*Daqingye*)	60 g
Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	30 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	30 g
Cortex Phellodendri 黄柏(*Huangbai*)	30 g
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 生大黄(*Shengdahunag*)	30 g
Alumen 明矾(*Mingfan*)	30 g
Rhizoma Coptidis 黄连(*Huanglian*)	30 g
Chalcanthitum 胆矾(*Danfan*)	30 g
Aerugo 铜绿(*Tonglü*)	30 g
Folium Hibisci 芙蓉叶(*Furongye*)	30 g
Galla Chinesis 五倍子(*Wubeizi*)	30 g

Dongchuang Gao (a Chinese Patent Drug) 冻疮膏 (93)

English Name: Ointment for Treating Frostbite

Duhuo Jisheng Tang 独活寄生汤 (72)

English Name: Pubescent Angelica and Loranthus Decoction

Source: The Book *Bei Ji Qian Jin Yao Fang* 备急千金要方

Ingredients

Radix Angelicae Pubescentis	独活(*Duhuo*)
Herba Taxilli	寄生(*jisheng*)
Radix Gentianae Macrophyllae	秦艽(*Qinjiao*)
Radix Saposhinkoviae	防风(*Fangfeng*)
Herba Asari	细辛(*Xixin*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)

Radix Paeoniae	芍药(*Shaoyao*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Radix Rehmanniae	地黄(*Dihuang*)
Cortex Eucommiae	杜仲(*Duzhong*)
Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	牛膝(*Niuxi*)
Radix Ginseng	人参(*Renshen*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Cortex Cinnamomi	肉桂(*Rougui*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Gouju Tang 枸橘汤(80)

English Name: Decoction with Orange

Ingredients

Fructusn Citri Reticulatae	枸橘(*Gouju*)
Fructus Toosendan	川楝子(*Chuanlianzi*)
Radix Gentianae Macrophyllae	秦艽(*Qinjiao*)
Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	陈皮(*Chenpi*)
Radix Saposhinkoviae	防风(*Fangfeng*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍(*Chishao*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Cancao*)

Gubu Tang 顾步汤 (69)

English Name: Decoction for Treating Gangrene of Finger or Toe

Source: The Book *Bian Zheng Lu* 辨证录

Ingredients

Radix Astragli	生黄芪(*Shenghuangqi*)
Radix Ginseng	人参(*Renshen*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Herba Dendrobii	石斛(*Shihu*)
Radix Achyranthis Bidentagae	牛膝(*Niuxi*)

Guizhi Jia Danggui Tang 桂枝加当归汤 (91)

English Name: Decoction with Cinnamon Twig Plus Chinese Angelica Root

Source: The Book *Zhong Yi Wai Ke Xue Jiang Yi* 中医外科学讲义

Ingredients

Ramulus Cinnamomi	桂枝(Guizhi)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens	生姜(*Shenggjiang*)
Fructus Jujubae	大枣(*Dazao*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae Preparata	炙甘草(*Zhigancao*)

Huaban Tang 化斑汤 (39)

English Name: Decoction for Relieving Feverish Rash

Source: The Book *Wen Bing Tiao Bian* 温病条辨

Ingredients

Gypsum Fibrosum	石膏(*Shigao*)
Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	知母(*Zhimu*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Radix Scrophulariae	玄参(*Xuanshen*)
Cornu Rhinocerothis	犀角(*Xijiao*)
Semen Oryzae Sativae	粳米(*Jingmi*)

Huangbai Sam 黄柏散(96)
English Name: Powder of Phellodendron Bark
Ingredients

Cartex Phellodendri	黄柏(*Huangbai*)
Rhizoma Coptidis	黄连(*Huanglian*)
Alöe	芦荟(*Luhui*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis	苍术(*Cangzhu*)
Talcum	滑石(*Huashi*)
Colophony	松香(*Songxiang*)
Borneolum Syntheticum	冰片(*Bingpian*)

Huanglian Gao (a Chinese patent drug) 黄连膏 (63)
English Name: Coptis Ointment

Huanglian Jiedu Tang 黄连解毒汤(31)
Antidotal Decoction of Coptis
Source: The Book *Zhou Hou Fang* 肘后方
Ingredients

Rhizoma Coptidis	黄连(*Huanglian*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Cortex Phellodendri	黄柏(*Huangbai*)
Fructus Gardeniae	栀子(*Zhizi*)

Huangqin Qingfei Yin 黄芩清肺汤(87)

English Name: Decoction with Scutellaria for Clearing away Lung-fire

Source: The Book *Wei Sheng Bao Jian* 卫生宝鉴

Ingredients

Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Fructus Gardeniae	栀子(*Zhizi*)

Huiyang Yulong Gao 回阴玉龙膏 (20)

English Name: Jade-dragon Ointment for Recuperating Depleted *Yang*

Source: The Book *Bao Ying Cuo Yao* 保婴撮要

Ingredients

Radix Aconiti Kusnezoffii 草乌(*Caowu*)	60 g
Rhizoma Zingiberis 干姜(*Ganjiang*)	60 g
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	30 g
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	30 g
Rhizoma Arisaematis 南星(*Nanxing*)	30 g
Cortex Cinnamomi 肉桂(*Rougui*)	15 g

Huoxue Sanyu Tang 活血散瘀汤 (48)

English Name: Decoction for Promoting Blood Circulation and Removing Blood Stasis

Ingredients

Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍(*Chishao*)
Semen Persicae	桃仁(*Taoren*)

Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	大黄(*Dahuang*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Lignum Sappan	苏木(*Sumu*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Fructus Aurantii	枳壳(*Zhiqiao*)
Semen Trichosanthis	瓜蒌仁(*Gualouren*)
Semen Arecae	槟榔(*Binglang*)

Huoxue Tongmai Yin 活血通脉饮(73)

English Name: Decoction for Promoting Blood Circulation and Invigorating Pulse

Ingredients

Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	丹參(*Danshen*)
Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍 (*Chishao*)
Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae	土茯苓(*Tufuling*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)

Huoxue Zhiteng San 活血止痛散(86)

English Name: Powder for Promoting Blood Stasis and Arresting Pain

Ingredients

Herba Speranskiae Tuberculatae	透骨草(*Tougucao*)
Fructus Toosendan	川楝子(*Chuanlianzi*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Rhizoma Curcumae Longae	姜黄(*Jianghuang*)

Radix Clematidis	威灵仙(*Weilingxian*)
Radix Cyathulae	川牛膝(*Chuanniuxi*)
Rhizoma seu Radix Notopterygii	羌活(*Qianghuo*)
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	白芷(*Baizhi*)
Lignum Sappan	苏木(*Sumu*)
Cortex Acanthopanacis	五加皮(*Wujiapi*)
Flos Carthami	红花(*Honghua*)
Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae	土茯苓(*Tufuling*)
Pericarpium Zanthoxyli	川椒(*Chuanjiao*)
Olibanum	乳香(*Ruxiang*)

Jiedu Painong Tang 解毒排脓汤 (36)

English Name: Decoction for Detoxicating and Expelling Pus

Ingredients

Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Herba Taraxaci	蒲公英(*Pugongying*)
Herba Violae	紫花地丁(*Zihuadiding*)
Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)
Radix Isatidis	板蓝根(*Banlangen*)
Radix Trichosanthis	天花粉(*Tianhuafen*)
Squama Manitis Preparata	山甲珠(*Shanjiazhu*)
Spina Gleditsiae	皂角刺(*Zaojiaoci*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍(*Chishao*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)

Jiedu Xiyao 解毒洗药 (28)

English Name: Drugs with the Action of Detoxicating Used for Washing

Ingredients

Herba Taraxaci 蒲公英(*Pugongying*)	30 g
Radix Sophorae Flavescentis 苦参(*Kushen*)	12 g
Cortex Phellodendri 黄柏(*Huangbai*)	12 g
Fructus Forsythiae 连翘(*Lianqiao*)	12 g
Semen Momordicae 木鳖子(*Mubiezi*)	12 g
Flos Lonicerae 金银花(*jinyinhua*)	9 g
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	9 g
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	9 g
Cortex Moutan 牡丹皮(*Danpi*)	9 g
Radix Glycyrrhizae 生甘草(*Shenggancao*)	9 g

Preparation and Administration

The affected part of a patient's body is washed and fumed with the hot decoction, 1–2 times daily, 3 minutes each time. To the patient with open part of a sore, the formal changes of medicine should be taken after the washing and fuming.

Jingong Wan (A Chinese Patent Drug) 金蚣丸(56)

English Name: Golden Centipede Bolus

Jinhuang Gao 金黄膏 (17)

English Name: Colden Ointment

Ingredients

Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 生大黄(*Shengdahuang*)	2500 g
Cortex Phellodendri 黄柏(*Huangbai*)	2500 g
Rhizoma Curcumae Longae 姜黄(*Jianghuang*)	2500 g

Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	2500 g
Rhizoma Arisaematis 天南星(*Tiannanxing*)	1000 g
Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae 陈皮(*Chenpi*)	1000 g
Rhizoma Atractylodis 苍术(*Cangzhu*)	1000 g
Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis 厚朴(*Houpo*)	1000 g
Radix Trichosanthis 天花粉(*Tianhuafen*)	5000 g
Radix Glycyrrhizae 甘草(*Gancao*)	1000 g

Preparation and Administration

The drugs are ground into fine powder and mixed with honey, tea or 50–70% vaseline into a paste, which is applied to the affected part, once daily.

Jinkui Shenqi Wan 金匮肾气丸 (13)

English Name: Bolus for Invigorating the Kidney–*Qi*

Source: The Book *Nei Ke Jai Yao* 内科摘要

Ingredients

Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Fructus Corni	山芋肉(*Shanyurou*)
Rhizoma Dioscoreae	山药(*Shanyao*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	附子(*Fuzi*)
Cortex Cinnamomi	肉桂(*Rougui*)

Jinsuo Gujing Wan 金锁固精丸 (85)

English Name: Golden Lock Pill for Keeping the Kidney Es-

sence

Source: The Book *Yi Fang Ji Jie* 医方集解

Ingredients

Semen Astragali Complanati	沙苑蒺藜(*Shayuanjili*)
Semen Euryalae	芡实(*Qianshi*)
Os Draconis Fossilia	制龙骨(*Zhilonggu*)
Concha Ostreae	牡蛎(*Muli*)
Plumula Nelumbinis	莲子肉(*Lianzirou*)

Jinyinhua Yin 金银花饮 (45)

English Name: Drink of Honeysuckle Flower

Ingredients

Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Herba Violae	紫花地丁(*Zihuadiding*)
Radix Rehmanniae	生地(*Shengdi*)
Folium Isatidis	大青叶(*Daqingye*)
Radix Scrophulariae	玄参(*Xuanshen*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Fructus Gardeniae	栀子(*Zhizi*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Herba Lophatheri	竹叶(*Zhuye*)

Jisheng Shenqi Wan 济生肾气丸 (76)

English Name: Life Preserving Bolus by Replenishing the Kidney—*Qi*

Ingredients

Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)

Fructus Corni	山芋肉(*Shanyurou*)
Rhizoma Dioscoreae	山药(*Shanyao*)
Corte Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	附子(*Fuzi*)
Semen Plantaginis	车前子(*Cheqianzi*)
Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	牛膝(*Niuxi*)

Jiu Yi Dan 九一丹 (23)

English Name: Nine to One Powder

Source: The Book *Yin Zong jin Jian* 医宗金鉴

Ingredients

Gypsum Fibrosum	石膏(*Shigao*) 9 g
Hydrargyri Oxydum Rubrum	红升丹 (*Hongshengdan*)1 g

Preparation and Administration

All the drugs are ground into very fine powder, and a little is dusted in the sore area.

Kaiyu San 开郁散 (65)

English Name: Stagnation-relieving Powder

Source: The Book *Dong Tian Yue Zhi* 洞天粤旨

Ingredients

Radix Bupleuri	柴胡(*Chaihu*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)

Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	白术(*Baizhu*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Rhizoma Cyperi	香附(*Xiangfu*)
Radix Curcumae	郁金(*Yujin*)
Herba Semiaquilegiae	天葵草(*Tiankuicao*)
Scorpio	全蝎(*Quanxie*)
Semen Sinapis Alba	白芥子(*Baijiezi*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae Preparata	炙甘草(*Zhigancao*)

Kangjun Xiaoyan Pian (a Chinese Patent Drug)
抗菌消炎片 (32)
English Name: Antibacterial and Antiphlogistic Tablet

Lanwei Huayu Tang 阑尾化瘀汤(60)
English Name: Decoction for Treating Appendicitis by Removing Blood Stasis
Ingredients

Fructus Toosendan 川楝子(*Chuanlianzi*)	15 g
Flos Lonicerae 金银花(*Jinyinhua*)	15g
Rhizoma Corydalis 延胡索(*Yanhusuo*)	10g
Cortex Moutan 丹皮(*Danpi*)	10g
Semen Persicae 桃仁(*Taoren*)	10g
Radix Aucklandiae 木香(*Muxiang*)	10g
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄(*Dahuang*) (decocted later)	10g

Lanwei Qinghua Tang 阑尾清化汤(61)

English Name: Decoction for Treating Appendicitis by Clearing away Heat and Eliminating Dampness

Ingredients

Flos Lonicerae 金银花(*Jinyinhua*)	30 g
Herba Taraxaci 蒲公英(*Pugongying*)	30 g
Cortex Moutan 粉丹皮(*Fendanpi*)	15 g
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄(*Dahuang*) (decocted later)	15 g
Fructus Toosendan 川楝子(*Chuanlianzi*)	10 g
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	12 g

Lanwei Qingjie Tang 阑尾清解汤(62)

English Name: Decoction for Treating Appendicitis by Clearing away Heat and Detoxicating

Ingredients

Flos Lonicerae 金银花(*Jinyinhua*)	30 g
Herba Taraxaci 蒲公英(*pugongying*)	30 g
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄(*Dahuang*) (decocted later)	30 g
Semen Benincasae 冬瓜仁(*Dongguaren*)	30 g
Cortex Moutan 丹皮(*Danpi*)	15 g
Herba Patriniae 败酱草(*Baijiangcao*)	30 g
Radix Aucklandiae 木香(*Muxiang*)	10 g
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	10 g

Liuwei Dinuang Tang 六味地黄汤(12)

English Name: Decoction of Six Drugs Including Rehmannia

Source: The Book *Xiao Er Yao Zheng Zhi Jue* 小儿药证直诀

Ingredients

Radix Remanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Fructus Corni	山芋肉(*Shanyurou*)
Rhizoma Dioscoreae	山药(*Shayao*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)

Longdan Xiegan Tang 龙胆泻肝汤 (40)

English Name: Decoction of Gentiana for Purging the Liver-fire

Source: The Book *Yi Fang Ji Jie* 医方集解

Ingredients

Radix Gentianae	龙胆草(*Longdancao*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Caulis Aristolochiae Manshuriensis	木通(*Mutong*)
Semen Plantaginis	车前子(*Cheqianzi*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Bupleuri	柴胡(*Chaihu*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)
Radix Rehmanniae	生地黄(*Shengdihuang*)

In recent years, the following drugs are added:

Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Fructus Gardeniae	栀子(*Zhizi*)

Lou Bei San 蒌贝散(66)

English Name: Powder of Trichosanthes Fruit and Fritillary Bulb

Ingredients

Fructus Trichosanthis	瓜蒌(*Gualou*)
Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	贝母(*Beimu*)
Arisaema cum Bile	南星(*Nanxing*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)
Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)

Manxing Kuiyang Xiyao 慢性溃疡洗药(29)

English Name: Washing Drugs for Treating Chronic Ulcer

Ingredients

Radix Ampelopsis 白蔹(*Bailian*)	12 g
Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归(*Danggui*)	15 g
Radix Astragali 生黄芪(*Shenghuangqi*)	15 g
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	15 g
Folium Artemisiae Argyi 艾叶(*Aiye*)	12 g
Radix Glycyrrhizae 甘草(*Gancao*)	12 g
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	9 g
Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	9 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	9 g
fresh pig's bone 鲜猪骨(*Xianzhugu*)	30 g

Preparation and Administration

The fresh pig's bone is decocted to get 300 ml decoction, and then the other druge are decocted in the decoction for 30 minutes to get the latter decoction. The area of a sore is washed and

fumed with the latter decoction while it is hot, then the formal changes of medicine is taken.

Neishu Huanglian Tang 内疏黄连汤 (4)

English Name: Coptis Decoction for the Depressed Organs in the Interior

Source: The Book *Su Wen Bing Ji Qi Yi Bao Ming Ji* 素问病机气机气宜保命集

Ingredients

Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Fructus Aurantii	枳壳(*Zhiqiao*)
Fructus Gardeniae	生栀子(*Sheng zhizi*)
Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)
Radix Aucklandiae	木香(*Muxiang*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Radix Platycodi	桔梗(*Jiegeng*)
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	生大黄(*Shengdahuang*)
Rhizoma Coptidis	黄连(*Huanglian*)
Semen Arecae	槟榔(*Binglang*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	生甘草(*Shenggancao*)
Herba Menthae	薄荷(*Bohe*)

Neixiao Luoli Wan(a Chinese Patent Drug) 内消瘰疬丸 (97)

English Name: Bolus for Resolving Scrofula in the Interior

Niubang Jieji Tang 牛蒡解肌汤(47)

English Name: Arctum Decoction for Expelling Pathogenic Factors from Muscles and Skin

Source: The Book *Yang Yi Xin De Ji* 疡医心得集

Ingredients

Fructus Arctii	牛蒡子(*Niubangzi*)
Herba Menthae	薄荷(*Bohe*)
Herba Schizonepetae	荆芥(*jingjie*)
Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)
Fructus Gardeniae	栀子(*Zhizi*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Herba Dendrobii	石斛(*Shihu*)
Radix Scrophulariae	玄参(*Xuanshen*)
Spica Prunellae	夏枯草(*Xiakucao*)

Niuhuang Jiedu Pian 牛黄解毒片 (33)

English Name: Bezoar Tablet for Detoxicating

Ingredients

Calculus Bovis	牛黄(*Niuhuang*)
Realgar	雄黄(*Xionghuang*)
Gyposum Fibrosum	石膏(*Shigao*)
Borneolum Syntheficum	冰片(*Bingpian*)
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei	大黄(*Dahuang*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Radix Platycodi	桔梗(*Jiegeng*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Niuhuang San 牛黄散 (95)

English Name: Powder of Bezoar

Source: Teh Book *Tai Ping Sheng Hui Fang* 太平圣惠方

Ingredients

Calculus Bovis	牛黄(*Niuhuang*)
Moschus	麝香(*Shexiang*)
Cinnabaris	朱砂(*Zhusha*)
Radix Ginseng	人参(*Renshen*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Radix Saposhinkoviae	防风(*Fangfeng*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)
Cortex Cinnamomi	肉桂(*Rougui*)
Cornu Rhinocerotis	犀角(*Xijiao*)
Radix Ophiopogonis	麦门冬(*Maimendong*)
Cortex Lycii	地骨皮(*Digupi*)
Rhizoma Gastrodiae	天麻(*Tianma*)

Puji Xiaodu Yin 普济消毒饮 (37)

English Name: Universal Relief Decoction for Disinfection

Source: The Book *Jing Yue Quan Shu* 景岳全书

Ingredients

Rhizoma Coptidis	黄连(*Huanglian*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Radix Scrophulariae	玄参(*Xuanshen*)
Fructus Gardeniae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)
Radix Isatidis	板蓝根(*Banlangen*)

Lasiophaera seu Calvatia	马勃(*Mobo*)
Fructus Arctii	牛蒡子(*Niubangzi*)
Herba Menthae	薄荷(*Bohe*)
Bombyx Batryticatus	僵蚕(*Jiangcan*)
Radix Platycodi	桔梗(*Jiegeng*)
Rhizoma Cimcifugae	升麻(*Shengma*)
Radix Bupleuri	柴胡(*Chihu*)
Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae	陈皮(*Chenpi*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Qianchui Gao 千捶膏(16)

English Name: Ointment Made by Pounding

Source: The Book *Zhong Fu Tang Gong Xuan Liang Fang* 种福堂公选良方

Ingredients

Colophonium 松香(*Songxiang*)	120 g
Semen Ricini 蓖麻子(*Bimazi*)	120 g
Catechu 儿茶(*Ercha*)	3 g
Calomelas 轻粉(*Qingfen*)	3 g
Semen Armeniacae Amarum 杏仁(*Xingren*)	6 g
Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	6 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	6 g
Resina Draconis 血竭(*Xuejie*)	6 g.

Preparation and Administration

Bimazi is broken in a stone mortar, into which *Songxiang* and the other drugs are put and pounded into a paste. The paste is applied to the affected part.

Qiju Dihuang Wan 杞菊地黄丸 (75)

English Name: Bolus of Six Drugs, Rehmannia with Wolfberry and Chrysanthemum

Source: The Book *Yin Ji* 医级

Ingredients

Fructus Lycii	枸杞(*Gouqi*)
Flos Chrysanthemi	菊花(*juhua*)
Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Fructus Corni	山芋肉(*Shanyurou*)
Rhizoma Dioscoreae	山药(*shanyao*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)

Qingre Painong Tang 清热排脓汤(34)

English Name: Decoction for Clearing away Heat and Expeiling Pus

Ingredients

Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Herba Taraxaci	蒲公英(*Pugongying*)
Radix Astragali	生黄芪(*Shenghuangqi*)
Radix Isatidis	板蓝根(*Banlangen*)
Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)
Herba Patriniae	败酱草(*Baijiangcao*)
Radix Trichosanthis	天花粉(*Tianhuafen*)
Radix Platycodi	桔梗(*Jiegeng*)
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	白芷(*Baizhi*)

Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Squama Manitis Preparata	山甲珠(*Shanjiazhu*)
Spina Gleditsiae	皂角刺(*Zaojiaoci*)

Qingshu Tang 清暑汤 (30)

English Name: Decoction for Clearing away Summer-heat

Ingredients

Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)
Radix Trichosanthis	花粉(*Huafen*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍(*Chishao*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)
Talcum	滑石(*Huashi*)
Semen Plantaginis	车前子(*Cheqianzi*)
Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Herba Lophatheri	淡竹叶(*Danzhuye*)

Qingying Tang 清营汤 (52)

English Name: Decoction for Clearing Heat from *Ying* System

Source: The Book *Wen Bing Tiao Bian* 温病条辨

Ingredients

Cornu Rhinocerotis	犀角(*Xijiao*)
Radix Rehmanniae	生地(*Shengdi*)
Radix Scrophulariae	玄参(*Xuanshen*)
Herba Lophatheri	竹叶芯(*Zhuyexin*)
Radix Ophiopogonis	麦冬(*Maidong*)

Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae	丹参(*Danshen*)
Rhizoma Coptidis	黄连(*Huanglian*)
Flos Lonicerae	银花(*Yinhua*)
Fructus Forsythiae	连翘(*Lianqiao*)

Qufu Shengji San 祛腐生肌散(25)

English Name: Powder for Removing Rotten Tissue and promoting Tissue Regeneration

Ingredients

Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	3 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	3 g
Catechu 儿茶(*Ercha*)	3 g
forged Gypsum Fibrosum 煅石膏(*Duanshigao*)	3 g
Calomelas 轻粉(*Qingfen*)	1.8 g
forged Margarita 煅珍珠(*Duanzhenzhu*)	1.2 g
elephant's tusk 象牙(*Xiangya*)	0.9 g
Moschus 麝香(*Shexiang*)	0.6 g
Borneolum Sytheticum 冰片(*Bingpian*)	0.6 g.

Preparation and Administration

As that of *Jiu Yi Dan*

Renshen Yangrong Tang 人参养荣汤(67)

English Name: Ginseng Decoction for Nourishing Blood

Source: The Book *Tai Ping Hui Min He Ji Ju Fang* 太平惠民和剂局方

Ingredients

Radix Ginseng	人参(*Renshen*)

Radix Astragail 黄芪(*Huangqi*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba 白芍(*Baishao*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae白术(*Baizhu*)
Radix Rehmanniae Preparata 熟地(*Shudi*)
Poria 茯苓(*Fuling*)
Cortex Cinnamomi 肉桂(*Rougui*)
Fructus Schisandrae 五味子(*WuWeizi*)
Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae 陈皮(*Chenpi*)
Radix Polygalae 远志(*Yuanzhi*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae 甘草(*Gancao*)
Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens 生姜(*Shengjiang*)
Fructus Jujubae 大枣(*Dazao*)

Sanjie Pian (a Chinese Patent Drug) 散结片 (58)
English Name: Tablet for Resolving Masses

Shenfu Tang 参附汤 (55)
English Name: Decoction of Ginseng and Prepared Aconite
Source: The Book *Chong Ding Yan Shi Ji Sheng Fang* 重订严氏济生方
Ingredients
Radix Ginseng 人参(*Renshen*)
Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata附子(*Fuzi*)

Shengji San 生肌散 (27)

English Name: Powder for Promoting Tissue Regenration

Ingredients

Olibanum Preparata 炙乳香(*Zhiruxiang*)	6 g
Myrrha Preparata 炙没药(*Zhimoyao*)	6 g
forged elephant's skin 煅象皮(*Duanxiangpi*)	6 g
Resina Draconis 血竭(*Xuejie*)	9 g
forged Gypsum Fibrosum 煅石膏(*Duanshigao*)	12 g
Bornelolum Sytheticum 冰片(*Bingpian*)	3 g
Margarita 珍珠(*Zhenzhu*)	0.9 g

Preparation and Administration

As that of *Jiu Yi Dan*

Shengji Yuhong Gao 生肌玉红膏(2)

English Name: Jade-red Ointment for Promoting Tissue Regeneration

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Zheng Zong* 外科正宗

Ingredients

Radix Angelicae Sinensis 当归(*Danggui*)	60 g
Wax 蜡(*La*)	60 g
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	15 g
Calomelas 轻粉(*Qingfen*)	12 g
Resina Draconis 血竭(*Xuejie*)	12 g
Radix Arnebiae seu Lithospermi 紫草(*Zicao*)	6 g
Radix Glycyrrhizae 甘草(*Gancao*)	36 g
Oleum Sesami 麻油(*Mayou*)	500 g

Preparation and Administration

The 4 drugs *Danggui*, *Baizhi*, *Zicao* and Gancao are steeped in Mayou for 3 days, then decocted on gentle fire up to brown

and removed with Mayou left. *Baila* is added to and melted in the Mayou. Finally, the fine powder of *Xuejie* and Qingfen and the warm *Mayou* are mixed evenly and cooled into ointment. It is spread on the affected part or made with gauze through sterilizing under high pressure into *Shengji Yuhonggao Youshabu* for dressing change.

Shengji Zhenzhu San 生肌珍珠散 (27)

English Name: Pearl Powder for Promoting Tissue Regeneration

Source: The Book *Quan Guo Zhong Yao Cheng Yao Chu Fang Ji* (全国中药成药处方集)

Ingredients

Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	10 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	10 g
Resina Draconis 血竭(*Xuejie*)	10 g
Catechu 儿茶(*Frcha*)	10 g
forged Os Draconis Forssilia 煅龙骨(*Duanlonggu*)	10 g
Alöe 芦荟(*Luhui*)	10 g
forged elephant's skin 煅象皮(*Duanxiangpi*)	10 g
forged Concha Haliotidis 煅石决明(*Duanshi jueming*)	10 g
forged Margarita 煅珍珠(*Duanzhenzhu*)	0.6 g
Borneolum Sytheticum 冰片(*Bingpian*)	0.6 g
Calomelas 轻粉(*Qingfen*)	3 g

Shengmai San 生脉饮 (54)

English Name: Pulse-activating Powder

Source: The Book *Nei Wai Shang Bian Huo Lun* 内外伤辨惑论

Ingredients:

Radix Ginseng	人参(*Renshen*)
Radix Ophiopogonis	麦冬(*Maidong*)
Fructus Schisandrae	五味子(*Wuweizi*)

Shiquan Dabu Tang 十全大补汤 (94)

English Name: Decoction of Ten Powderful Tonics

Source: The Book *Tai Ping Hui Min He Ji Ju Fang* 太平惠民和剂局方

Ingredients

Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地黄(*Shudihuang*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Radix Ginseng	人参(*Renshen*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	白术(*Baizhu*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae Preparata	炙甘草(*Zhigancao*)
Radix Astragali	黄芪(*Huangqi*)
Cortex Cinnamomi	肉桂(*Rougui*)

Shuangbai San 双柏散 (42)

English Name: Powder of Biota Tops and Phellodendron Bark

Ingredients

Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 生大黄(*Shengdahuang*)	60 g
Cacumen Biotae 侧柏叶(*Cebaiye*)	30 g
Cortex Phellodendri 黄柏(*Huangbai*)	30 g
Herba Lycopi 泽兰(*Zelan*)	30 g
Herba Menthae 薄荷(*Bohe*)	30 g

Preparation and Administration

The drugs are ground into fine powder and made into ointment with water or honey, then the ointment is spread on the affected area.

Sichong Pian 四虫片 (51)

English Name: Bolus of Four Kinds of Worms

Ingredients

Scorpio	金蝎(*Quanxie*)
Scolopendra	蜈蚣(*Wugong*)
Lumbricus	地龙(*Dilong*)
Eupolyphaga seu Steleophaga	土鳖虫(*Tubiechong*)

Simiao San 四妙散 (43)

English Name: Powder of Four Wonderful Drugs

Source: The Book Cheng Fang Bian Du 成方便读

Ingredients

Rhizoma Atractylodis	苍术(*Cangzhu*)
Cortex Phellodendri	黄柏(*Huangbai*)
Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	牛膝(*Niuxi*)
Semen Coicis	薏苡仁(*Yiyiren*)

Simiao Yongan Tang 四妙勇安汤(68)

English Name: Decoction of Four Wonderful Drugs for Quick Restoration of Health

Source: The Book *Yan Fang Xin Bian* 验方新编

Ingredients

Radix Scrophulariae	玄参(*Xuanshen*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*jinyinhua*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Sini San 四逆散 (92)

English Name: Powder for Treating Cold Limbs

Source: The Book *Shang Han Lun* 伤寒论

Ingredients

Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	附子(*Fuzi*)
Rhizoma Zingiberis	干姜(*Gangjiang*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)

Taohong Siwu Tang 桃红四物汤 (6)

English Name: Four Ingredient Decoction with Peach Seed and Safflower

Source: The Book *Yi Zong Jin Jian* 医宗金鉴

Ingredients

Semen Persicae	桃仁(*Taoren*)
Flos Carthami	红花(*Honghua*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)

Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍(*Chishao*)
Radix Rehmanniae	地黄(*Dihuang*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)

Tounong San 透脓散 (9)

English Name: Powder for Expelling Pus

Source: The Book *Yi Xue Xin Wu* 医学心悟

Ingredients

Radix Astragali	生黄芪(*Shenghuangqi*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Squama Manitis Preparata	山甲珠(*Shanjiazhu*)
Spina Gleditsiae	皂角刺(*Zaojiaoci*)

Tuoli Xiaodu San 托里消毒散 (10)

English Name: Powder for Expelling from within and Disinfection

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Zheng Zong* 外科正宗

Ingredients

Radix Codonopsis	党参(*Dangshen*)
Radix Astragali	生黄芪(*Shenghuangqi*)
Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	白术(*Baizhu*)
Radix Platycodi	桔梗(*Jiegeng*)

Radix Angelicae Dahuriae	白芷(*Baizhi*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)
Spina Gledtisiae	皂角刺(*Zaojiaoci*)

Wushen Tang 五神汤 (3)

English Name: Decoction of Five Drugs for Treating Cutaneous Infections

Source: The Book *Bian Zheng Lu* 辨证录

Ingredients

Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	牛膝(*Niuxi*)
Semen Plantaginis	车前子(*Cheqianzi*)
Herba Violae	紫花地丁(*Zihuadiding*)

Wuwei Xiaodu Yin 五味消毒饮 (1)

English Name: Antiphlogistic Decoction of Five Drugs

Source: The Book *Yi Zong Jin Jian* 医宗金鉴

Ingredients

Flos Lonicerae	金银花(*Jinyinhua*)
Flos Chrysanthemi Indici	野菊花(*Yejuhua*)
Herba Taraxaci	蒲公英(*Gongying*)
Radix Semiaquilegiae	紫背天葵(*Zibeitiankui*)
Herba Violae	紫花地丁(*Zihuadiding*)

Wuwu Dan 五五丹 (24)

English Name: Five to Five Powder

Source: The Book *Yi Zong Jin Jian* 医宗金鉴

Ingredients

Gypsum Fibrosum	石膏(*Shigao*)	5 g
Hydrargyri Oxydum Rubrum	红粉(*HongFen*)	5 g

Preparation

As that of *Jiu Yi Dan*

Xianfang Huoming Yin 仙方活命仙 (12)

English Name: Fairy Decoction for Treating Cutaneous Infections

Source: The Book *Jiao Zhu Fu Ren Liang Fang* 校注妇人良方

Ingredients

Flos Lonicerae	银花(*Yinhua*)
Squama Manitis	穿山甲(*Chuanshanjia*)
Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	浙贝母(*Zhebeimu*)
Spina Gleditsiae	皂角刺(*Zaojiaoci*)
Radix Trichosanthis	花粉(*Huafen*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae	白芷(*Baizhi*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍(*Chishao*)
Radix Saposhinkoviae	防风(*Fangfeng*)
Olibanum	乳香(*Ruxiang*)
Myrrha	没药(*Moyao*)

Xiantian Danzao Wan 先天大造丸 (82)

English Name: Miraculous Bolus for Clearing Bone-heat

Ingredients

Radix Ginseng	人参(*Renshen*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	白术(*Baizhu*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Semen Plantaginis	菟丝子(*Tusizi*)
Fructus Lycii	枸杞(*Gouqi*)
Rhizoma Polygonati	黄精(*Huangjing*)
Radix Achyranthis Bidentatae	牛膝(*Niuxi*)
Fructus Psoraleae	补骨脂(*Buguzhi*)
Rhizoma Drynariae	骨碎补(*Gusuibu*)
Radix Morindae Officinalis	巴戟天(*Bajitian*)
Radix Polygalae	远志(*Yuanzhi*)
Radix Aucklandiae	木香(*Muxiang*)
Halitum	大青盐(*Daqingyan*)
Flos Caryophylli	丁香(*Dingxiang*)
Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Rhizoma Curculiginis	仙茅(*Xianmao*)
Radix Polygoni Multiflori	何首乌(*Heshouwu*)
Herba Cistanches	肉苁蓉(*Roucongrong*)
Placenta Hominis	紫河车(*Ziheche*)
Fructus Jujubae	大枣(*Dazao*)

Xiaohe Gao (a Chinese Patent drug) 消核膏(59)

English Name: Ointment for Resolving Subcutaneous Nodule.

Xiaojin Dan (a Chinese Patent Drug)　小金丹(57)
English Name: Minor Golden Bolus

Xiaoluo Wan　消瘰丸 (64)
English Name: Scrofula-eliminating Pill
Source: The Book *Yi Xue Xin Wu*　医学心悟
Ingredients

Radix Scrophulariae	玄参(*Xuanshen*)
Concha Ostreae	牡蛎(*Muli*)
Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	贝母(*Beimu*)

Xiaoyan Rangao　消炎软膏(74)
English Name: Ointment for Diminishing Inflammation
Ingredients

Folium Hibisci　芙蓉叶(*Fulongye*)	120 g
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei　大黄(*Dahuang*)	30 g
Rhizoma Arisaematis　南星(*Nanxing*)	12 g
Radix Cimicifugae　升麻(*Shengma*)	15 g
Cortex Phellodendri　黄柏(*Huangbai*)	60 g.

Preparation and Administration
All the drugs are ground into fine powder, the powder and vaseline (3:7 in amount) are stirred evenly to get an ointment. It is for external application.

Xiaoyao San 逍遥散 (7)

English Name: Ease Powder

Source: The Book *Tai Ping Hui Min He Ji Ju Fang* 太平惠民和剂局方

Ingredients

Radix Bupleuri	柴胡(*Chaihu*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae	白术(*Baizhu*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	炙甘草(*Zhigancao*)
Herba Menthae	薄荷(*Bohe*)
Rhizoma Zingiberis Preparata	煨姜(*Weijiang*)

Xi Huang Wan 犀黄丸(79)

English Name: Pill of Rhinoceros Horn and Cow-bezoar

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Quan Sheng Ji* 外科全生集

Ingredients

Calculus Bovis	牛黄(*Niuhuang*)
Moschus	麝香(*Shexiang*)
Olibanum	乳香(*Ruxiang*)
Myrrha	没药(*Moyao*)

Xijiao Dihuang Tang 犀角地黄汤 (5)

English Name: Decoction of Rhinoceros Horn and Rehmannia

Source: The Book *Qian Jin Fang* 千金方

Ingredients

Cornu Rhinocerotis	犀角(*Xijiao*)
Radix Rehmanniae	生地黄(*Shengdihuang*)
Cortex Moutan	牡丹皮(*Mudanpi*)
Radix Paeoniae Rubra	赤芍(*Chishao*)

Xingxiao Wan 醒消丸 (49)

English Name: Pill of Olibanum, Myrrha, Musk and Realgar

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Quan Sheng Ji* 外科全生集

Ingredients

Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	30 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	30 g
Moschus 麝香(*Shexiang*)	4.5 g
Realgar 雄黄(*Xionghuang*)	15 g.

Preparation aand Administration

The ingredient *Shexiang* is added to the powder of *Ruxiang* , *Moyao* and *Xionghuang* , and the four drugs are ground into the final powder;Then the final powder and 30g thoroughly cooked glutinous millet are pound into pills as large as *Laifuzi* (Semen Raphani), which is the drug *Xingxiao Wan* after dried. 9g is taken with hot mellow wine each time.

Contraindication

It is contraindicated to the pregnant women.

Yanghe Jiening Gao 阴和解凝膏 (15)

English Name: *Yang* –activating and Removing Stagnancy Plaster

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Quan Sheng Ji* 外科全生集

Ingredients	
Fructus et Radix et Folium et Caulis Arctii 鲜牛蒡子根叶梗 (*Xian Niubangzi Genyegeng*)	1500 g
fresh Caulis Impatientis 鲜白凤仙梗 (*Xian Baifengxian Geng*)	124 g
Rhizoma Chuanxiong 川芎 (*Chuanxiong*)	124 g
Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata 附子(*Fuzi*)	60 g
Caulis Cinnamomi 桂枝(*Guizhi*)	60 g
Radix et Rhizoma Rhei 大黄(*Dahuang*)	60 g
Cortex Cinnamomi 肉桂(*Rougui*)	60 g
Radix Aconiti Kusnezoffii 草乌(*Caowu*)	60 g
Lumbricus 地龙(*Dilong*)	60 g
Bombyx Batryticatus 僵蚕(*Jiangcan*)	60 g
Radix Paeoniae Rubra 赤芍(*Chishao*)	60 g
Radix Angelicae Dahuricae 白芷(*Baizhi*)	60 g
Radix Ampelopsis 白蔹(*Bailian*)	60 g
Rhizoma Bletillae 白芨(*Baiji*)	60 g
Olibanum 乳香(*Ruxiang*)	60 g
Myrrha 没药(*Moyao*)	60 g
Radix Dipsaci 续断(*Xuduan*)	30 g
Saposhinkoviae 防风(*Fangfeng*)	30 g
Herba Schizonepetae 荆芥(*Jingjie*)	30 g
Faeces Trogopterori 五灵脂(*Wulingzhi*)	30 g
Radix Aucklandiae 木香(*Muxiang*)	30 g
Pericarpium Citri 香橼皮(*Xiangyuanpi*)	30 g
Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae 陈皮(*Chenpi*)	30 g
storax oil 苏合油(*Suheyou*)	120 g

Moschus 麝香(*Shexiang*)	30 g
Oleum Sesami 麻油(*Mayou*)	5000 g.

Preparation and Administration

Xian Baifengxian Geng is decocted in *Mayou* in a pot up to brown and then removed with the Mayou left. The second day , the rest drugs except *Ruxiang* , *Moyao* , *Shexiang* and *Suheyou* are put into the pot with the *Mayou* , decocted and then filtered out. The remaining *Mayou* is boiled until it can take the shape of pearls when being dropped into water. *Huangdan* (lead oxide) is added and stirred evenly with the ratio of the *Huangdan* added and the thicker medicated Mayou in the pot being 210 g to 500 g. Then the pot with the content is removed from the fire and finally *Ruxiang powder*, *Moyao powder* , *Shexiang* and *Suheyou* are put into the pot and mixed with the content in it evenly, wtih the parparation of *Yanghe Jiening Gao* finished. It is heated from fire until it becomes soft and sticky, and then applied to the affected part.

Yanghe Tang 阳和汤 (8)

English Name: *Yang* –activating Decoction

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Quan Sheng Ji* 外科全生集

Ingredients

Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Semen Sinapis Alba	白芥子(*Baijiezi*)
Colla Cornus Cervi	鹿角胶(*Lujiaojiao*)
Cortex Cinnamomi	肉桂(*Rougui*)
Rhizoma Zingiberis Carbonisatus	姜炭(*Jiangtan*)
Herba Ephedrae	麻黄(*Mahuang*)

Radix Glycyrrhizae	生甘草(*Shenggancao*)

Yiwei Tang 益胃汤 (90)

English Name: Decoction for Nourishing Stomach

Source: The Book *Wen Bing Tiao Bian* 温病条辨

Ingredients

Radix Glehniae	沙参(*Shashen*)
Radix Ophiopogonis	麦门冬(*Maimendong*)
Radix Rehmanniae	生地(*Shengdi*)
Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati	玉竹(*Yuzhu*)

Yougui Wan 右归丸 (83)

English Name: The Kidney—*Yang* Roinforcing Bolus

Source: The Book *Jing Yue Quan Shu* 景岳全书

Ingredients

Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Rhizoma Dioscoreae	山药(*Shanyao*)
Fructus Corni	山茱萸(*Shanzhuyu*)
Fructus Lycii	枸杞(*Gouqi*)
Colla Cornus Cervi	鹿角胶(*Lujiaojiao*)
Semen Cuscutae	菟丝子(*Tusizi*)
Cortex Eucommiae	杜仲(*Duzhong*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Cortex Cinnamomi	肉桂(*Rougui*)
Radix Aconiti Lateralis Preparata	制附子(*Zhifuzi*)

Zhibai Dihuang Wan 知柏地黄丸(70)

English Name: Pill of Anemarrhena, Phellodendron and Rehmannia

Source: The Book *Yi Zong Jin Jian* 医宗金鉴

Ingredients

Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	知母(*Zhimu*)
Cortex Phellodendri	黄柏(*Huangbai*)
Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Fructus Corni	山茱肉(*Shanyurou*)
Rhizoma Dioscoreae	淮山药(*Huaishanyao*)
Cortex Moutan	丹皮(*Danpi*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Poria	茯苓(*Fuling*)

Zhuye Huangqi Tang 竹吉黄芪汤 (35)

English Name: Decoction with Lophatherum and Astragalus

Source: The Book *Yi Zong Jin Jian* 医宗金鉴

Ingredients

Radix Ginseng	人參(*Renshen*)
Rhizoma Pinelliae	清半夏(*Qingbanxia*)
Radix Ophiopogonis	麦冬(*Maidong*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Radix Astragali	生黄芪(*Shenghuangqi*)
Radix Rehmanniae	生地(*Shengdi*)
Gypsum Fibrosum	生石膏(*Shengshigao*)

Radix Glycyrrhizae	生甘草(*Shenggancao*)
Herba Lophatheri	淡竹叶(*Danzhuye*)
Medulla Junci	灯芯(*Dingxin*)
Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens	生姜(*Shengjiang*)

Zijin Ding (a Chinese Patent Drug) 紫金锭 (146)

English Name: Purple–golden Lozenge

Ziyin Chushi Tang 滋阴除湿片 (81)

English Name: Decoction for Nourishing *Yin* and Eliminating Dampness

Source: The Book *Wai Ke Zheng Zong* 外科正宗

Ingredients

Rhizoma Chuanxiong	川芎(*Chuanxiong*)
Radix Angelicae Sinensis	当归(*Danggui*)
Radix Paeoniae Alba	白芍(*Baishao*)
Radix Rehmanniae Preparata	熟地(*Shudi*)
Radix Bupleuri	柴胡(*Chaihu*)
Radix Scutellariae	黄芩(*Huangqin*)
Pericarpium Citri Reticulate	陈皮(*Chenpi*)
Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii	贝母(*Beimu*)
Rhizoma Anemarrhenae	知母(*Zhimu*)
Cortex Lycii	地骨皮(*Digupi*)
Rhizoma Alismatis	泽泻(*Zexie*)
Radix Glycyrrhizae	甘草(*Gancao*)
Rhizoma Zingiberis Recens	生姜(*Shengjiang*)

11

外　科　学

序

《英汉实用中医药大全》即将问世，吾为之高兴。

岐黄之道，历经沧桑，永盛不衰。吾中华民族之强盛，由之。世界医学之丰富和发展，亦由之。然而，世界民族之差异，国别之不同，语言之障碍，使中医中药的传播和交流受到了严重束缚。当前，世界各国人民学习、研究、运用中医药的热潮方兴未艾。为使吾中华民族优秀文化遗产之一的岐黄之道走向世界，光大其业，为世界人民造福，徐象才君集省内外精英于一堂，主持编译了《英汉实用中医药大全》。是书之问世将使海内外同道欢呼雀跃。

世界医学发展之日，当是岐黄之道光大之时。

吾欣然序之。

中华人民共和国卫生部副部长
兼国家中医药管理局局长
世界针灸学会联合会主席
中国科学技术协会委员
中华全国中医学会副会长
中国针灸学会会长

胡熙明

1989年12月

序

中华民族有同疾病长期作斗争的光辉历程，故而有自己的传统医学——中国医药学。中国医药学有一套完整的从理论到实践的独特科学体系。几千年来，它不但被完好地保存下来，而且得到了发扬光大。它具有疗效显著、副作用小等优点，是人们防病治病、强身健体的有效工具。

任何一个国家在医学进步中所取得的成就，都是人类共同的财富，是没有国界的。医学成果的交流比任何其他科学成果的交流都应进行得更及时，更准确。我从事中医工作30多年来，一直盼望着有朝一日中国医药学能全面走向世界，为全人类解除病痛疾苦做出其应有的贡献。但由于用外语表达中医难度较大，中国医药学对外传播的速度一直不能令人满意。

山东中医学院的徐象才老师发起并主持了大型系列丛书《英汉实用中医药大全》的编译工作。这个工作是一项巨大工程，是一种大型科研活动，是一个大胆的尝试，是一件新事物。对徐象才老师及与其合作的全体编译者夜以继日地长期工作所付出的艰苦劳动、克服重重困难所表现出的坚韧不拔的毅力，以及因此而取得的重大成绩，我甚为敬佩。作为一个中医界的领导者，对他们的工作给予全力支持是我应尽的责任。

我相信《英汉实用中医药大全》无疑会在中国医学史和世界科学技术史上找到它应有的位置。

中华全国中医学会常务理事
山东省卫生厅副厅长

张奇文

1990年3月

出 版 前 言

中国医药学是我中华民族优秀文化遗产之一，建国以来由于党和国家对待中医药采取了正确的政策，使中医药理论宝库不断得到了发掘整理、取得了巨大的成绩。当前，世界各国人民对中国医药学的学习和研究热潮日益高涨，为促进这一热潮更加蓬勃的发展，为使中国医药学能更好地为全人类解除病痛服务，就必须促进中医中药在世界范围内的传播和交流，而要使这一传播和交流进行得更及时、更准确，就必须首先排除语言障碍。因此，编译一套英汉对照的中医药基本知识的书籍，供国内外学习、研究中医药时使用，已成为国内外医药学界和医药学教育界许多人士的迫切需要。

多年来，在卫生部门的号召下，在"中医英语表达研究"方面，已经作出了一些可喜的成绩。本书《英汉实用中医药大全》的编辑出版就是在调查上述研究工作的历史和现状的基础上，继续对中医药英语表达作较系统、较全面的研究，以适应中国医药学对外传播交流的需要。

这部"大全"的版本为英汉对照，共有21个分册，一个分册介绍论述中国医药学的一个分科。在编著上注意了中医药汉文稿的编写特色，在内容上注意了科学性、实用性、全面性和简明易读。汉文稿的执笔撰写者主要是有20年以上实践经验的教授、副教授、主任医师和副主任医师。各分册汉文稿撰写成后，均经各学科专家逐一审订。各分册英文主译、主审主要是国内既懂中医又懂英语的权威人士，还有许多中医院校的英语教师及医药卫生部门的专业翻译人员。英译稿脱稿后，经过了复审、终审，有些译稿还召开全国22所院校和单位人员参加的英译稿统稿定稿

研讨会，对英译稿进行细致的研讨和推敲，对如何较全面、较系统、较准确地用英语表达中国医药学进行了探讨，从而推动整个译文达到较高水平，因此，这部"大全"可供中医院校高年级学生作为泛读教材使用。

这部"大全"的编纂得到了国家教育委员会、国家中医药管理局、山东省教育委员会、山东省卫生厅等各部门有关领导的支持。在国家教委高等教育司的指导下，成立了《英汉实用中医药大全》编译领导委员会。还得到了全国许多中医院校和中药生产厂家领导的支持。

希望这部"大全"的出版，对中医院校加强中医英语教学，对国内卫生界培养外向型中医药人才，以及在推动世界各国人民对中医药的学习和研究方面，都将产生良好的影响。

高等教育出版社

1990 年 3 月

前　言

《英汉实用中医药大全》是一部以中医基本理论为基础，以中医临床为重点，较为全面系统、简明扼要、易读实用的中级英汉学术性著作。它的主要读者是：中医药院校高年级学生和中青年教师、中医院的中青年医生和中医药科研单位的科研人员，从事中医对外函授工作的人员和出国讲学或行医的中医人员，西学中人员，来华学习中医的外国留学生和各类进修人员。

由于中国医药学为我中华民族之独有，因此，英译便成了本《大全》编译工作的重点。为确保译文能准确表达中医的确切含义，我们邀集熟悉中医的英语人员、医学专业翻译人员、懂英语的中医药人员乃至医古文人员于一堂，共同翻译、共同对译文进行研讨推敲的集体翻译法，这样，就把众人之长融进了译文质量之中。然而，即使这样，也难确保译文都能尽如人意。汉文稿虽反映了中国医药学的精髓和概貌，但也难能十全十美。我衷心地盼望读者能提出批评和建议，以便《大全》再版时修改。

参加本《大全》编、译、审工作的人员达200余名，他们来自全国28个单位，其中有山东、北京、上海、天津、南京、浙江、安徽、河南、湖北、广西、贵阳、甘肃、成都、山西、长春等15所中医学院，还有中国中医研究院，山东省中医药研究所等中医药科研单位。

山东省教育委员会把本《大全》的编译列入了科研计划并拨发了科研经费，山东省卫生厅和一些中药生产厂家也给了很大支持，济南中药厂的资助为编译工作的开端提供了条件。

本《大全》的编译成功是全体编译审者集体劳动的结晶，是各有关单位主管领导支持的结果。在《大全》各分册即将陆续出

版之际，我诚挚地感谢全体编译审者的真诚合作，感谢许多专家、教授、各级领导和生产厂家的热情支持。

愿本《大全》的出版能在培养通晓英语的中医人才和使中医早日全面走向世界方面起到我所期望的作用。

主编　徐象才

于山东中医学院

1990 年 3 月

目　录

说明 …… 295

1　病因病机 …… 297

1.1　病因 …… 297

1.2　病机 …… 299

2　辨证 …… 301

2.1　辨阴证阳证 …… 301

2.2　辨肿痛脓痒及经络部位 …… 302

3　治疗法则 …… 308

3.1　内治法 …… 308

3.2　外治法 …… 311

4　一般外科疾病 …… 314

4.1　疖 …… 314

4.2　痈 …… 315

4.3　急性蜂窝织炎 …… 318

4.4　丹毒 …… 320

4.5　手部感染 …… 322

4.6　急性淋巴管炎 …… 325

4.7　急性淋巴结炎 …… 326

4.8　急性化脓性腮腺炎 …… 329

4.9　髂窝脓肿 …… 330

4.10　全身性化脓性感染 …… 332

4.11　颈淋巴结结核 …… 335

4.12　急性阑尾炎 …… 338

5　乳房疾病 …… 344

5.1 概论 …… 344
5.2 乳头皲裂 …… 347
5.3 急性乳腺炎 …… 349
5.4 乳房结核 …… 353
5.5 乳腺增生病 …… 355
5.6 导管内乳头状瘤 …… 358
5.7 乳房发育症 …… 359
6 周围血管疾病 …… 362
6.1 血栓闭塞性脉管炎 …… 362
6.2 闭塞性动脉硬化症 …… 368
6.3 肢端动脉痉挛病 …… 370
6.4 多发性大动脉炎 …… 372
6.5 静脉血栓形成和血栓性静脉炎 …… 374
7 男性前阴病 …… 378
7.1 龟头包皮炎 …… 378
7.2 阴茎硬结症 …… 380
7.3 鞘膜积液 …… 381
7.4 附睾睾丸炎 …… 384
7.5 附睾结核 …… 386
7.6 慢性前列腺炎 …… 388
7.7 前列腺增生症 …… 390
8 其他外科疾病 …… 395
8.1 烧伤 …… 395
8.2 冻伤 …… 400
8.3 甲状腺腺瘤 …… 402
8.4 下肢溃疡 …… 404
方剂索引（英汉对照） …… (237)
英汉实用中医药大全（书目） …… 407

说　明

《外科学》是《英汉实用中医药大全》的第11分册。

本分册在认真总结古代和近代有关中医外科经验和新成果的基础上，根据理论联系实际，以临床实用为主，以常见病为重点的原则编译而成。

全书共分八章，主要介绍一般外科、乳房、周围血管、男性前阴以及其它外科常见病症34种。对每种病症的病因病机，临床表现，辨证论治等逐一作了阐述。

在本分册所涉及的中药材中，有来自濒临灭绝的珍稀动物。由于这些动物已明令禁捕禁杀，故药材的来源也就因之而断绝。无论在医院里还是在制药厂里，它们均已被具有相同药效的其他药材替代。本分册仍将其涉及，只是为方便学习探讨。

本分册汉文稿经南京中医学院顾亚夫教授审阅。刘强、孔健、张赭、郭静、阎景波等帮助做了有关翻译工作。

编者

1 病因病机

1.1 病因

1. 外因

(1) 邪毒

邪毒（指风、寒、暑、湿、燥、火六淫之邪毒）侵袭人体组织后，均可发生外科疾病，在发病过程中，由于风、寒、暑、湿、燥五气过极，皆能化热化火，所以外科感染疾病中以“热毒”、“火毒”致病者最多见，故《医宗金鉴·外科心法要诀》说：“痈疽原是火毒生。”

(2) 外来伤害

水火烫伤，虫兽咬伤，金刃，爆炸，挤压等，均可使机体皮肤，肌肉，筋骨，内脏器官受损伤，以致气滞血瘀，郁久化热，继发细菌感染而化脓，或邪毒（细菌）经皮肤破损处侵入肌体，而发生破伤风和急性化脓性感染疾病。

2. 内因

(1) 内伤七情

内伤七情（喜、怒、忧、思、悲、恐、惊），精神受到长期或反复的过度刺激，可使脏腑、经络、气血功能失调，从而发生外科疾病。如郁怒伤肝，肝气郁结，郁久化火；肝郁伤脾（或忧思伤脾），脾失健运，致痰湿内生，气郁、火郁、痰湿阻于经络，气滞血瘀，结聚成块，从而发生颈淋巴结结核，甲状腺腺瘤，乳腺增生病，乳腺癌等。肝主疏泄，能调节乳汁的分泌功能，如产妇肝气郁结，疏泄失职，易致肝胃不和，乳络不畅，乳汁积滞，而发生急性乳腺炎。肝郁生热化火，结于胸胁，可形成肝脓肿，影响胆汁通降功能，则可发生胆囊炎，胆石症。总之，

凡因内伤七情而致的外科疾病，其发病部位多在颈之两侧、乳房、胸胁等肝胆经部位。

(2) 房室损伤

房室过度，使肾气亏损，正气虚弱，抗病能力降低，外邪乘机而入而致病。如肾主骨，肾虚则骨质营养障碍而致骨骼空虚。风、寒、湿、痰乘虚入侵，就会导致气血凝滞，则易致骨与关节结核，骨瘤等病；肾阴不足，则虚火上炎，灼津为痰，痰火凝结，而致颈淋巴结结核；肾阳虚，则不能温煦机体，四肢冰冷，易致血栓闭塞性脉管炎，肢端动脉痉挛病等。近代科学也已证明，频繁的性生活会导致前列腺素和锌减少，使肾素的分泌和肾素对人体某部的调节作用失调，免疫功能减退。故房室过度，能引起外科疾病的发生。

(3) 饮食不节

饮食不节，过食膏粱厚味，醇酒炙煿或辛辣刺激之品，可使脾胃功能失调，湿热火毒内生，如复感外邪，易发生化脓性疾病或糖尿病合并或肢体坏疽等。故《素问·生气通天论》说："膏粱之变，足生大丁"。暴饮暴食，饥饱失时或过食生冷不洁食物，可中伤脾胃，致脾胃升降失调，六腑传化不利，生湿生热，气血不和，从而容易发生阑尾炎，肠梗阻，胆囊炎，胆石症，胆道蛔虫病，以及胃或十二指肠溃疡病穿孔等。

邪毒虽然能使人生病，但感受邪毒者并非人皆生病，生病与否，关健在于是否具有足以导致疾病的内因。一般来说，正气强盛的人，邪毒难以侵人，此即"正气存内，邪不可干"。只有内伤七情，房室损伤，肾气亏损，饮食不节，而使人体正气不足，脏腑功能失调时，邪毒才能乘虚而入，引起疾病。此即谓："邪之所凑，其气必虚"。

3. 发病部位

外科疾病的发病原因与部位也有一定联系。发生于人体上部（头、面、颈、上肢）的，多为风温、风热、风火所引起，因风

性上行；发生于中部（胸、腹、腰、背）的，多为气郁、火郁所引起，因为气、火多发于中；发生于下部（臀、会阴、阴囊、下肢）的，多因湿热、寒湿所引起，因为湿性下趋。

以上是外科疾病发病原因的一般规律，临证时，必须结合局部和全身症候，发病部位，追询病史等，才能全面地探求其发病原因。

1.2 病机

1. 外科疾病与气血的关系

(1) 气血凝滞

人体的气血相辅而行，循环不息。如气血运行失常，气血凝滞，经络瘀闭，阻于皮肉、筋骨、脏腑等，就可引起外科疾病。因此，气血凝滞是发生外科疾病的主要病机之一。

(2) 气血凝滞的转化

气血凝滞之后，经及时恰当的治疗，去除致病因素，使气血运行正常，可消散而恢复正常。反之，则郁久化热，热盛肉腐，而液化成脓。当脓肿形成后，若人体正气不衰，抗病能力尚强，及时切开引流，或脓肿自行溃破，毒随脓泄，气血得以疏通，腐脱而新肉生，疮口可较快愈合。

(3) 气血的盛衰

外科疾病的发生、发展以及痊愈与人体的气血盛衰有着密切的关系。一般说来，气血旺盛者，化脓性疾病易于起发、破溃，溃后易于生肌敛口。而气血虚弱者，化脓性疾病难起发、破溃，溃后也难以生肌敛口。如邪毒炽盛，还容易发生邪毒内陷。

2. 外科疾病与脏腑的关系

外科疾病虽然大多数发于体表某一局部，但与脏腑有着密切的关系。脏腑功能的失调可以导致外科疾病的发生。如肝经湿热下注，可以引起急性附睾睾丸炎，此即所谓："有诸于内必形诸于外"。脏腑功能失调，不但可致体表的外科疾病发生，同样也能

引起脏腑本身的病变。如肠道运化失常，气血凝滞，可致急性阑尾炎。体表外科疾病的邪毒，有的也可影响或侵犯脏腑。如面部疖（疔）、痈、大面积烧伤等严重感染，常因火毒炽盛，毒邪走散，客于营血，内攻脏腑，而引起脓毒败血症。

3. 外科疾病与经络的关系

致病因素导致局部的经络阻塞，是外科疾病发病机理之一，故《医宗金鉴·外人心法要诀》说："痈疽原是火毒生，经络阻隔气血凝。"身体经络某部（损伤后）有了弱点，亦成为外科疾病发生的条件，如头皮外伤血肿后可导致斑秃的发生。所以，"最虚之处，便是容邪之地"。此外，患病部位经络与外科疾病的发生、发展、预后也有联系。如：痈（有头疽）生于颈后两侧足太阳膀胱经部位者（此为多血少气之经，为寒水所司），则难于起发，易于内陷；急性阑尾炎（肠痈）发于足阳明大肠经（此为多血多气之经），则易于化脓。另外，体表疾病的毒邪，由外传里，脏腑疾病的邪毒由里传表，都是主要通过经络进行传导的。因此，外科疾病的发生、发展、传变、预后等，都与经络有着密切的关系。

2 辨证

2.1 辨阴证阳证

阴阳是八纲辨证中的纲领．外科疾病的辨证，首先应辨清它的阴阳属性，这样才能更好地指导治疗和判断预后。兹将辨别阴证阳证的要点分述于下。

1. 阳证（急性化脓性感染）

(1) 发病缓急

发病较急。

(2) 病变部位

在表、位浅、多发于皮肉。

(3) 局部症状

初期疮形高肿，灼热疼痛，皮色火红，未成易消，既成易溃，溃后脓水粘稠，肉芽鲜红，疮面容易收口。

(4) 全身症状

初、中期可伴有发热，恶寒，口渴，纳呆，大便秘结，小便黄赤，溃后全身症状可渐次消失。

(5) 舌苔与脉象

舌苔薄白，黄燥，黄腻，焦黑，舌质红。脉象弦数，滑数，洪数。

(6) 病程及预后

病程较短，预后良好。

2. 阴证（结核性冷脓肿、慢性炎症、慢性骨髓炎类病症）

(1) 发病缓急

发病缓慢。

(2) 病变部位

在里、位深，多发于肌肉深层或筋骨内。

(3) 局部症状

初期疮形漫肿平坦，肿块较硬或柔软，不红不热，不痛或痛、酸痛，未成难消，既成难溃，溃后脓水清稀或灰污不泽，或伴有棉絮样物质，肉芽暗红或淡白，疮口久不愈合。

(4) 全身症状

初期一般明显全身症状。脓成或溃后可有潮热，盗汗，自汗，身体虚弱，面色苍白，全身乏力等虚象。

(5) 舌苔与脉象

舌苔薄白、白腻，舌质淡红，脉象沉、细、迟或细数。

以上用类比的方法将常见的一些症状，概括地分别归纳为阴证阳证两大类，而且多以外科感染疾病为代表，尚不能包括整个外科疾病的阴阳辨证，以及阴中有阳、阳中有阴、阴阳互相转化等。因此，临证时要依据局部变化情况，结合全身症状灵活辨证，才能正确判断阴阳属性。

2.2 辨肿痛脓痒及经络部位

肿、痛、脓、痒是外科疾病常见的局部4大症状，根据这些证状的形态、程度的不同，可以分辨疾病的性质和不同症状的原因。4大症状是中医外科临床辨证的基础，是立法、处法、用药的重要理论根据。再辨经络部位和十二经脉气血之多少，便可更好地提高疗效。

1. 辨肿

肿是因经络阻塞，气血凝滞而成。由于患者体质强弱与致病原因的不同，发生的症状亦有差异。

(1) 火肿

红肿热痛，皮薄光泽。如急性化脓性感染。

(2) 寒肿

肿而木硬，皮色不泽。如骨与关节结核等。

(3) 风肿

肿势宣浮或游走不定。如颜面丹毒、荨麻疹等。

(4) 湿肿

肿而皮肤光亮，按之凹陷，或有水泡，破后流水。如下肢深静脉血栓形成，下肢急性湿疹等。

(5) 痰肿

肿块软或硬如结核。如颈淋巴结结核，皮脂腺囊肿等。

(6) 瘀血肿

肿后胀急，色暗青紫，持续胀痛。如外伤血肿。

(7) 郁结肿

肿势坚硬如石，高低不平。如乳腺癌。

(8) 虚肿

肿热平坦，散漫不聚。如寒性脓肿。

(9) 实肿

红肿高突，灼热疼痛。如疖、痈等。

2. 辨痛

痛是因经络阻塞，气血壅滞，阻塞不通所致。由于引起疼痛的病因，发病部位深浅和邪正盛衰的不同，疼痛的情况的也有所不同。

(1) 以其痛因来辨

①寒痛：皮色不变或苍白，遇热痛减。如血栓闭塞性脉管炎，雷诺氏病等。

②热痛：皮色燉红，灼热疼痛，遇凉痛减。如丹毒。

③湿痛：患部肿胀，按之凹陷，重坠胀痛。如下肢深静脉血栓形成。

④气痛：窜痛无常，时而见形，时而消失。如一般单纯性肠梗阻或较轻度的肠粘连。

⑤肝郁痛：胸闷胁痛，乳房胀痛。如乳腺增生病。

⑥瘀血痛：皮色青暗，固定性、持续性胀痛或剧痛。如外伤

后皮下瘀血斑块以及血栓闭塞性脉管炎。

⑦实痛：剧痛拒按，按之痛甚。如急性阑尾炎。

⑧虚痛：痛轻喜按，按之痛减。如虚痛性肠粘连。

(2) 以其疼痛性质来辨

①刺痛：痛如针刺，病变多在皮肤。如带状疱疹等。

②灼痛：痛如鸡啄，并伴节律性痛，病变在肌肉。如急性化脓性感染脓成期。

③裂痛：痛如撕裂，病变多在皮肉。如肛裂。

④钝痛：疼痛滞钝，病变多在骨与关节。如骨与关节结核。

⑤绞痛：痛如绳绞，病变多在脏腑。如胆总管结石、泌尿系结石伴有梗阻时。

⑥持续性痛：痛无休止，持续不减。多急性化脓性感染未溃之前。

⑦阵发性痛：忽痛忽止，发作无常。多见于胆道蛔虫病。

⑧静息痛：夜间静卧时肢体疼痛不缓解。如血栓闭塞性脉管炎。

3. 辨脓

脓是由皮肤、肌肉、筋骨、脏腑之内，热盛肉腐蒸酿而成，也是气血所化生。临证时辨别脓的有无及脓肿部位的深浅，溃后脓液的性质，色泽，气味等，对临床治疗有重要作用。

(1) 辨脓的有无

有脓：身热不退，局部灼热剧痛，肿块变软而指起即复，脉洪数。

无脓：身无发热，局部微热或不热，轻痛，肿硬而指起不复，脉不数。

(2) 辨脓的部位深浅

浅部脓肿：皮肤灼热焮红，高肿突起而有光亮，轻按便痛，指起即复。

深部脓肿：皮色不变或微红，肿块散漫微热，重按方痛，指

起即复不明显。

(3) 辨脓的性质，色泽，气味

脓液黄白质稠，色泽明净，略带腥味者，为气血充实，是佳象；脓液黄浊质稠，色泽不净，为气火有余，属顺证；若先出黄稠脓液，次出黄稠滋水，为将敛佳象；脓液淡薄清稀，为气血虚弱；若薄脓转为厚脓，为体虚渐复，有收敛之象；若厚脓转为薄脓，为体质渐衰，疮口一时难敛；若脓成日久不泄，溃后脓液如水直流，其色不晦，其气不臭，不为败象；若脓稀似粉浆或污水，且色晦腥臭者，为正气不存，气血将竭，属败象。

4. 辨痒

痒是由于风、湿、热、虫之邪客于肌肤，引起肌肤间气血不和，或由于血虚风燥，阻于肌肤，肤失濡养而成。痒是皮肤病患者的一个重要自觉症状，在外科疾病中比较少见，但也有发生。由于发生痒的原因不一，病变过程不同，其表现也各异。

(1) 风痒

风性善行而数变，走窜无定，故常遍体作痒。因风胜则燥，故痒而无渗液，或抓破血溢，随破随收。如神经性皮炎，荨麻疹等。

(2) 湿痒

脂水淋漓，浸淫作痒。如湿郁生热，则糜烂流水，疹红作痒。如急性湿疹。

(3) 热痒

皮肤丘疹色红，灼热作痒，或伴有糜烂，脓液。如脓疱疮。

(4) 虫痒

浸淫蔓延，痒如虫行。如手足癣，疥疮等。

(5) 血虚痒

皮肤变厚、干燥、脱屑、作痒。如慢性湿疹。神经性皮炎等。

(6) 溃疡作痒

化脓性感染疾病溃后局部热痒者，多由护理不当，脓液浸淫皮肤所致。或因敷用含有汞剂的膏药所引起的皮肤过敏而致。疮口收敛时作痒，是毒邪渐化，气血渐充，肋养新肉，将要收口时的佳象。

5. 辨经络部位和十二经脉气血多少

依据疾病所在部位的经络，临证治疗时按经络选加相应的引经药，使药力直达患处，可以更好地提高疗效。知十二经气血之多少，对于指导治疗，判断预后具有重要作用。

(1) 人体各部所属经络及经络用药

①头部：正中属督脉经，两旁属足太阳膀胱经。

②面部和乳部：属足阳明胃经（乳房属胃经，乳房外属足少阳胆经，乳头属足厥阴肝经）。

③耳部前后：属足少阳胆经和手少阳三焦经。

④手足心部：手心属手厥阴心包经，足心属足少阴肾经。

⑤背部：总属阳经（中行为督脉之所主，两旁属足太阳膀胱经）。

⑥臀部：外侧属手三阳经，内侧属手三阴经。

⑦腿部：外侧属足三阳经，内侧属足三阴经。

⑧腹部：总属阴经（中行为任脉之所主）。

此外，生于目部的疾病属肝经；生于鼻部的疾病属肺经；生于耳部的疾病属肾经；生于口唇的疾病属脾胃经；生于舌部的疾病属心经。

根据传统经验，结合临床实践，在治疗外科疾病的内消治法中，常用的引经药为：足太阳经用羌活；足阳明经用黄连、蒲公英、白芷、生石膏；足少阳经，足厥阴经用柴胡、青皮；手少阴经用黄连、栀子；手太阴经用桑白皮、白芷；足少阴经用独活、知母、细辛；足太阴经用苍术、升麻。

(2) 十二经脉气血多少

手阳明大肠经、足阳明胃经为多气多血之经；手太阳小肠

经、足太阳膀胱经、手厥阴心包经、足厥阴肝经为多血少气之经；手少阳三焦经、足少阳胆经、手少阴心经、足少阴肾经、手太阴肺经、足太阴脾经为多气少血之经。

由于十二经脉气血的多少不同，外科疾病的治法也各有所别。凡发于多血少气之经者，凝滞必甚，外发较缓，故治疗时要注意破血补托。凡发于多气少血之经者，结必甚，收敛较难，故治疗时要注重行气、滋养。凡发于多气多血之经者，多易溃易敛，实证居多，故治疗时应以行气活血为主。

3 治疗原则

外科疾病的治疗，分为内治法和外治法两类。临证时要从整体观念出发，重视局部变化，内治法与外治法要配合施用。

3.1 内治法

根据外科感染性疾病的3个不同发病阶段：初期、脓成、溃后。内治法相应分为消、托、补3个方法。

1. 消法：针对不同的病因和症状，运用不同的治法和方药，常用下列具体治法，使初期炎症吸收消散。

(1) 消热法

用清热药物，使内盛之热毒、火毒得以清解。

①清热解毒法

适应证：适用于疖、痈、手部感染等外科感染性疾病。证见局部红肿热痛，全身发热，口干，苔黄，脉数等。

方药：五味消毒饮 (1)。

②清热祛瘀法

适应证：适用于急性化脓性炎症，肿硬作痛，或脓成未溃，伴有轻度发热。

方药：仙方活命饮 (2)。

③清热利湿法

适应证：适用于湿热凝结下肢所致的红肿热痛，舌苔黄腻，脉滑数等。

方药：五神汤 (3)。

④通里清热法

适应证：急性化脓性感染，热结里实证。证见红肿热痛，高

热烦躁，口干饮冷，大便秘结，小便赤涩，舌苔黄腻或黄糙，脉沉数有力。

方药：内疏黄连汤（4）。

⑤凉血清热法

适应证：适用于热毒内陷，毒入血分的实证。证见全身高热寒战，烦躁不安，神昏谵语，口渴不欲饮，吐衄发斑，舌质红降，脉数等。局部常见疮面干枯无脓，肿势散漫。

方药：犀角地黄汤（5）。

（2）和营法

用调和营血的药物，疏通经络，促进血行，消散瘀血，从而达到肿消痛止的目的。此法在外科疾病的治疗中有较广泛的应用范围。

适应证：适用于因经络阻隔，气血凝滞所引起的外科病证。其证多肿块明显，瘀血肿痛，肢端紫绀，结节红斑，舌质紫暗，脉沉涩等。

方药：桃红四物汤（6）。

（3）疏肝解郁法

用疏肝解郁的药，使气机条达，气血调和，从而达到肿消痛止的目的。

适应症：症见肿块质韧或较硬，光滑移动，不红不热，不痛或胀痛，或随喜怒而消长。

方药：逍遥散（7）。

（4）温通法

用温经通络、散寒化痰的药物，使寒痰凝滞之邪得以温散，是治疗外科寒证的主要法则。

适应证：适用于因体虚招致风、寒、湿、痰袭于脉络、筋骨之间，致使阳气失和，气血凝滞而致的阴寒虚证。证见患处漫肿，不红不热，不痛或微痛，或肢冷苍白，形体畏寒，口不渴，小便清利，舌淡苔白，脉沉、细、迟等。

方药：阳和汤（8）。

2. 托法：用透托和补托的药物，使外科疾病的毒邪移深就浅，早日液化成脓并排出，使扩散的证候趋于局限，以免毒邪内陷。托法分透托法和补托法两类。

（1）透托法

适应证：脓成未溃或溃而脓出不畅，毒气盛而正气不衰等化脓性感染疾病。

方药：透脓散（9）。

（2）补托法

适应证：毒盛正虚，不能托毒外出，以致疮形平坦，根盘散漫，难溃难腐，或溃后脓水清稀，肿硬不消的化脓性感染疾病。

方药：托里消毒散（10）。

3. 补法：用补虚扶正的药物，使体内气血充足，消除虚象，恢复正气，助养新肉生长，使疮口早日愈合。补法一般分补气养血法、补阴法、补阳法。

（1）补气养血法

适应证：化脓性感染疾病溃后或慢性溃疡，脓水清稀，肉芽淡白，疮口难敛，脉虚神疲，或有气血两虚症状的其他外科疾病。

方药：八珍汤（11）。

（2）补阴法

适应证：已溃或未溃的外科感染疾病。证见口干咽燥，耳鸣眩晕，手足心热，午后低热，形体消瘦，舌红少苔，脉细数等。

方药：六味地黄汤（12）。

（3）补阳法

适应证：疮肿软漫，不易酿脓腐溃，溃后疮面肉芽灰暗，新肉难生，或肢冷自汗，少气懒言，大便溏，小便频，舌淡，脉沉细等阳虚之证。

方药：金匮肾气丸（13）。

补法并非在一切化脓性感染疾病后期均用。一般阳证溃后，不虚则勿用补法治疗；确有虚象者，才用补法。阴证溃后，或患病日久，且证见气血两虚、阴虚、阳虚，必需用补益之法，否则不能取效。

3.2 外治法

外治法是运用药物或手术直接作用于局部病变的一种方法，在外科疾病治疗中占有重要地位。外治法可以单独应用，但为提高疗效，多与内治法配合使用。现将外治法常用药物的分类提示如下，方药和制用法参见方剂索引。

1. 膏药

(1) 拔毒膏 (14)。

功用：清热解毒，消肿止痛，活血生肌。适用于急性化脓性感染疾病初期、成脓、溃后 3 期。对未成脓者可吸收消散，已成脓者可使脓栓脱落，拔毒提脓，溃后可祛腐生肌。

(2) 阳和解凝膏 (15)。

功用：温经和阳，驱风散寒，行气活血，化痰通络。用于外科慢性炎块初期。

(3) 千捶膏 (16)。

功用：消肿止痛，提脓祛腐。用于化脓性感染疾病初期贴之能消，成脓期贴之能溃，溃后期贴之能提脓祛腐。

2. 软膏

(1) 金黄膏 (17)。

功用：清热解毒，除湿化痰，散瘀消肿，用于急性化脓性感染疾病初期，流行性腮腺炎等。

(2) 大青膏 (18)。

功用：清热解毒，燥湿祛瘀，消肿止痛。适应证同上。

(3) 冲和膏 (19)。

功用：疏风活血，散瘀消肿。适用于亚急性炎块或慢性炎

块。

(4) 回阳玉龙膏 (20)。

功用：温经活血，散寒化痰。适用于外科慢性炎块。

(5) 大黄软膏 (21)。

功用：解毒燥湿，祛腐排脓。适用于急性化脓性感染疾病溃后，脓液较多者。

(6) 生肌玉红膏 (22)。

功用：活血祛腐，解毒止痛，润肤生肌。适用于溃疡脓腐未脱，或脓液将尽新生肉芽组织生长迟缓者。

3. 掺药

(1) 提脓祛腐药

具有提脓祛腐的作用，能使感染疮口的坏死组织脱落，脓毒排出，有利于新生肉芽组织生长，疮口顺利愈合。

①九一丹 (23)。

功用：提脓祛腐。适用于急性化脓性感染疾病溃后，坏死组织未脱，脓液较多者。

②五五丹 (24)。

功用：提脓祛腐，其祛腐作用较九一丹强。

③祛腐生肌散 (25)。

功用：提脓祛腐，活血生肌。适用疮口坏死组织较少，脓液不多，新生肉芽组织未生之际。

(2) 生肌收口药

具有促进肉芽组织生长和上皮生长爬行，加速疮口愈合作用。

①生肌散 (26)。

功用：生肌收口。适用于疮口坏死组织脱落，脓水将尽，肉芽组织生长，及慢性溃疡等。

②生肌珍珠散 (27)。

功用：生肌收口，清热利湿。适用于慢性溃疡渗液作痒者。

4. 熏洗药

用中药煎汤，趁热熏洗及淋洗患部的治法。

(1) 解毒洗药 (28)。

功用：清热解毒、活血消肿、祛腐排脓。适用于急性化脓性感染疾病的初期和溃后，以及外伤感染，化脓性皮肤病等。

(2) 慢性溃疡洗药 (29)。

功用：祛腐生肌敛口。适用于慢性溃疡。

4 一般外科疾病

4.1 疖

疖是由化脓性细菌侵入单个毛囊及其所属皮脂腺或汗腺而引起的急性化脓感染疾病。多发于富于毛囊和皮脂腺的面部、背部和颈部。常见于夏秋季节。发于暑天者，又称"暑疖。"

因头面为诸阳之首，具有丰富的血管网，故发生在面部和鼻唇部的疖，若初起用力挤压或碰伤则容易转成"疔疮"重证，或引起"走黄"（引起颅内感染或脓毒败血症等）。

病因病机

本病多因感受暑湿热毒，内因湿火内郁，两邪相搏，蕴蒸肌肤，致使局部经络阻塞，气血凝滞，郁久化热而成。

临床表现

初起可分有头、无头两种。毛囊疖初起有黄白色脓头，周围红肿热痛，随后剧痛，中央变软，脓头破溃，流出脓液，肿痛减轻，疮口逐渐愈合。汗腺疖初起结块无头，红肿疼痛，继则变软化脓，切开脓出，疮口较快愈合。疖一般无全身症状，严重者才有发热，恶寒，烦渴、便秘，溲赤，苔黄，脉数等全身症状。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 暑疖

主证：局部红肿热痛，伴有发热，胸闷，口渴不欲饮，纳呆，舌苔白腻，脉数等。

治法：清暑化湿，清热解毒。

方药：清暑汤（30）加味。

藿香 10 克，佩兰 10 克，赤芍 10 克，车前子 10 克，连翘

15克，蒲公英30克，金银花30克，六一散12克。水煎两次，饭后温服，早晚各1次，每日1剂。

(2) 面部疖

主证：局部症状较重，多伴有发热恶寒，口渴欲饮，尿赤，便秘，舌质红，苔黄燥，脉滑数。

治法：以清热解毒为主。

方药：五味消毒饮（1）合黄连解毒汤（30）加减。

金银花30克，蒲公英30克，紫花地丁15克，野菊花15克，天葵子10克，黄连10克，黄芩10克，山栀子10克，牡丹皮10克，赤芍10克。水煎两次，饭后温服，早晚各1次，每日1剂。

(3) 其他部位的疖，可服五味消毒饮（1）。无全身症状者，可服抗菌消炎片（32）或牛黄解毒片（33）。

2. 外治法

(1) 初起红肿硬痛时，可外敷金黄膏（17）或大青膏（18）或拔毒膏（14）。

(2) 无头疖形成脓肿时，应及时切开排脓。面部疖，尤其发生在鼻唇部三角区者，禁忌早期切开，以免引起"走黄"（发生颅内感染或脓毒败血症）。疖肿禁忌挤压排脓，面部者更应注意。溃后坏死组织不易脱落，流脓不畅者，可于疮口撒少许九一丹（23），以提脓祛腐，然后外盖大黄油纱布（21）。疮口脓少，肉芽组织生长时，大黄油纱布换药。

4.2 痈

痈是化脓性细菌侵入多个相邻的毛囊和皮脂腺而引起的急性化脓性感染。多见于中年及老年人，糖尿病者更易患之。好发部位为颈后和背部。

痈即中医学所称的"有头疽"。由于发生的部位不同而名称各异。发于颈后正中督脉经，部位与口腔相对者，称"脑疽"（俗称

对口疽)；发于背部督脉经者，统称“发背疽”；发于肩胛部及背部、腰部两侧者，称“搭手疽”。

病因病机

多因脏腑蕴毒（如过食膏粱厚味，湿热火毒内生；情志内伤，气郁化火；或房欲劳伤，肾水亏损，阴虚火旺)，复感风温、湿热邪毒，经络阻滞，营卫不和，气血凝滞而发。

临床表现

初期为一红肿热痛的肿块，上有粟粒样脓头，以后肿块渐大，疼痛加剧，脓头增多，形如蜂窝状，最后脓头之间皮肤坏死，形成较大的溃疡。患者常伴有发热，恶寒，口渴等全身症状。病情严重者可发生疽毒内陷（脓毒败血症)；身体虚弱或患糖尿病者，则病情严重。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 实证

①初期

主证：红肿热痛，发热恶寒，舌苔白或黄，脉弦滑而数。

治法：清热散风，和营托毒。

方药：仙方活命饮 (2) 加减。

金银花 30 克，天花粉 10 克，当归 10 克，赤芍 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，白芷 6 克，乳香 10 克，没药 10 克，防风 6 克，山甲珠 6 克，皂角刺 6 克，陈皮 10 克，生甘草 6 克，蒲公英 30 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

②溃脓期

主证：脓头破溃，形似蜂窝，肿痛明显，口干，发热，舌苔黄，脉滑数或洪数。

治法：清热解毒，托里排脓。

方药：清热排脓汤 (34)。

金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，生黄芪 30 克，板兰根 30 克，

连翘 15 克，败酱草 15 克，天花粉 15 克，桔梗 10 克，白芷 10 克，川芎 10 克，山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

③收口期

肿消痛止，新生肉芽红活，一般不需内服药物可逐渐收口而愈。如见虚象者，可参照本节虚证治疗。

(2) 虚证

多见于年老体弱或有糖尿病者。

①阴虚毒盛证

主证：疮形平坦，疮色紫暗，溃脓迟缓，溃后脓稀或带血性脓水，伴发热，口干，舌质红，脉细数。

治法：养阴生津，清热托毒。

方药：竹叶黄芪汤 (35)。

人参 10 克，清半夏 10 克，麦冬 10 克，白芍 10 克，川芎 10 克，当归 10 克，黄芩 10 克，生黄芪 30 克，生地 30 克，生石膏 15 克，生甘草 6 克，淡竹叶 6 克，灯芯 0.6 克，生姜 3 片。原方加金银花 30 克，皂角刺 6 克，可提高疗效。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日 1 剂。

②体虚毒滞证

主证：疮形散漫，化脓迟缓，溃后脓腐难脱，脓水清稀，伴有发热，身疲，舌苔白腻，舌质淡红，脉数无力等。

治法：补益气血，托里消毒。

方药：托里消毒散 (10)。

党参 15 克，生黄芪 30 克，金银花 30 克，川芎 10 克，当归 15 克，白芍 10 克，白术 10 克，桔梗 10 克，白芷 10 克，茯苓 10 克，甘草 6 克，皂角刺 6 克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日 1 剂。

③气血两虚证

主证：溃后脓水清稀，新生肉芽生长迟缓，面色苍白，神疲

乏力，舌质淡，脉细而小。

治法：补益气血。

方药：八珍汤（11）。

人参 6 克，茯苓 12 克，白术 12 克，甘草 6 克，当归 15 克，白芍 15 克，川芎 10 克，熟地 15 克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 病情严重或疽毒内陷（全身性化脓性感染）以及兼有糖尿病者，应中西医结合治疗。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期

局部外敷金黄膏（17）或大青膏（18）。

(2) 溃脓期

疮口撒少许九一丹（23），盖贴大黄软膏（21）换药。若坏死组织广泛，脓液蓄积难出，可手术将坏死组织彻底切除。

(3) 收口期

当坏死组织脱落，脓液将尽，新生肉芽组织生长时，疮口撒生肌散（26），盖贴生肌玉红膏油纱布（22）换药。

4.3 急性蜂窝织炎

急性蜂窝织炎是由化脓性细菌侵入皮下，筋膜下，肌间隙或深部蜂窝组织而引起的一种急性化脓性炎症。属于中医学的“痈”、“发”等范畴。

病因病机

多因皮肤破损，邪毒内侵，或脾胃湿热，毒火内蕴，致经络阻遏，营卫不和，气血凝滞而成。若毒热炽盛，则热腐成脓。

临床表现

起病较急，局部红肿热痛，红色较暗，中心部颜色较深，边界不清，触之较硬韧，压痛。如病变部位组织松弛，则肿胀明显而疼痛较轻；病变部位组织致密，则肿胀不明显但疼痛较剧烈。

严重者可发生广泛的皮下组织坏死并形成脓肿。位于颌下口底部可致呼吸困难，易发淋巴结炎并可伴有发热、恶寒、头痛等全身症状。

鉴别诊断

1. 丹毒：患部鲜红成片，边缘清楚而稍高起。中心部色泽较淡，自觉灼痛。发于面部重，但很少复发；发于下肢轻，常有复发。全身症状明显。

2. 痈：初起局部有时表现为蜂窝组织炎样，但在溃后可出现多个脓头。

3. 血管神经性水肿：好发于口唇及肛门周围，患处皮肤大片肿胀，边缘不明显，颜色正常或微红，有痒感。起病及消退均快，无全身症状。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 初期

主证：局部红肿热痛，发热，恶寒，舌苔黄，脉弦滑数。

治法：清热解毒、化瘀消肿。

方药：五味消毒饮（1）加味。

金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，紫花地丁 15 克，野菊花 15 克，赤芍 12 克，连翘 15 克，生地 20 克，板蓝根 15 克，天葵子 10 克，牡丹皮 10 克，生甘草 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服。

(2) 酿脓期

主证：肿痛加剧，触痛明显，按之指起即复，全身症状明显，舌苔黄，脉洪数。

治法：清热解毒、排脓消肿。

方药：解毒排脓汤（36）。

金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，紫花地丁 15 克，连翘 15 克，板蓝根 15 克，天花粉 15 克，山甲珠 15 克，皂角刺 10 克，赤芍 10 克，黄芩 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：若伴有发热、口干，苔黄，脉洪数，再加黄连 10 克，山栀子 10 克。

(3) 溃后期

主证：肿硬不消，排脓不畅，脓水清稀，舌苔薄黄，脉数无力。

治法：扶正托毒。

方药：托里消毒散 (10)。

党参 15 克，生黄芪 30 克，金银花 30 克，川芎 10 克，当归 15 克，白芍 10 克，白术 10 克，桔梗 10 克，白芷 10 克，茯苓 10 克，甘草 6 克，皂角刺 6 克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日 1 剂。

2 外治法

(1) 初期

外敷大青膏 (18) 或金黄膏 (17)，也可外敷双柏散 (42)：生大黄 60 克，侧柏叶 60 克，黄柏 30 克，泽兰 30 克，薄荷 30 克。共研细末，用水、蜜调和成膏，外敷患处。

(2) 酿脓期

脓肿形成时，应及时切开引流。

(3) 溃后期

脓多坏死组织难脱者，可用解毒洗药 (28) 煎汤熏洗疮口后，撒少许九一丹 (23)，盖贴大黄油纱布 (21) 换药。

4.4 丹毒

丹毒是由溶血性链球菌由皮肤粘膜破口处侵入而引起的传染性急炎症，因其发病部位不同，而名称各异。如：发于头面者称“抱头火丹”；发于腰胯者称“内发丹毒”；发于下肢者称“腿游风”或“流火”。

病因病机

内因血分有热，外因皮肤或粘膜破损，火毒乘隙而入，内外

合邪，两热相搏，邪毒壅聚，蒸腾于外而形成。发于头面者多兼有风热、风火；发于胁下腰胯者多兼有肝火；发于下肢者多兼有湿热。

临床表现

发病突然，先有寒战、发热、头痛等全身症状，随即患部皮肤燉红成片，色如涂丹，灼热疼痛。边缘清晰而不规则，稍高出皮面，压之退色，放手后即复原状。向周围蔓延迅速。此称为红斑性丹毒。若红斑表面出现水疱，内有浆液或脓液，则称为脓疱性丹毒。若炎症侵及皮下组织，则称为蜂窝组织炎性丹毒。热毒炽盛，可出现毒邪内攻，而见高热烦躁，神昏谵语，恶心呕吐等。发生于下肢的丹毒，如反复发作，可形成象皮腿（大脚风）。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 头面部丹毒（多兼风热化火的症状）

治法：清热解毒，散风消肿。

方药：普济消毒饮（37）加减。

黄芩 10 克，陈皮 10 克，牛蒡子 10 克，桔梗 10 克，黄连 10 克，生甘草 6 克，僵蚕 10 克，升麻 10 克，柴胡 10 克，连翘 15 克，板蓝根 30 克，金银花 30 克，生地 20 克，赤芍 12 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(2) 胁肋腰胯部丹毒（多兼肝火之象）

治法：清肝泻火解毒。

方药：柴胡清肝汤（38）合化斑汤（39）加减。

柴胡 10 克，龙胆草 10 克，黄芩 10 克，生栀子 10 克，知母 12 克，生甘草 10 克，连翘 15 克，赤芍 15 克，玄参 15 克，生石膏 15 克，金银花 30 克，生地 30 克，大青叶 20 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 下肢丹毒（多为湿热化火）

治法：清热利湿，解毒化瘀。

方药：龙胆泻肝汤（40）合五神汤（3）加减。

龙胆草 10 克，黄连 10 克，黄芩 10 克，黄柏 10 克，车前草 12 克，当归 12 克，生地 30 克，连翘 15 克，木通 6 克，金银花 30 克，土茯苓 30 克，赤芍 15 克，紫花地丁 20 克，牛膝 12 克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日 1 剂。

(4) 丹毒毒邪内攻，邪入营血，可仿温病法治疗。

(5) 下肢复发性丹毒

可应用白花丹参（或丹参）注射液（41）10 毫升加 5%葡萄糖溶液 500 毫升作静脉滴注。每日 1 次，连用 15 次为 1 疗程。用此药这样治疗后，患者体温下降，红色斑片，灼热，疼痛逐渐减轻，白细胞增高至恢复正常。下肢复发性丹毒所引起的下肢象皮肿，经用此药治疗后肢体肥厚粗肿逐渐松软，有的可基本恢复正常。这说明此药具有良好的抗菌消炎，活血消肿，软化组织增生的作用。但此药在应用中有时可引起过敏反应，故应用时要注意严密观察。

2. 外治法

(1) 急性丹毒：用大青膏（18）或金黄膏（17）或双柏散（42）外敷，每日换药 1 次。

(2) 伴有足癣时，应同时治疗足癣。

4.5 手部感染

手部感染是手部皮下、甲下、腱鞘及掌间隙发生急性化脓性感染的统称。多因手部轻微外伤，化脓性细菌侵入而引起发病。属于中医学手部“疔疮”范畴。如：生于甲周者，称为“沿爪疔”，生于指甲旁者，称“蛇眼疔”；生于指头顶端者，称“蛇头疔”；生于指甲后者，称“蛇背疔”；生于指腹者，称“蛇肚疔”；生于指骨节间者，称“蛀节疔”；生于五指手丫处者，称“手丫疔”；生于手掌中心者，称“托盘疔”等。

病因病机

内因脏腑火毒，外因手部破伤染毒，两邪相搏，阻于皮肉之间，留于经脉之中，以致气血凝滞，火毒郁结而发病。

临床表现

1.甲沟炎（沿爪疔）：初起在指甲的一侧或甲根部红肿热痛。也可蔓延至对侧面，形成指甲周围炎。脓液侵入甲下时，则形成甲下脓肿。

2.脓性指头炎（蛇头疔）：初起指端肿胀热痛，以后肿势扩大，手指呈半弯曲状态，此即为蛇头状肿胀。跳痛和压痛剧烈，并伴有发热，头痛，口干等全身症状。若不及时恰当地治疗，可引起指骨骨髓炎。

3.化脓性腱鞘炎（蛇肚疔）：整个患指呈圆柱状，红肿热痛，轻度弯曲，被动伸指则引起剧痛，沿受累腱鞘有显著压痛，并伴有全身症状。

4.掌中间隙感染（托盘疔）：手掌肿胀，掌凹消失，手背水肿严重，疼痛剧烈，压痛明显，第3、4、5指呈半屈位，伸指时作痛，全身症状明显。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

（1）初期

主证：局部焮热肿痛，压痛明显，重者伴恶寒发热，头痛，纳呆，苔薄黄，脉弦滑数。

治法：清热解毒，活血消肿。

方药：五味消毒饮（1）加味。

金银花30克，蒲公英30克，紫花地丁30克，野菊花15克，连翘15克，赤芍15克，天葵子10克，黄连10克，蚤休10克，生甘草10克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：恶寒发热者，加蟾酥丸（44）3粒吞服。

高热、口渴者，加生石膏30克，知母15克，石斛2克。

大便秘结者，加生大黄（后入）10克。

(2) 中期

主证：肿势扩大，剧烈跳痛。因手部皮肤坚厚，波动感不明显。伴恶寒发热，口渴，苔黄，脉洪数。

治法：清热解毒，透托排脓。

方药：五味消毒饮（1）加味。

金银花30克，蒲公英30克，紫花地丁30克，野菊花15克，连翘15克，赤芍15克，天葵子10克，黄连10克，蚤休10克，生甘草10克，山甲珠10克，皂角刺10克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日1剂。

(3) 后期

主证：一般脓出黄稠，逐渐肿消痛止，全身症状渐次消失，疮口短期愈合。若溃破迟缓，溃后脓水臭秽经久不尽，余肿不消，多为损骨的征象。

治法：清热解毒，托毒生肌。

方药：五味消毒饮（1）合四妙汤（43）。

金银花30克，蒲公英30克，野菊花12克，紫花地丁15克，天葵子10克，生黄芪15克，当归10克，生甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日1剂。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期：指端感染的可用雄黄10克，白矾10克，蟾酥1克，蜈蚣1条。共研细末。每次取3克，装入1个猪苦胆内（或生鸡蛋1个，打破一端装上药），搅均套指上，待药糊接近凝结时再换。其他部位的手部感染，可外敷大青膏（18）或金黄膏（17）或千捶膏（16）。

(2) 中期：已化脓者，应及早切开排脓，不能等待波动的出现，以防血运障碍而发生骨髓炎。切开后可用九一丹（23）和大黄油纱布（21）换药。疮口脓多，红肿明显者，可先用解毒洗药（28）浸洗，然后再常规换药。疮口腐肉高突难愈合者，修剪腐

肉后，撒布平剿丹（乌梅肉煅存性 4.5 克，硼砂 4.5 克，轻粉 1.5 克，冰片 0.9 克，共研细末而成），盖贴大黄油纱布（21）换药。

(3) 后期：脓少肉芽新鲜时，用生肌散（26）少许撒布疮面，盖贴大黄油纱布（21）换药。

(4) 合并症：并指骨坏死者，待死骨松动后，用血管钳夹出死骨，疮口可较快愈合。

4.6 急性淋巴管炎

急性淋巴管炎是化脓性细菌从皮肤伤口侵入后，沿淋巴管扩散而引起的急性炎症。中医学称为“红丝疔”。

病因病机

手足部生疔、足癣糜烂或皮肤破损，复感火热毒邪，以致毒流经脉，向上走窜而发病。

临床表现

先在手足部有感染伤口，然后在前臂或小腿内侧皮肤上出现一条纵行的红线，从伤口向肢体近心端蔓延，在上肢可停于肘部或腋部，在下肢可停于腘窝或腹股沟部，同时引起该部位之淋巴结肿大、压痛。病变浅的红线明显，灼热、压痛；病变深的无明显红线，但患肢肿胀，有硬索状物压痛。病轻者，全身症状不明显；病重者，有恶寒，发热，头痛，乏力，苔黄，脉数等症。严重时可发生毒入血分，内攻脏腑，引起严重的全身中毒症状（疔疮走黄）。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

主证：手足部有感染伤口，然后四肢内侧皮肤红线显现，逐渐向上蔓延，微肿灼热压痛，伴恶寒发热，口渴欲饮，尿黄，便干，舌苔薄黄，舌质红，脉数等。

治法：清热解毒，凉血消肿。

方药：金银花饮（45）

金银花 30 克，紫花地丁 30 克，生地 30 克，大青叶 15 克，玄参 15 克，粉丹皮 10 克，生栀子 10 克，黄芩 10 克，竹叶 6 克。水煎两次，早晚分服。

加减：发于上肢者，加桑枝 10 克，桔梗 10 克。

发于下肢者，加川牛膝 10 克，黄柏 10 克。

肢体肿胀者，加木通 6 克，防已 10 克，泽兰 15 克。

便秘者，加生大黄（后入）10 克。

原发疮口排脓不畅者，加皂角刺 10 克，白芷 10 克。

后期红线消退，原发疮口脓净，一般不需内服药物，可逐渐痊愈。

2. 外治法

(1) 对原感染疮口要引流通畅，用大黄油纱布（21）换药，或用九一丹（23）少许撒布疮面，盖贴拔毒膏（14）。

(2) 若红线明显，对局部皮肤消毒后，在红线前端进行针刺放血，尔后贴拔毒膏（14）；或沿红线每隔 2 厘米间隔针刺，致针刺处微微出血，可加速红线消退；或用紫金锭（46）加醋研汁后外涂患处。

4.7 急性淋巴结炎

该病是由感染病灶的化脓性细菌沿淋巴管侵入到局部淋巴结而引起的急性炎症，属于中医学“痈”的范畴。如发生于颈部的称“颈痈”；腋窝部的称“腋痈”；腹股沟部的称“跨腹痈”；腘窝部的称“委中毒”。

病因病机

内因肝胃火毒挟痰，肝脾郁结，湿热下注，复感风温，风热，湿热之邪，加之头面、四肢染毒，以致毒邪循经流注，结于颈，腋窝，腹股沟，腘窝部，使局部气血凝滞而成。

临床表现

初期淋巴结肿大疼痛，皮色不变，以后肿块渐大，形如鸡卵，压痛明显，炽热疼痛。多伴有发热，恶寒，头痛，苔黄，脉数。若肿块皮色转红，按之波动，则脓肿形成。

辨证论治

1.内治法

(1) 初期

①颈部淋巴结炎

主证：结块形如鸡卵，皮色不变，灼热肿痛，伴寒热，头痛，项强，舌苔薄黄，脉弦滑数。

治法：散风清热，化痰消肿。

方药：牛蒡解肌汤（47）加减。

牛蒡子 10 克，柴胡 10 克，连翘 15 克，夏枯草 15 克，板蓝根 15 克，蒲公英 15 克，浙贝母 10 克，玄参 10 克，赤芍 10 克，粉丹皮 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

②腋窝部淋巴结炎

主证：初期多暴肿，皮色不变，灼热疼痛，上肢活动不利，伴有全身症状。

治法：疏肝清热，解毒消肿。

方药：柴胡清肝汤（38）加减。

柴胡 10 克，黄芩 10 克，川芎 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，天花粉 10 克，当归 10 克，赤芍 12 克，连翘 15 克，夏枯草 15 克，金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，生甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

③腹股沟、腘窝部淋巴结炎

主证：初期肿硬热痛，皮色不红或微红，待肿块明显时，则患肢伸屈不利，并伴有发热等全身症状。

治法：清热利湿，和营消肿。

方药：五神汤（3）、活血散瘀汤（48）加减。

金银花 30 克，紫花地丁 20 克，赤芍 15 克，土茯苓 15 克，当归 10 克，川牛膝 10 克，黄柏 10 克，桃仁 10 克，川芎 10 克，粉丹皮 10 克，车前子（包）10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(2) 成脓期

以上 3 种淋巴结炎成脓期的主证、治法方药相同。

主证：局部红肿光亮，胀痛或跳痛，按之波动，发热持续不退或寒战，口干思冷饮，舌苔黄，舌质红，脉洪数。

治法：清热解毒，活血透脓。

方药：仙方活命饮（2）加减。

连翘 15 克，蒲公英 30 克，金银花 30 克，山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克，赤芍 10 克，当归 10 克，天花粉 10 克，白芷 10 克，防风 6 克，生甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：体虚者，加生黄芪 15 克

(3) 溃后期

以上 3 种淋巴结炎溃后期的主证、治法、方药相同。

主证：溃后脓出热退，肿消痛减。

治法：调补气血，兼清余热。

方药：四妙汤（43）加味。

金银花 15 克，当归 15 克，生黄芪 15 克，生甘草 10 克，天花粉 15 克，连翘 15 克，白芷 10 克，陈皮 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(4) 局部遗留硬结，形成慢性淋巴结炎不易消退时，可服金蚣丸：蜈蚣 50 条，全蝎 30 克，僵蚕 15 克，山甲珠 45 克，川大黄 10 克，雄黄 10 克，朱砂 6 克。共研细末，用黄米饭捣烂为丸。每次 3 克，日服 2—3 次。此丸有消肿散结作用。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期：外敷金黄膏（17）或大青膏（18），或用消肿散（苇拔 30 克，草乌 15 克，山奈 15 克，儿茶 15 克，甘松 15 克，

血竭 10 克，白芷 10 克，乳香 3 克，没药 3 克，丁香 3 克。共研细末而成）少许撒在拔毒膏（14）上，贴于患外。

(2) 成脓期：切开排脓。

(3) 溃后期：先用九一丹（23），大黄油纱布（21）换药。待腐脱新肉生长时，用生肌散（26），生肌玉红膏油纱布（22）换药。

4.8 急性化脓性腮腺炎

本病是由化脓性细菌经口腔腮腺管侵入腮腺而引起的急性化脓性炎症。因发于颐颌之间，所以中医学称为"发颐。"

病因病机

本病多因热病后期或手术后，津液耗伤，气阴不足，腮腺分泌功能减退，风温风热毒邪侵入腮腺，气血瘀滞，热毒蕴结，结聚于少阳及阳明经络而发病。

临床表现

初期腮腺部疼痛、紧张、张口困难，此后红肿显著，压痛明显。脓成时可触及波动感，压迫局部可见口腔内腮腺导管开口处红肿并溢出脓液，若不及时切开，脓肿可在局部或口腔粘膜或外耳道溃破。伴恶寒，发热等全身症状。有的可发生暂时性面瘫，病愈后可恢复正常。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 初期

主证：腮腺部微肿微痛，张口稍感困难，轻度发热，苔白腻，脉微数。

治法：清热解毒，散风消肿。

方药：普济消毒饮（37）加减。

黄芩 10 克，牛蒡子 10 克，桔梗 10 克，僵蚕 10 克，升麻 10 克，柴胡 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，葛根 10 克，赤芍 12 克，连

翘 15 克，板蓝根 15 克，夏枯草 15 克，蒲公英 30 克，金银花 30 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(2) 成脓期

主证：肿痛倍增，皮色微红，压痛明显，可有波动感。身寒热，口渴纳呆，舌苔黄，脉弦滑数或洪数。

治法：清热解毒，托毒透脓。

方药：普济消毒饮 (37) 加减。

黄芩 10 克，桔梗 10 克，柴胡 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，赤芍 10 克，连翘 15 克，板蓝根 15 克，夏枯草 15 克，蒲公英 30 克，金银花 30 克，山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 溃后期

主证：治法，方药同一般化脓性感染，但勿骤用补法。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期：外敷金黄膏 (17) 或大青膏 (18)，也可应用二味拔毒散（雄黄、白矾各等份，研细末而成）10 克，加鲜马齿苋 30 克，捣烂外敷患处，每日换药 1 次。

(2) 成脓期：因腮腺被膜致密坚韧，脓液不易穿破被膜排出，故诊断一旦明确，即应尽早切开引流，避免脓液向外耳道等部位侵入。

(3) 溃后期：按一般化脓性感染溃后外治法换药。

4.9 髂窝脓肿

髂窝脓肿是髂窝部化脓性感染疾病，以儿童发病较为多见。由于髂腰肌被炎症刺激，患侧大腿常不能伸直，故中医学称为“缩脚流注”。

病因病机

暑湿外受，或因外疡热毒走散，由经脉而行至髂窝，致局部经络阻隔，气血凝滞，郁久化热，热盛肉腐而成脓肿；或下肢外

伤染毒，疮疡毒邪沿经脉流至髂窝部而形成。

临床表现

初期患侧髂窝部疼痛，髋关节屈曲不能伸直，但膝关节仍能伸屈。牵拉下肢可引起剧痛，以后逐渐痛重。髂窝部可触及肿块，有压痛。多伴有寒热，纳呆等全身症状。如壮热不退，肿块增大中软时，为已成脓，溃后流出黄稠脓液，诸症逐渐减轻至愈。愈后患侧髋关节仍然屈曲不能伸直，往往经过功能锻炼才能恢复正常。

鉴别诊断

1. 盲肠后位阑尾脓肿：多有典型的转移性右下腹痛和右下腹局限性压痛。触痛部位或压痛性肿块较髂窝脓肿位置高而偏向内侧。腰大肌试验呈阳性，一般无髋关节屈曲表现。

2. 脊椎结核寒性脓肿：发病缓慢，腰痛，潮热，盗汗。寒性脓肿位于腹股沟下方，波动明显，但无急性炎症表现。化验血沉明显加快，X 线摄片有脊椎结核病变。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 初期

主证：恶寒发热，头痛肢楚，髂窝部疼痛或有肿块，患侧髋关节屈曲，苔薄黄，脉弦数。

治法：清热解毒，活血消肿。

方药：五味消毒饮（1）加减。

金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，紫花地丁 15 克，连翘 15 克，赤芍 15 克，黄柏 10 克，川牛膝 10 克，当归 10 克，天葵子 10 克，生甘草 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。痛重者，再加醒消丸（49）1.5 克吞服，每日 2 次。

(2) 成脓期

主证：壮热不退，肿块大而中软，压痛明显，患侧髋关节屈曲不能伸直，舌红，苔黄，脉弦滑数或洪数。

治法：清热解毒，托毒透脓。

方药：五味消毒饮（1）加减。

金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，紫花地丁 15 克，连翘 15 克，赤芍 15 克，黄柏 10 克，川牛膝 10 克，当归 10 克，生黄芪 15 克，山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克，白芷 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 溃后期

主证：溃后一般脓泄痛减，脉静身凉，疮口如期愈合，不需内服药物。如证见脓液清稀，疮口日久不敛，脉数无力者，可用以下治法。

治法：补益气血，托毒生肌。

方药：托里消毒散（10）。

党参 15 克，生黄芪 30 克，金银花 30 克，川芎 10 克，当归 15 克，白芍 10 克，白术 10 克，桔梗 10 克，白芷 10 克，茯苓 10 克，甘草 6 克，皂角刺 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期：外敷大青膏（18）或金黄膏（17）。

(2) 成脓期：及时切开排脓。

(3) 溃后期：用大黄油纱布（21）条引流换药。

4.10 全身性化脓性感染

化脓性细菌及其毒素侵入血液循环而引起的严重全身反应，称为全身性化脓性感染。相当于中医学中的“疔疮走黄”或“疽毒内陷”等严重证候。

病因病机

当疔疮火毒炽盛伤正，或痈疽热毒因正虚而乘机入侵，以致毒邪扩散，客于营血，内攻脏腑而为患。热毒攻心，则烦躁不安，神昏谵语；热毒伤肝，则痉挛抽风；热毒伤脾胃，则腹胀嗳

腐；热毒伤肺，则气粗喘息；热毒伤肾，则尿少尿闭；热毒入血，则发斑、衄血。

临床表现

发病急、病情重、发展快，有明显的全身中毒症状，如寒战，高热（可达 40—41℃），头痛，恶心，腹胀、大汗出，口渴，贫血，乏力，粘膜和皮肤出现瘀血斑点等，舌质红，舌苔黄，脉细数。严重者神昏谵语，烦躁不安，甚则发生中毒性休克。由于细菌栓子进入血液循环，可发生体表转移性脓肿。如脓肿转移至内脏，可发生相应脏器脓肿的症状。血液化验白细胞计数明显增高，中性粒细胞和幼稚型白细胞计数增高，严重时白细胞内可出现毒性颗粒。在寒战、高热时采血送培养常呈阳性。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 气营两燔型（相当于毒血症阶段）

主证：起病急，寒战，高热，口大渴，大汗出，小便短赤，舌质红，苔薄黄或黄糙，脉弦数或洪数。

治法：清气泻热，解毒清营。

方药：白虎汤（50）并黄连解毒汤（31）加减。

生石膏 30 克，金银花 30 克，板蓝根 30 克，紫花地丁 30 克，生地 30 克，知母 15 克，天花粉 15 克，连翘 15 克，黄连 10 克，黄柏 10 克，山栀子 10 克，黄芩 10 克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日 1 剂。

加减：高热、拘急抽搐，上方加羚羊角粉 1—1.5 克（冲服）。

大便秘结，加生大黄 10 克（后入），另冲服芒硝 10 克。

气虚大汗淋漓，加生黄芪 30 克，沙参 15 克，西洋参 6 克。

(2) 热入营血型（相当于败血症或脓血症阶段）

主证：壮热不退，神昏躁动，发斑，衄血，舌质红绛或深绛，苔少而干，脉细数。

治法：清热解毒，凉血清营。

方药：清营汤（52）加减。

犀角粉 3 克（冲服），生地 30 克，金银花 45 克，大青叶 30 克，连翘 15 克，紫花地丁 15 克，玄参 15 克，赤芍 10 克，黄连 10 克，蚤休 10 克，黄芩 10 克，生栀子 10 克，淡竹叶 6 克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日 1 剂。

加减：神昏谵语，加安宫牛黄丸（53）1 粒冲服。

有脓肿，加山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克。

咳吐脓痰，加鱼腥草 30 克，冬瓜仁 15 克。

有黄疸，加茵陈 30 克，金钱草 30 克。

尿闭，加车前子 10 克，竹叶 10 克。

(3) 热盛亡阴型（相当于败血症，脓血症后期）

主证：身热烦躁，大汗出，四肢温，呼吸气粗，渴喜冷饮，口唇燥裂，舌红而干，脉细数无力。

治法：养阴生脉，凉血解毒。

方药：清营汤（52）加生脉散（54）加减。

犀角粉 3 克（冲服），生地 30 克，金银花 45 克，大青叶 30 克，连翘 15 克，紫花地丁 15 克，玄参 15 克，赤芍 10 克，黄连 10 克，蚤休 10 克，黄芩 10 克，生栀子 10 克，淡竹叶 6 克，西洋参 10 克，五味子 10 克，麦冬 15 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(4) 热厥亡阳型（相当于中毒性休克）

主证：汗出如油，四肢厥冷，气微，口不渴，舌质淡润，脉微细欲绝。

治法：回阳救逆。

方药：参附汤（55）。

人参 15 克，熟附子 15 克。水煎急服。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期：炎块未成脓时，外敷大青膏（18）或金黄膏

(17)。

(2) 成脓期：脓肿形成后，应尽早切开引流。

(3) 溃后期：若疮口较小但坏死组织较多，应扩大疮口，切除坏死组织，使引流通畅。疮口按一般溃疡常规换药。

(4) 如本病是由大面积烧伤创面感染或肠梗阻、胆道感染所致，要根据病情处理创面或进行手术，以解除病因。

全身化脓性感染病情严重，应中西医结合治疗。根据血液细菌培养结果，选用有效抗生素；纠正水、电解质平衡紊乱；严重者应反复、多次输鲜血；适当补充维生素等。

4.11 颈淋巴结结核

颈部淋巴结结核是由于结核杆菌侵入颈部淋巴结引起的慢性特异性感染，多见于儿童和青年。中医学因其"结核"累累如贯珠状，故称为"瘰疬。"

病因病机

初期多因肝郁化火，炼液成痰，痰火凝结面成。病至后期，肝火愈旺，下灼肾阴，或溃后脓水淋漓，耗伤气血，故出现阴虚发热或气血两虚的证候。亦有先因肺肾亏虚，以致水亏火旺，肺津不能输布，灼津为痰，痰火凝结所致。

临床表现

初期在颈部的一侧或两侧出现一个或多个大小不等的淋巴结肿块，活动，不痛，皮色正常。以后肿块增大与皮肤粘连，多个肿块互相粘连而成团块状。随着病情的发展，肿块中心变软，波动，皮色暗红，形成寒性脓肿。破溃后流出稀薄脓液及干酪样坏死组织，疮口呈潜行性空腔，周围皮色紫暗，形成不易愈合的窦道和溃疡。中后期可伴有潮热、盗汗，食欲减退以及全身无力等证。

诊断和鉴别诊断

根据有结核病接触史，局部有肿大淋巴结，寒性脓肿，经久

不愈的窦道和溃疡，或有多个疤痕，血沉加快，胸透可有肺结核病变等，多可做出明确诊断。小儿结核菌素试验能帮助诊断。当诊断有困难时，可行活检组织病理切片检查。临床应与下列疾病相鉴别：

(1) 慢性淋巴结炎：多由头面口腔炎症引起。淋巴结肿大，光滑活动，中等硬度，轻微压痛，无全身症状。

(2) 颈部淋巴结转移性癌：多由口腔，鼻咽部的恶性瘤转移至颈部淋巴结。患者年龄多在 40 岁以上，肿块坚硬如石，高低不平，推之不移，并常伴有头痛、鼻血。

(3) 恶性淋巴瘤：早期淋巴结肿大游离，不久即相互粘连，肿块较大而硬，与基底部固定。同时有全身淋巴结和肝脾肿大，发热等症。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 初期

主证：颈部淋巴结肿大，活动，不痛，皮色不变，或淋巴结互相粘连呈团块状，一般无全身症状，舌苔白，脉弦细滑。

治法：疏肝解郁，化痰散结。

方药：逍遥散 (7) 并内消瘰疬丸 (97) 加减。

柴胡 10 克，当归 10 克，白芍 10 克，清半夏 10 克，香附 10 克，黄芩 10 克，夏枯草 30 克，猫爪草 30 克，生牡蛎 30 克，玄参 15 克，浙贝母 10 克，昆布 15 克，海藻 15 克，水煎 2 次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(2) 中期

主证：肿块增大与皮肤及周围粘连，皮色渐转暗红，按之微热，轻度压痛，有波动感，可伴有疲乏，低热等症。舌苔白或微黄，脉弦数。

治法：清热化痰，托里透脓。

方药：猫爪草汤 (经验方)。

猫爪草 30 克，夏枯草 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，金银花 30 克，赤芍 10 克，桔梗 10 克，白芷 10 克，柴胡 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，连翘 15 克，黄芩 10 克，生黄芪 15 克．水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 后期

主证：脓肿破溃，脓汁清稀夹杂有干酪样坏死组织，肉芽灰白或苍白，疮口潜行久不愈合，可伴有潮热，盗汗，倦怠无力，纳呆等症，舌质淡红，苔薄白，脉沉细数。

治法：益气养阴，清托排脓。

方药：四妙汤 (43) 加味。

金银花 30 克，黄芪 30 克，当归 15 克，夏枯草 15 克，玉竹 15 克，玄参 15 克，葎草 15 克，炒麦芽 15 克，煅牡蛎 30 克，白薇 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，生甘草 6 克，炒皂角刺 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

在各期治疗过程中，均可配合内服金蛇丸 (56)、小金丹 (57)。散结片 (58) 等。必要时配合应用抗结核的药物。

散结片（柴胡 2 500 克，生牡蛎 2 500 克，猫爪草 2 500 克，玄参 2 500 克，香附 2 500 克，白芍 2 500 克，郁金 2 500 克，橘红 2 500 克，红花 2 500 克，川芎 2 500 克，黄芩 2 500 克，当归 2 500 克，昆布 2 500 克，海藻 2 500 克，丹参 3 750，夏枯草 5 000 克，土贝母 1 250 克，山慈菇 1 250 克。共研细末，制成 0.3 克片剂。具有软坚散结，活血化瘀，消肿止痛等作用。日服 3 次，每次 10 片。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期：可选用消核膏 (59) 或阳和解凝膏 (15) 外贴患处；或用火针疗法：局部消毒，取针放在酒精灯上烧红，快速刺入硬结内部，拔针后外贴消核膏 (59)，每周 1 次。

(2) 中期：脓熟宜切开排脓。

(3) 后期：脓肿破溃后，疮面撒布少许五五丹 (24)，盖贴

大黄油纱布（21）换药，使坏死组织较快分离而脱落，以达腐去肌生的目的。对升丹过敏者，也可用千捶膏（16）或猫眼草膏（猫眼草1捆，水煎去渣，浓缩成膏，备用）换药。

4.12 急性阑尾炎

急性阑尾炎是指各种致病因素所引起的阑尾急性炎症病变，为外科最常见的急腹症，属于中医学的"肠痈"范畴。

病因病机

外感六淫，饮食不节，劳累过度，情志内伤，可使肠道气机不调，阑尾运化失职，继而气滞血瘀，瘀久化热，热盛日久腐脓而成。由于热毒炽盛化火，则易发生以火毒为主的诸种变证。如火毒壅滞阳明之腑，可出现痞、满、燥、实的腑实证；火与湿热相搏，可出现腹泻、里急后重的湿热证；火毒壅闭于内，可出现热深厥深的厥证等。

临床表现

1. 症状

（1）腹痛：开始于上腹部或脐周阵发性窜痛，为气滞所致，经过数小时至24小时左右，腹痛转移至右下腹阑尾部位，呈固定性、持续性疼痛，为气滞血瘀的表现。这种转移性右下腹痛是急性阑尾炎的典型症状。慢性阑尾炎急性发作时的疼痛，大多始在右下腹，无转移性腹痛的特点。

（2）胃肠道症状：恶心，呕吐，便结，便燥或腹泻等。瘀滞型（初期），因腑气不降，胃气上逆而致恶心呕吐，其特点为恶心比呕吐明显。蕴热型（酿脓期），因热毒传胃而致呕吐。热毒型（溃脓期），因腑气闭，反逆而呕；因热伤津或热结里实，则便结便燥。湿热下注，则腹泻，里急后重。

（3）全身症状：瘀滞型（初期），可伴有头痛，头晕，身倦乏力等，为营气不和，气血失调所致。继而气滞血瘀，瘀久化热，遂可见发热，口渴，尿黄等。

2. 体征与检查

(1) 舌苔脉象：初期瘀滞阶段多为白苔，脉弦紧；化热后则出现黄腻或黄燥苔，舌质也因内热而转深红色，脉数或滑数或洪数。

(2) 局部体征：右下腹局限性压痛，较严重时可有反跳痛，腹壁紧张。右下腹扪及痛性包块时，多为阑尾脓肿或坏疽性阑尾炎周围浸润性肿块。

(3) 检查：腰大肌紧张试验阳性，多见于盲肠后位阑尾炎。闭孔内肌试验阳性，多为盆腔阑尾炎或阑尾远端靠近闭孔肌肌膜。结肠逆行充气试验（娄夫辛氏征）阳性，提示右下腹炎症部位与盲肠相连接。直肠指检时，如右侧上方有压痛，表示阑尾位置较低；直肠窝饱满，触痛敏锐，有波动感，提示已合并盆腔脓肿形成。腹肌紧张是腹膜壁层受刺激的表现，多见于坏疽性阑尾穿孔腹膜炎。双侧阑尾穴（在足三里与上巨虚之间）按压，60～80%病例压痛反应阳性。

(4) 化验检查：血白细胞计数及中性白细胞多增高。阑尾炎如波及邻近的输尿管或膀胱，尿常规可有少数白细胞和红细胞，但如尿中出现大量红白细胞，则需与泌尿系统疾病相鉴别。

诊断

多数病人具有典型的转移性右下腹痛和右下腹局限性显著压痛，这是诊断急性阑尾炎的主要体征。再结合症状和诱发阑尾压痛的试验及化验室检查等，即可确定诊断。但对疑似该病和非典型病人要提高警惕，需与有关疾病进行鉴别诊断。

辨证论治

1. 适应证

(1) 急性单纯性阑尾炎及轻型化脓性阑尾炎。

(2) 阑尾周围脓肿，肿块大小不超过腹部一个象限，全身中毒症状不严重。

(3) 阑尾炎穿孔合并局限性或弥漫性腹膜炎，中毒症状较

轻、一般情况尚好者。

2. 常用治疗方法

(1) 辨证分型治疗

①瘀滞型（初期）

相当于急性单纯性阑尾炎或阑尾周围脓肿的消散后期。

主证：此期为气滞血瘀阶段。可见右下腹压痛及跳痛，腹肌紧张不明显或触及包块，伴脘腹胀闷，恶心纳呆，大便正常或秘结，不发热或轻微发热。白细胞计数正常或稍高。气滞重者则腹痛绕脐走窜；血瘀重者则痛有定处，痛处拒按，或有肿块。舌苔薄白，脉弦紧或弦而微数。

治法：以通里攻下、行气祛瘀为主，佐以清热解毒。

方药：阑尾化瘀汤（60）

川楝子 15 克，金银花 15 克，延胡索 10 克，粉丹皮 10 克，桃仁 10 克，木香 10 克，生大黄（后入）10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：气滞重者，加青皮 10 克，乌药 10 克。

血瘀重者，加红藤 30 克，赤芍 15 克。

发热者，加蒲公英 30 克，连翘 15 克。

有包块者，加山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克，三棱 10 克，莪术 10 克。

腹胀恶心者，加枳壳 10 克，竹茹 10 克。

②蕴热型（酿脓期）

相当于化脓性阑尾炎、急性阑尾炎合并局限性腹膜炎及阑尾周围脓肿。

主证：此期是在气滞血瘀基础上的化热阶段，多与湿热症状兼见。可见右下腹痛加剧，腹肌紧张明显或是局限性包块。湿重于热则微热，口渴不欲饮，脘腹痞闷，便溏不爽，尿黄浊，舌质红，苔黄腻，脉弦滑数；热重于湿则高热，口渴而欲饮，便秘尿黄，舌质红，苔黄干，脉弦数或洪数。

治法：以通里攻下，清热解毒为主，佐以行气活血，化湿排脓。

方药：阑尾清化汤（61）。

金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，粉丹皮 15 克，生大黄（后入）15 克，川楝子 10 克，赤芍 12 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂，也可每日 2 剂，水煎分 4 次服。

加减：湿重于热者，加佩兰 10 克，薏苡仁 30 克，白蔻 10 克，藿梗 10 克。

热重于湿者，加黄芩 10 克，黄连 10 克。

③热毒型（溃脓期）

相当于严重坏疽性阑尾炎或急性阑尾炎合并弥漫性腹膜炎。

主证：此期为热毒炽盛，热极化火阶段，易发生变证。可见腹痛剧烈，有明显的腹膜炎刺激征象，白细胞计数明显增高。若热毒伤阴，则高热或恶寒发热，汗出，口渴唇燥，面红目赤，大便秘结，小便短赤，舌质红绛，苔黄燥，脉滑数或洪大数；若热毒伤阴损阳，则发热不高或不热，精神萎靡，肢冷自汗，舌质干、苔黄燥或焦黑，脉沉细数。

治法：以清热解毒，通里攻下为主，佐以行气凉血。

方药：阑尾清解汤（62）。

金银花 30 克，蒲公英 30 克，生大黄（后入）30 克，冬瓜仁 30 克，粉丹皮 15 克，败酱草 30 克，木香 10 克，赤芍 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂，也可每日 2 剂，水煎分 4 次服。

加减：若热毒伤阴，加生地 30 克，玄参 15 克，天花粉 15 克。

若热毒伤阴损阳，加熟附子 12 克，干姜 9 克。

若腹胀者，加川厚朴 10 克，莱服子 12 克。

若呕吐者，加姜半夏 10 克，枳壳 10 克。

若大热大渴者，加生石膏 30 克。

中药治疗急性阑尾炎，不论何型，均应在临床症状和体征消失后，再继续服药 1 周，以巩固疗效。

(2) 针刺疗法

适应症：急性单纯性阑尾炎或轻型化脓性阑尾炎。对其他各型阑尾炎可作为辅助治疗。

体针

取穴：阑尾穴、上巨虚、足三里、右下腹阑尾压痛点（阿是穴）。恶心呕吐加内关；发热加曲池、合谷。

手法：泻法，每次 20—30 分钟，每日 2—3 次。

耳针

取穴：阑尾、阑尾点、大肠、交感、神门。

手法：强刺激后，留针 30 分钟，每日 1—2 次。

(3) 外治疗法

方药：蒜硝黄醋糊剂（大蒜 60 克，芒硝 30 克，大黄粉 30 克、醋适量）。

适应证：急性单纯性阑尾炎、化脓性阑尾炎早期。

用法：先将芒硝和大蒜捣烂成糊状，在右下腹最疼处皮肤上涂一层凡士林，以防烧伤。然后在其上外敷蒜硝糊，2 小时后去上药。再用大黄粉加醋调成糊状外敷 6—8 小时，糊剂转干时，可加醋湿润，或在糊剂上置以塑料薄膜，以防挥发。

方药：消炎散（芙蓉叶 300 克，大黄 300 克，黄芩 250 克，黄柏 250 克，泽兰 250 克，冰片 10 克。共研细末备用）。

适应证：化脓性阑尾炎、阑尾脓肿并腹膜炎。

用法：用黄酒或葱、酒煎液调敷患处，每日 2 次。

方药：消结膏（生半夏 30 克，生南星 30 克，生川乌 30 克，猪牙皂 30 克，土贝母 30 克，姜黄 30 克，黄芩 30 克，大黄 30 克，黄柏 60 克，败酱草 60 克，芙蓉叶 60 克，山甲珠 45 克，白芷 15 克，共研细末备用）。

适应证：阑尾炎后期形成之慢性炎块。

用法：用凡士林或蜜调膏，外敷患处，日1次。

(4) 辅助疗法及注意事项

在进行上述疗法时，应令患者卧床休息，酌情予以流质，半流质或禁食。腹膜炎患者，采用半卧位。对禁食或脱水及酸碱平衡紊乱者，应行补液。患者合并弥漫性腹膜炎或麻痹性肠梗阻时，应行胃肠减压。病情严重者，要给予抗生素。在非手术治疗过程中，应密切观察腹痛、腹部体征的变化及血象，体温，舌苔，脉象的改变等。如经非手术治疗病情不断恶化者，应及时中转手术治疗。对患急性化脓性、坏疽性阑尾炎，临床症状严重，急性阑尾炎穿孔并发弥漫性腹膜炎，且有休克现象者，以及小儿、老年人急性阑尾炎，慢性阑尾炎反复急性发作患者，应行手术治疗。

5 乳房疾病

5.1 概论

由于女子生理特点的不同，乳房疾病在成年妇女甚为多见。

女性乳腺的生理

女孩到青春发育期开始后，两侧乳房和乳头逐渐增大，二七天癸至，任脉通，太冲脉盛，月事以时下，乳房组织迅速生长，乳房呈半球形膨隆，乳头长大凸出，乳晕范围扩大，皮肤色泽加深，发育已近成熟。妊娠和哺乳期，乳腺管增长、增多，腺泡开始分泌乳汁，因此乳房逐渐增大，重量增加1倍以上。哺乳期后，乳腺又有所退化而处于相对静止状态。更年期后，由于天癸竭，肾气衰，月经闭，乳房开始变小、松弛或下瘪。

乳汁为气血所化，而源于胃，实水谷之精微。因此脾胃气旺，气血充足，则乳汁多而浓，反之则乳汁少而稀。而冲任为气血之海，气血上行为乳，下行为经。妇女哺乳期则经止，断乳通经来潮，则乳汁可止，故泌乳之有无与冲任亦有关系。乳汁的分泌和排出及控制有赖于肝，因肝主疏泄，若肝气不舒，疏泄不利，乳汁郁滞，可导致乳腺炎的发生或影响乳汁的分泌而致乳汁减少或缺乳。

乳房与脏腑经络的关系

乳房与脾胃、肝胆、肾、冲任等脏腑经络有密切关系。掌握这些理论知识，对乳房疾病的防治，有一定实用意义。如"乳头属肝，乳房属胃，男子乳房属肾"。这是因为足厥阴肝经贯膈，布胁肋；足少阳胆经合缺盆，下胸中，络肝，循胁里；足少阴肾经，上贯肝膈而与乳联；足阳明胃经，贯乳中，下膈，属胃，络脾；足太阴脾经，络胃，上膈；冲任两脉起于胞中，任脉循腹

里，上关元，至胸中，冲脉挟脐上行，至胸中而散。所以乳房疾病与肝、胃二经的关系极为密切，与胆、脾、肾经、冲任两脉也有联系。

病因病机

乳房的一般感染性疾病，多因外感六淫，饮食不节，肝郁气滞，或胃热壅滞所致。内分泌紊乱以及非肿瘤或肿瘤性疾病，多由肝肾不足，冲任失调，肝郁脾虚，痰浊凝聚，瘀血阻络等原因引起。其中肝郁多是导致乳房疾病的主要原因。故临床治疗乳房病，不论病之新久虚实，均应佐以疏肝解郁理气之品，使乳络疏通，气血流畅。

乳房疾病的症状

1. 乳内肿块：肿块是乳房感染，肿瘤或非肿瘤等病的主要症状。要注意肿块发生的部位、时间、大小、数目、生长快慢、边界是否清楚、表面是否光滑、硬度和活动度如何，有无疼痛或压痛，一侧乳房发病还是双侧乳房发病以及与月经、妊娠、哺乳、感染、外伤等有无联系等。如急性乳腺炎，肿块有红肿热痛的表现；乳腺增生病，肿块多经前增大胀痛，经后缩小痛减；乳房纤维瘤，肿块单个或多个，呈卵圆形，边界清楚、光滑、活动、不痛；乳腺癌，肿块不痛，坚硬如石，高低不平，推之不移。

2. 乳房疼痛：一般良性或恶性肿瘤多不痛；疼痛者多是乳房炎症和乳腺增生病。如急性乳腺炎，多灼热疼痛，化脓后剧痛，溃后痛减；乳腺增生病，多经前胀痛，经后痛减。

3. 乳房表面改变：多数疾病无明显表面改变，仅某些疾病表面改变明显。如急性乳腺炎，皮肤燃赤光亮；乳房结核晚期，局部皮肤紫暗；乳腺导管扩张症，乳晕部红肿热痛，乳头内陷；乳腺癌肿块与皮肤粘连，晚期皮肤水肿，橘皮样变，若变紫色，则将溃破。

4. 乳头乳晕改变：正常者两侧乳头在同一水平高度，当癌

肿位于乳头下方或其附近，侵犯乳络及其周围组织，使之收缩牵拉，而引起乳头回缩、凹陷。如果癌肿距乳头较近，乳头常被拉向病灶一侧。由于癌肿的位置多在乳房外上方，故患侧乳头常较健侧为高。但由先天性乳头内陷、扁平，或乳头附近有急慢性炎症所致者例外。乳头湿疹样癌，见乳头乳晕皮肤糜烂、渗出、结痂，揭去痂皮见颗粒鲜红肉芽疮面，继之皮肤变厚变硬，皮色紫褐，乳头内陷。乳头皲裂，则乳头、乳颈皮肤破裂，流黄水或出血、结痂，哺乳时痛如刀割。

5. 乳头分泌物：在非哺乳期，当乳头有分泌物时，多意味着有某种疾病的发生。一般脓性溢液，多是炎症所致；浆液性或浆液血性溢液，多为乳腺增生病，少数为导管内乳头状瘤或乳腺癌所致；凝块状血性溢液并伴有乳头乳晕部位红肿热痛，多为乳腺导管扩张症所致；血性溢液，多为导管内乳头状瘤，少数为乳腺增生病和乳腺癌所致；绝经期后的乳头溢液，多为乳腺癌所致；水样溢液，多为乳腺增生病，导管内或囊内乳头状瘤或乳腺癌所致。但有的妇女断奶1年以上，仍可挤出少量乳汁，如各项检查正常，不应视此为病态；自发溢出乳汁称为溢乳症；溢乳症合并闭经，则称溢乳——闭经综合征。

6. 腋窝淋巴结肿大或上肢水肿：腋窝淋巴结肿大，而上肢和胸部无急慢性炎症，且乳房发现无痛性肿块，腋窝淋巴结肿大质硬者，应考虑癌肿的可能性。上肢水肿多为癌肿发展到晚期阶段的表现。乳房皮肤水肿，乳头内陷，同侧腋窝有多个较大质硬固定的转移淋巴结时，可引起患侧上肢蜡白色或青紫色水肿。

乳房疾病触诊方法

1. 体位：一般以卧位为佳，坐位适合乳房不下垂而病变在乳晕和乳房上部者。

2. 手法：正确的检查方法是手掌平伸，4指并拢，用指腹平放在乳房上轻柔触摸、滑动，切勿用手指抓捏乳房，否则会将腺体组织或脂肪团误诊为肿块。

3. 检查顺序：先检查健侧，后检查患侧，以便对比。一般先检查内上方，让患者双上肢垂放在身体两侧；再检查外上方，让患者两手叉腰，肘部向后；然后检查外下、内下方和中央区。检查乳房下部时，让患者两手上举或外展。

4. 检查乳房时间的选择：最好在每次月经来潮后 7—10 天内。此时乳腺的生理变化在低潮，乳房组织柔软变薄，肿块容易发现。经前乳腺组织充血、水肿、变厚，此时检查，易将生理性肥厚误诊为肿瘤。

5. 淋巴结检查方法：按腋窝淋巴结的分布有次序地进行检查。检查者从前面用左手伸入患者右腋窝，用右手伸入左腋窝，然后让患者将上臂靠近胸壁，前臂松弛放在检查者的手臂上，使腋窝完全松弛，这样便可清楚地摸腋窝中央群或胸肌群的肿大淋巴结。检查腋后淋巴结时（肩胛后群），让患者上臂举起；检查锁骨上淋巴结时，让患者头倾向检查侧，医生以站在患者背后为宜。

5.2 乳头皲裂

本病中医称为“乳头破裂”、“乳头风”。为哺乳期乳头常见病、可引起乳房不同部位的炎症或脓肿。

病因病机

由郁怒伤肝，肝郁化火，或恣食辛辣厚味，脾胃失职，湿热内生，火与湿热相结而成。其诱因为乳头皮肤柔嫩，不耐婴儿唾液浸渍和吸吮；乳头内陷，或过小，婴儿强力吸吮；产妇乳汁过多，浸渍乳头有关。

临床表现

发于哺乳期妇女，乳头及乳颈部有大小不等的裂口，小儿吸吮时疼痛难忍如刀割。裂口分泌粘水，干燥后形成黄色结痂并发生干燥后疼痛，若侵犯乳晕皮肤，则导致糜烂，分泌脂水，痒痛相兼，舌苔白或黄，脉弦。

鉴别诊断

1. 乳头湿疹样癌：多发于非哺乳期妇女。乳头乳颈部糜烂，经年累月不愈，晚期乳头腐烂，呈颗粒鲜红肉芽疮面，分泌血性溢液，周围皮肤紫暗变硬。难以区别时，作病理切片以明确诊断。

2. 乳头湿疹：多发于中年妇女，常突然发生。乳头有丘疹、水疱、糜烂、渗液、结痂、搔痒等，一般无溃疡，常双侧发病。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

一般不用内服药物治疗，对肝火湿热旺盛，证见渗液，糜烂，搔痒，口苦，舌苔黄，脉弦数者。宜清肝利湿。内服龙胆泻肝汤（40）。也可服龙胆泻肝丸 6 克，每日 3 次，温开水送服。

2. 外治法

（1）复方白芷洗药：白芷 15 克、蒲公英 10 克，苦参 10 克，硼砂 10 克，生甘草 10 克。以上各药加水共煎成汤，乘温热用无菌纱布蘸洗患部，每次 15—20 分钟。如药液变凉，可再加温。每日洗 2 次，每剂药用 1 天，一般 4—5 天可愈。

（2）蛋黄油（熟鸡蛋黄 3 个，放铁勺内慢火炒至变黑色时即得）或黄连膏（63）涂患处，每日 2 次。

预防

1. 妊娠中期后，经常用肥皂和温水清洗乳头，洗后擦干，涂上一层油脂。

2. 乳头内陷（乳头未高出乳房皮肤）者，可先用温水洗净乳头，尔后用手指挤、捏、提、拉，或用小酒盅扣在乳头部位，外加布带捆紧以矫正。乳头内翻（乳头向内翻不能拉出）者，可用 5 毫升注射器外管扣在乳头上，其远端用一橡皮管联结在另一注射器上，用负压吸出法矫正。

5.3 急性乳腺炎

急性乳腺炎是因乳头裂伤或乳汁潴留后，由细菌侵入继发感染而引起的急性化脓性炎症。中医称为"乳痈"。本病几乎均发于产后哺乳期。

病因病机

肝气郁结，胃热壅滞，是发生本病的主要内因。乳头皲裂，畸形，内陷，多乳，挤压，均可使乳汁积滞，蓄积化热，故乳汁积滞也是本病发生的重要条件。在以上发病因素的基础上，外感风热、火毒，与内因之热，积乳化热相搏，致经络阻塞，气血凝滞而发病。

临床表现

患乳红肿热痛或肿胀热痛，肿块或有或无，排乳不畅。成脓时，肿痛加剧，压痛明显，肿块中央变软，按之有波动感。深部脓肿，皮肤不红，波动不明显。脓肿多为单房的，也有多房的(传囊乳痈)，少数病例可形成乳房后脓肿。同侧腋窝淋巴结常肿大，全身也可伴有恶寒、发热、口渴、纳呆，舌苔黄，脉弦或弦数、洪数。白细胞总数及中性粒细胞增高。

鉴别诊断

1. 炎性乳癌：一般多发生在妊娠期或哺乳期。患乳呈广泛浸润的韧性肿胀，病灶表面皮肤发热，紫红或暗红，呈橘皮样病变，同侧腋窝淋巴结也常有转移性肿大。但患者全身炎症反应轻微或全无，局部也多无明显疼痛和压痛。诊断困难时，哺乳期患者要先行断乳，再行活组织检查，这样即可作出明确诊断。

2. 乳房结核：多发生于中年妇女。临床表现有炎症性变化，呈结节样，肿块时小时大，进展缓慢，痛轻，无高烧寒战。肿块溃破可排出稀薄脓液和干酪样物质，形成不易愈合的溃疡和窦道，脓液涂片可发现结核杆菌。此病多伴有其他结核病史。

3. 乳腺导管扩张症：此为非哺乳期发病。乳头回缩，有淡

黄色或粉刺样分泌物，肿块位于乳晕下，质硬韧，呈结节样，与皮肤粘连。急性期红肿热痛，破溃后流脓，形成乳晕部疮口通向乳头的瘘管。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 郁滞期

主证：患乳胀痛，排乳不畅，多有肿块，压痛，微热，皮色正常或微红，全身症状不明显，舌苔白，脉弦或弦而微数。

治法：疏肝解郁，通乳和营，解毒消肿。

方药：乳腺炎汤1号。

蒲公英30克，瓜蒌30克，赤芍30克，金银花15克，柴胡10克，青皮10克，陈皮10克，漏芦10克，广郁金10克，夏枯草10克，丝瓜络6克，生甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：若乳汁积滞明显，加山甲珠10克，王不留行10克。

若乳汁过多而积滞，加山甲珠10克，王不留行10克，生麦芽30克，生山楂15克。

(2) 化热期

主证：患乳肿胀疼痛，排乳不畅，同侧腋窝淋巴结多有肿大触痛，伴有发热恶寒、口渴、纳呆，舌苔黄，脉弦数。

治法：疏肝清热，解毒消肿，通乳和营。

方药：乳腺炎汤2号。

蒲公英30克，金银花30克，瓜蒌30克，赤芍15克，柴胡15克，黄芩15克，连翘15克，大青叶15克，苦参10克，青陈皮各10克，生栀子10克，漏芦10克，生甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：若红肿热痛明显，加犀黄丸（79）1.5—3克，冲服，日2次。

若高热，原方柴胡加倍用量并再加黄连10克。

(3) 脓成期

主证：患部高肿灼热红亮，按之有波动感或局部漫肿，压痛明显，跳痛，穿刺抽吸有脓。身热，苔黄，脉洪数。

治法：清热解毒，排脓消肿。

方药：乳腺炎汤3号。

蒲公英30克，金银花30克，连翘15克，天花粉15克，败酱草15克，瓜蒌15克，柴胡12克，黄芩12克，白芷10克，陈皮10克，赤芍10克，皂角刺10克，生甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：若患者气虚，加生黄芪15克。

若脓肿较小，炎症局限，加生小蓟15克。

(4) 溃后期

①正虚余毒未尽型

主证：溃后红肿热痛减轻或仅有轻度肿硬热痛，脓黄白而稠，体倦，热退或轻度发热，苔微黄，脉细弦微数。

治法：扶正清热解毒。

方药：乳腺炎汤4号。

蒲公英30克，金银花30克，生黄芪15克，天花粉15克，当归12克，连翘12克，柴胡10克，黄芩10克，白芷10克，赤芍10克，生甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：若有肿块，加浙贝母10克。

若疮口溢乳，加生麦芽15克，生黄芪30克。

②气血两虚型

主证：患部红肿热痛消失，惟脓稀肉芽淡白，生长迟缓，体弱、面黄、纳呆，舌淡、苔白，脉细弱。

治法：补益气血。

方药：八珍汤（11）加味。

党参30克，生黄芪30克，熟地15克，当归15克，金银花15克，蒲公英15克，茯苓10克，白术10克，白芍10克，川

芎 6 克，陈皮 6 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

若溃后脓出，寒热不退，肿痛不减，白细胞计数仍高，多为脓腔引流不畅（切口过小或脓肿多房但仅切开 1 个）或感染其他乳房小叶而引起新的炎症或脓肿（传囊乳痈）。其治法可参照化热期或脓成期处理。

2. 外治法

(1) 郁滞期：对乳汁不通，瘀乳明显患者，可行乳房按摩术。术者五指由乳房 4 周轻轻向乳头方向按摩，不要挤压或旋转按压，在按摩的同时，后 轻轻提乳头数次，以扩张乳头的输乳管。按摩前先做湿热敷效果会更好。对肿块明显患者，用金黄膏 (17) 外敷患处，每日 1 次。

(2) 化热期：大青膏 (18) 外敷患处，每日 1 次。也可用仙人掌 90 克，白矾 10 克，共捣烂外敷。或取鲜蒲公英 60 克，鲜紫地丁 60 克，捣烂敷于患处。若乳汁积滞，肿胀热痛，可取芒硝 200 克，放纱布内包好，洒少量温水使之潮湿后外敷，每日 1 次，待乳汁积滞肿胀热痛减轻后即停用，以防乳汁减少。

(3) 脓成期：在脓肿一经形成，药物治疗无效时，应行切开引流术。若因切口过小而引流不畅，可再次手术扩大引流。多房脓肿，术中应将手指伸入脓腔，将多房纤维隔膜轻轻分开。如遇到较韧的条索组织，勿硬行分开，否则易分断乳腺导管，形成奶瘘。

(4) 溃后期：一般用大黄油纱布 (21) 换药。脓腐较多，可用大黄油纱布 (21) 蘸少许九一丹 (23) 换药。疮口坏死组织将尽，脓液不多，用大黄油纱布 (21) 蘸少许祛腐生肌散 (25) 换药。疮口脓少、肉芽组织新鲜时，用生肌玉红膏油纱布 (22) 换药。若新生肉芽生长迟缓，可结合应用生肌散 (26)。

预防

1. 勿情志郁怒，要保持乐观和愉快的情绪。

2. 增加营养，但不可过食肥腻、滋补、辛辣之品。

3. 哺乳期应坚持戴乳罩.

4. 哺乳要定时，一般每日 6—7 次，每次 10—15 分钟。哺乳前要洗手，用温开水洗净乳头。哺乳时要使婴儿乳汁一次性吸尽，不能吸尽时，要用吸乳器将余乳吸出，以防乳汁积滞。乳头皲裂时要及时进行治疗。乳头内陷者，可参照乳头皲裂中的预防部分处理。

5.4 乳房结核

乳房结核大多由结核杆菌经血液循环进入乳房，或由胸壁结核直接延及乳房所致。因其病程缓慢又伴有虚劳症状，故中医学称为“乳痨”。又因溃后脓稀如痰，所以又称“乳痰”。

病因病机

多因肺肾阴虚或患者肺痨，阴虚火旺，又兼肝郁化火，两火相结，炼液成痰，痰火凝结而成。后期多因肝火下灼肾阴，出现阴虚发热，或因气血耗伤而致气血不足。

临床表现

患者多为 20—40 岁的已婚生育妇女，病程进展缓慢。初期患侧乳房出现一个或数个结节性肿块，触之不甚痛，与周围正常组织分界不清，逐渐与皮肤粘连。数月后肿块软化，皮肤紫暗，形成寒性脓肿。溃后排出豆渣样稀薄脓液，形成数个窦道或溃疡。有时肿块不软化，变为硬性肿块，常使乳房变形和乳头内陷。本病初期全身症状不明显，中晚期可见潮热、盗汗，或纳呆、神疲、气血不足等。

诊断

本病早期肿块不易与乳癌鉴别，常需活组织检查确诊。晚期窦道或溃疡形成后诊断并不困难。其疮面周围皮肤呈暗红色，疮口呈潜行性空腔，肉芽组织松萎，苍白，有豆渣样稀薄脓液，脓液染色后可找到结核杆菌。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 初期

主证：乳房中有一个或数个结块，边界不清，硬而不坚，皮色不变，不痛或微痛，舌苔白，脉细弦。

治法：滋阴化痰，疏肝解郁。

方药：消病丸（64）、开郁散（65）、蒌贝散（66）加减。

柴胡 10 克，当归 15 克，白芍 15 克，香附 10 克，广郁金 10 克，全蝎 10 克，白芥子 10 克，玄参 15 克，生牡蛎 30 克，浙贝母 10 克，夏枯草 30 克，瓜蒌 15 克，连翘 15 克，生甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(2) 成脓期

主证：结块渐大变软，皮肉相连，皮色微红或暗红，轻度疼痛，伴潮热、神疲，舌苔薄黄，脉细弦数。

治法：清热化痰，托里透脓。

方药：透脓散（9）加味。

山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克，当归 10 克，生黄芪 15 克，川芎 10 克，金银花 30 克，连翘 15 克，蒲公英 30 克，浙贝母 10 克，生甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 溃后期

主证：形成一个或数个溃疡或窦道，有豆渣样稀薄脓液。阴虚者，潮热盗汗，颧红，食少，舌质红，脉细数。气血虚者，面黄无力，舌淡苔白，脉沉细。

治法：阴虚者，养阴清热；气血虚者，宜调补气血。

方药：阴虚者，内服抗结核汤。

夏枯草 30 克，丹参 15 克，玉竹 15 克，煅牡蛎 15 克，薤草 15 克，银柴胡 12 克，百部 12 克，白薇 12 克，知母 12 克，黄芩 10 克，地骨皮 10 克，鳖甲 10 克，丹皮 10 克。水煎两次分服。

气血虚者，内服香贝养荣汤。

党参 15 克，白芍 10 克，白术 10 克，熟地 15 克，当归 15 克，茯苓 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，香附 10 克，陈皮 10 克，桔梗 10 克，川芎 6 克，生甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

本病初期，均可兼服小金丹（57）或金蛇丸（56）或散结片（58）。

2. 外治法

（1）初期：阳和解凝膏（15）敷贴。

（2）成脓期：波动明显时切开排脓。

（3）溃后期：用七三丹（熟石膏 7 克，红升丹 3 克，共研极细末备用）少许撒在溃疡面上，外盖大黄油纱布（21）换药；或用大黄油纱布（21）蘸此药粉少许填塞窦道，以提脓祛腐。腐脱肉鲜时，改用生肌散（26）或生肌玉红膏（22）换药。

本病在治疗过程中，可配合服抗结核药物。经药物治疗效果不明显者，可行局部病灶切除或单纯乳房切除术；需要时连同病侧腋窝淋巴结一并切除。

5.5 乳腺增生病

本病属于中医的“乳癖”范畴和“乳中结核”的一部分。它即非炎症，亦非肿瘤的增生性疾病。在 30—45 岁成年妇女中发病率最高，一般为 5—15%，甚至高达 30%，有的类型可以癌变。

病因病机

因郁怒伤肝，肝失调达，肝郁则气滞，气滞则血瘀。又因乳房属于多气多血的阳明胃经，故易于气滞血瘀。肝气横逆或思虑伤脾，则脾失健运，痰湿内生。于是肝郁气滞，血瘀痰凝互为结块。肝郁可单独致病，亦可导致冲任失调而发病。

临床表现

根据其病理表现不同，临床分为 3 种类型。

1. 乳痛症：乳痛为本病的主要症状，多为间歇性，常在经前，或动怒时疼痛明显，经至或情志舒畅时痛减或消失。疼痛性质为钝痛、针刺样痛或隐痛。严重时不能着衣挨床。有时疼痛放射至腋下、肩部、或上肢。检查时无明显肿块，有的可触及乳腺组织肥厚或有颗粒状结节，轻压痛。多伴有郁闷、易怒等。

2. 乳腺小叶增生病：一般为双侧发病，也有的始终为单侧发病，其主要症状是乳腺疼痛，有肿块，多在经前或动怒时加重，经后痛减或痛止，肿块明显缩小。其疼痛性质与乳痛症相似。乳腺肿块大小及形状不一，质韧、边界不清，与皮肤和肌层不粘连。少数患者有乳头溢液，大多数病人月经量少，部分患者性生活淡漠。

3. 乳腺囊性增生病：主要以乳腺肿块为主，同时伴有轻度的乳痛。肿块特征是乳腺内有单个或多个大小不一，圆形质韧的囊肿，活动、边界不清、疼痛多不显著，一般常感乳房胀痛，多数经前肿块疼痛较平时为重，经潮时肿块变软而小，疼痛减轻。有的由乳头溢出棕色或血性液体。本病可伴有情志不舒等症状。由于本病有癌变可能，如疑癌变时，应行病理切片检查，以明确诊断。

鉴别诊断

1. 乳房纤维腺瘤：多见于20—25岁妇女。乳房有单个或多个肿块，呈圆形或卵圆形，边界清楚，表面光滑、质韧、活动、发展缓慢，患者全身情况好。

2. 乳腺癌：多见于40—60岁，经绝期前后的妇女。乳房肿块坚硬如石，高低不平，早期活动，晚期固定，皮肤凹陷，乳头回缩，同侧腋窝淋巴结肿大质硬，溃后成菜花样或岩石状溃疡，分泌血水，异臭难闻。早期需作病理切片明确诊断。

辨证论治

本病以中医中药治疗效果为佳。如辨证准确，用药得当，坚持服药，则疗效显著而无副作用。

1. 内治法

(1) 肝郁、血瘀、痰凝证

主证：肿块明显，质韧，随喜怒消长，伴心烦易怒，胸闷不舒，乳房胀痛或刺痛，苔白，脉弦滑。

治法：疏肝解郁，活血祛瘀，化痰散结。

方药：乳块消汤。

瓜蒌15克，夏枯草15克，生牡蛎30克，昆布30克，海藻30克，丹参15克，柴胡10克，天冬10克，三棱10克，莪术10克，橘叶10克，橘核10克，半夏10克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂，连续服12剂为1疗程。

加减：若心烦易怒，胸闷，加山栀子10克，青皮10克，香附10克。

若肿块较硬，加山甲珠10克。若痛重，加延胡索10克。

(2) 肝郁冲任失调证

主证：肿块较软，边界不清，伴腰酸，月经不调，经少而淡，经前乳房胀痛，舌淡红，苔白，脉弦细或沉细。

治法：疏肝解郁，调理冲任，化痰散结。

方药：乳块消汤加减。

瓜蒌15克，夏枯草15克，生牡蛎30克，昆布30克，海藻30克，淫羊藿30克，熟地15克，续断15克，丹参15克，仙茅10克，鹿角霜12克，柴胡10克，天冬10克，橘叶10克，橘核10克，半夏10克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日1剂。

2. 外治法

肿块少而局限的患者，外贴阳和解凝膏（15）或回阳玉龙膏（20）（草乌60克，干姜60克，赤芍30克，白芷30克，南星30克，肉桂15克。共研细末，用凡士林调膏外敷）。

预防

1. 保持情志舒畅，治疗月经不调。

2. 养成顺其自然的生活规律，应尽量消除高龄未婚，婚后

不育，有奶不喂，以及正常的性生活缺乏等不利因素。

3. 积极采取避孕措施，避免人工流产。因妊娠后乳房胀大，若突然中止妊娠，发育的乳腺立即失去激素的支持，这种急骤乳腺复原常不完全，故易形成乳腺肿块及疼痛。

4. 对乳房肿块多，质硬韧，久治无效的患者，行活组织病理切片检查，以确诊癌变是否发生。

5.6 导管内乳头状瘤

导管内乳头状瘤是乳房的良性病变，属于中医的"乳衄"范畴，多见于30—49岁的中年妇女。

病因病机

肝气郁结，郁久化火，火伤乳头血络而致本病。或因肝郁而克伐脾土，导致脾虚统血无权，溢于乳窍而成。

临床表现

乳头呈间歇性自然溢液，门诊时多无肿块发现，仅在挤压乳晕一定部位时，可在乳管开口处溢出液体。溢液多呈紫黑色血液，也有开始为紫黑色血液，好转时变为棕黄色血液，亦有紫黑色血液与棕黄色液体交替出现。少数患者可在乳晕部触及有囊性肿物，压之乳头溢液，囊肿缩小。多伴有烦躁，易怒，口干，口苦，郁闷，心悸，气短，四肢乏力等症。乳头溢液涂片细胞学检查，可确定病变性质。乳腺导管造影，可显示明显的充盈缺损，对本病诊断和定位有价值。诊断有疑时，需活检确诊。

辨证论治

1. 肝火亢盛证

主证：乳头多溢紫黑色血液，伴有心烦易怒，胸胁胀痛，口苦咽干，舌边尖红，苔薄黄，脉细数，或弦而微数。

治法：疏肝解郁，清热凉血。

方药：疏肝泻火止血汤（验方）。

柴胡10克，龙胆草10克，生白芍10克，青皮10克，丹皮

10 克，炒蒲黄 10 克，生地 30 克，生栀子 6 克，花蕊石 6 克，生甘草 6 克，三七粉 3 克，(冲)。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：若有肿块，加夏枯草 15 克，昆布 15 克，海藻 15 克，减甘草。

若乳房胀痛，加橘叶 10 克。

2. 肝郁脾虚证

主证：乳头多溢棕黄色液体，伴四肢倦怠，心悸气短，失眠，纳呆，舌苔薄白，舌质淡红，脉细弱。

治法：疏肝健脾摄血。

方药：疏肝健脾摄血汤 (经验方)。

柴胡 10 克，香附 10 克，当归 15 克，白芍 15 克，红茜草炭 15 克，党参 15 克，黄芪 15 克，茯苓 15 克，白术 15 克，薏米仁 15 克，，炒枣仁 15 克，仙鹤草 15 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

5.7 乳房发育症

乳房发育症相当于中医的"乳疬，"发生在青春期的称青春期 (原发型) 乳房发育症，多见于 10 岁左右的男女儿童，发生于中老年的称男性 (继发性) 乳房发育症。

病因病机

乳头乳晕属肝，女子乳房属胃，男子乳房属肾。男以气为主，女以血为主。郁怒伤肝，肝气郁结，肝郁化火，炼液成痰，痰气互结而致病。或肝郁化火，下灼肾阴；或房劳伤肾，肾阴不足，致虚火上炎，灼津为痰，痰火互结，亦可至病。青春期女子，多因脾胃弱，健运失常，气血生化乏源，致冲任失调，气血失和，血瘀阻络而致。青春期男子多因肾精不充，精血不足而不能涵木，木气不舒，气滞痰凝而成病。

临床表现

一侧或双侧乳晕中央下部有扁圆形肿块，中等硬度，边界清楚，表面光滑、活动，有轻度压痛或胀痛。腋窝淋巴结不肿大。青春期乳房发育症一般无全身症状。男性乳房发育症，除有以上症状外，患侧乳房肥大，以至形似女性成年乳房。并多伴有胸闷，精神抑郁，易怒，或腰膝酸软，头晕目眩，性生活淡漠，发音变高，胡须减少。若一侧乳房发病且肿块较硬，须与乳腺癌鉴别。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 肝郁痰凝型

主证：胸闷，精神抑郁，易怒，急躁，舌质偏红，苔薄白，脉细弦。

治法：疏肝解郁，化痰散结。

方药：乳疬汤（经验方）。

柴胡 10 克，香附 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，青皮 10 克，半夏 10 克，橘叶 10 克，昆布 15 克，海藻 15 克，瓜蒌 15 克，生牡蛎 30 克，夏枯草 15 克，丹参 15 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，连服两周为 1 疗程。

加减：若肿块较硬，加山甲珠 10 克。

若胸闷胁痛者，加广郁金 10 克。

(2) 肝肾不足型

主证：腰膝酸软，头晕目眩，眼眶黧黑，性生活淡漠，舌红少苔，脉细微数。

治法：补益肝肾，佐以化痰软结。

方药：六味地黄汤（12）加味。

熟地 30 克，山萸肉 10 克，茯苓 10 克，泽泻 10 克，丹皮 10 克，山药 10 克，枸杞子 10 克，浙贝母 10 克，生牡蛎 30 克，夏枯草 15 克，昆布 15 克，海藻 15 克，瓜蒌 15 克。水煎两

次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：对性生活淡漠，发音变高，胡须减少患者，加淫羊藿30克，巴戟天15克，鹿角霜10克。

若口干咽燥，加龟板10克，肥知母10克，黄柏6克。

青春期乳房发育症，男性乳房发育症，病情较轻者，可用六味地黄丸（12）加散结片（58）配合内服。

2. 外治法

阳和解凝膏（15）贴敷患处，每周更换1次。

总之，治疗本病要治病求本，本于病因病理，还要治疗原发病和停用容易引起男性乳房异常发育的药物。

6 周围血管疾病

周围血管疾病是发生于四肢部血管疾患的总称。它大体包括血栓闭塞性脉管炎，闭塞性动脉硬化症，多发性大动脉炎，肢端动脉痉挛症（雷诺氏病），血栓性深、浅静脉炎和下肢静脉曲张等疾病。根据这些疾病的主要症状和体征，以及病情发展和预后情况来看，可能属于中医的“脱疽”、“痉病”、“脉痹”、“恶脉”等疾病范畴。

周围血管疾病在其发生、发展、治疗过程中，有着共同的特点。如：经脉瘀阻，闭塞不通，不通则痛为主要病因；活血化瘀、疏通经络，流通血脉为主要治法；因气行则血行，气滞则血瘀，故治法中多佐以行气或补气的药物。但由于发病阶段和虚实寒热的不同，要对不同病情辨证论治。

6.1 血栓闭塞性脉管炎

血栓闭塞性脉管炎是一种慢性周围血管疾病，常有周期性的加剧，好发于四肢远端中小动脉，尤以下肢为多见，开始多为一侧。由于血管栓塞而引起患肢发凉、疼痛、无脉，最后坏死和趾（指）节脱落，故中医称为“脱疽”。此病多发于男性青壮年，女性少见，且寒冷地区发病率较高。

病因病机

多由肾阴亏损，相火旺盛，情志抑郁，忧思过度，饮食不节，脾胃失调，寒冷潮湿，邪毒蕴结，烟碱中毒，外伤等因素，致气血凝滞，血脉稽留，经络瘀阻，瘀滞流塞，形成瘀血（血栓）不通而成。

临床表现

1. 病状与体征:

(1) 寒湿伤阳者: 患肢沉重，步履不便，足底掌痛；小腿酸蹙，时有抽痛，行程缩短，步态跛行；发凉怕冷，麻木，疼痛；疼痛昼轻夜重，常抱膝而坐，彻夜不眠；局部皮色苍白或紫红，或呈慢性紫色结块，触之冰冷；肌肉逐渐萎缩，皮肤干燥；足背趾部汗毛稀疏或脱落，趾（指）甲生长缓慢、变形或增厚；多伴有游走性血栓性浅静脉炎；足背动脉、胫后动脉减弱或消失。若寒化为热，则干枯坏死，色黑如漆，多成干性坏疽。如有继发感染亦可转变为湿性坏疽。

(2) 火毒伤阴者: 发病时多有烦躁口渴，患肢麻木疼痛，严重时痛如烫泼火烧，疼痛难忍；患者常握足动摇，通霄达旦，抑或垂足而眠；形体消瘦，精神萎靡，纳呆、口干，身有发热；局部皮色潮红或紫暗，继则变黑出现黄泡，周围皮肤肿胀紫暗（或蓝靛色），状如煮熟之红枣；溃后脓液紫暗，肉芽紫褐不鲜，筋骨暴露，其臭难闻；多伴有游走性血栓性浅静脉炎；足背动脉、胫后动脉消失。如湿性坏死，腐烂延开，五趾相染，逐节脱落，上攻足背，渐至踝骨，日久难敛。

2. 临床分期

为了便于临床诊断和辨别病情轻重，根据本病发展过程，临床分为以下 3 期:

第 1 期（局部缺血期）: 患肢麻木，发凉，怕冷，酸胀疼痛，有沉重感，间歇性跛行，患肢动脉搏动微弱或消失。可有游走性血栓性浅静脉炎，表现为血液循环机能不全之现象。

第 2 期（营养障碍期）: 患肢动脉搏动消失。局部麻木，酸痛，发凉，怕冷，间歇性跛行加重，并有静止痛，患肢皮肤颜色常呈潮红色、紫红色或苍黄色，足部皮肤干燥、脱屑，趾甲生长缓慢，增厚变形，汗毛脱落，小腿肌肉有萎缩现象。

第 3 期（坏死期）: 患肢由于严重的血液循环障碍而发生溃

疡或坏疽，但大多数局限在足趾或足部，向上蔓延累及踝关节和小腿的很少见，疼痛剧烈难忍，坏疽的足趾脱落后，溃疡经久不易愈合。根据坏死程度和范围又分为下列3级。

1级坏死：坏死限于趾部。

2级坏死：坏死扩展至趾跖关节以上。

3级坏死：坏死扩至足背部或踝关节以上。

诊断与鉴别诊断

1. 血栓闭塞性脉管炎：以青壮年（20—40岁）男性多见，患者多有吸烟史。病情较长，进展缓慢，患肢持续变冷，肢端疼痛、麻木，间歇性跛行，以后静息痛加剧，严重时发生溃疡或坏疽。足背动脉、胫后动脉减弱或消失，多伴有游走性血栓性浅静脉炎。

2. 闭塞性动脉硬化症：多见于50岁以上男性，常伴有高血压、高血脂症、冠心病或糖尿病。局部症状与体征和血栓闭塞性脉管炎相似，但双下肢常同时发病，病程较短，进展较快，坏疽发生早而广泛，可累及小腿及大腿，疼痛比血栓闭塞性脉管炎轻。颞浅动脉和四肢未受累的动脉多弦硬、扭曲。眼底视网膜动脉硬化。X线片可示患肢动脉壁内有钙化阴影。

3. 肢端动脉痉挛症（雷诺氏病）：多发于青壮年女性，常对称性、阵发性发病，手指发病较足趾为多。遇冷或情绪激动时，则指（趾）苍白、青紫、潮红三色改变，发作过后恢复正常。患肢动脉搏动正常，个别病例在晚期可发生指端局限性表浅溃疡。

4. 多发性大动脉炎：患者多为青少年女性。在上肢常见动脉搏动消失，血压测不到；在下肢表现为肢体发凉、无力、间歇性跛行。但疼痛症状不多见，皮色改变不明显。在活动期伴有发热、心悸、疲劳或关节痛等。化验血沉加快，检查时，常在颈部、腹部、背部听到血管杂音。

5. 糖尿病性坏疽：患者有糖尿病史并常伴有动脉硬化。患肢发凉、麻木、疼痛、间歇性跛行，动脉搏动减弱或消失，可并

发下肢坏疽，坏疽多为湿性，范围较大，发展迅速。化验血糖增高，尿糖阳性。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 虚寒型

主证：患肢发凉，触之如冰，皮色苍白或潮红，麻木，酸胀，呈间歇性跛行，遇冷加重，得暖缓解，无溃疡或坏疽，舌淡苔薄白，脉沉细而迟。

治法：温经散寒，活血通络。

方药：阳和汤 (8)。

熟地 30 克，肉桂 3 克，鹿角胶 10 克，麻黄 1.5 克，白芥子 6 克，炮姜炭 1.5 克，生甘草 3 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：寒甚者，加熟附子 10 克。

有瘀血斑者，加桃仁 10 克，红花 10 克，地龙 10 克，土鳖虫 10 克。

血虚者，加当归 20 克。

气虚者，加生黄芪 30 克，党参 15 克。

上肢发病者，加桂枝 10 克。

下肢发病者，加川牛膝 10 克。

(2) 瘀滞型

主证：患肢畏寒怕冷，麻木、酸胀，有持续性固定性疼痛。局部皮肤潮红、暗红或青紫色，肢端有瘀血斑点，活动后患足则发白或苍黄色，肢体肌肉萎缩，舌质暗红或有瘀斑，苔薄白，脉沉细涩。

治法：活血化瘀，扶正解毒。

方药：活血通痹汤（经验方）。

当归 30 克，赤芍 10 克，桃仁 10 克，丹参 30 克，金银花 30 克，生黄芪 15 克，藏红花 3 克，牛膝 10 克，制乳香 10 克，

制没药 10 克，山甲珠 10 克，延胡索 10 克，生甘草 3 克，蜈蚣 2 条。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 湿热型

主证：患肢喜冷怕热，小腿酸胀疼痛，肢体沉重乏力，常伴有游走性血栓性浅静脉炎。若有溃疡、坏疽，则易糜烂、渗液。患者面色灰滞或苍黄，胸闷，纳呆，口渴不欲饮，小便短黄，舌苔黄腻，脉象滑数。

治法：清热利湿，芳香化浊。

方药：茵陈赤小豆汤（经验方）。

茵陈 24 克，赤小豆 20 克，薏苡仁 30 克，苍术 10 克，黄柏 10 克，苦参 12 克，木防已 10 克，泽泻 10 克，山栀子 10 克，佩兰 10 克，白蔻 10 克，木通 6 克，生甘草 3 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：患肢热重者，加黄芩 10 克，金银花 30 克。

瘀滞者，加赤芍 15 克，泽兰 15 克，地龙 10 克。

湿重者，加赤茯苓 15 克，车前子 10 克，猪苓 10 克，滑石 12 克。

(4) 热毒型

主证：患肢喜冷怕热，疼痛剧烈，昼轻夜重。肢端出现坏疽或溃疡继发感染，则红肿热痛，脓多，恶臭。可伴有发热或高热，纳呆，口渴欲饮，便秘溲赤，苔黄腻或黑苔，舌质红绛，脉洪数或洪大。

治法：清热解毒，活血养阴。

方药：四红汤（经验方）。

紫参 24 克，丹参 20 克，紫草 6 克，茜草 30 克，金银花 30 克，板蓝根 20 克，蒲公英 30 克，赤芍 12 克，牛膝 10 克，生甘草 3 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：口苦心烦者，加山栀子 10 克，黄芩 10 克；口渴欲饮者，加知母 15 克，生石膏 15。

(5) 气血两虚型

主证：病程久，神疲乏力，心悸，失眠。患肢疼痛较轻，皮肤干燥，肌肉消瘦，若有溃疡，则肉芽灰暗，脓水稀薄，疮口久不愈合，舌淡苔薄白，脉沉细无力。

治法：补益气血，扶正祛邪。

方药：人参养荣汤（67）加减。

人参 6 克，黄芪 20 克，当归 15 克，熟地 20 克，白芍 10 克，白术 10 克，茯苓 10 克，肉桂 6 克，陈皮 10 克，远志 10 克，牛膝 10 克，甘草 3 克，石斛 12 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

2. 外治法

(1) 未溃期：可用生姜 120 克，生甘草 60 克，葱根 7 个，煎汤待温热后浸泡患肢，每日 1—2 次。局部紫暗疼痛者，用生甘草粉加麻油调涂患处，敷药厚度约 0.2 厘米，隔日换药 1 次。

(2) 溃后期：疮口可用黄连膏纱布（黄连 10 克，麻油 260 克，当归 15 克，黄柏 10 克，生地黄 30 克，姜黄 10 克，黄蜡 12 克。除黄蜡外，将其他药物入油内浸泡 1 日后，用文火熬至药枯，去渣滤清，再入黄蜡溶化搅匀，加纱布块经高压灭菌即成，或紫草膏纱布（紫草 120 克，当归 60 克，红花 30 克，生地黄 120 克，大黄 30 克，白芷 30 克，黄柏 30 克，麻油 1000 克，黄蜡 240 克，冰片粉 10 克。其制法同黄连膏纱布，但冰片勿入油内熬，待药油黄蜡溶化后入）换药，每日或间日 1 次。若疮面肉芽不鲜，生长迟缓，用生肌玉红膏油纱布（22）换药。疮面形成脓痂，痂下积脓者，可剪去脓痂换药。在感染尚未控制，炎症还未消退，好坏组织分界不明显时，不可过早地拔甲，清除疮面，切除坏疽等，以免导致病情加重。

验方

1. 四妙勇安汤（68）

玄参 45 克，金银花 45 克，当归 30 克，生甘草 30 克。水煎

两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。该方有清热解毒、活血养阴作用。对血栓闭塞性脉管炎溃烂，红肿热痛，烦热口渴有疗效。

2. 顾步汤（69）

生黄芪 30 克，人参 10 克，当归 30 克，金银花 90 克，石斛 30 克，牛膝 30 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。该方有益气养阴、清热活血作用。适用于血栓闭塞性脉管炎肢端紫黑，溃烂，肿痛，口干，乏力者。

3. 丹参注射液（41）16 毫升，加入 5—10% 葡萄糖溶液 500 毫升，静脉滴注，每日 1 次，2 周为 1 疗程。

6.2 闭塞性动脉硬化症

本病属于中医学"脱疽"的范畴，是由动脉粥样硬化病变或继发的血栓而引起的动脉闭塞性疾病。多见于 50 岁以上的男性，常伴有高血压，高血脂症，冠心病和糖尿病，且发病不分季节，下肢发病多于上肢并可发生肢体坏疽。

病因病机

本病的病因病机与血栓闭塞性脉管炎大致相同，但本病主要由于膏粱厚味，损伤脾胃，湿热内生，或纵欲劳心过度，心肾亏损，以致脏腑功能失调，气血凝滞，经脉瘀阻而成。

临床表现

1. 早期：患肢发凉怕冷，麻木酸胀，疼痛或灼热，皮肤苍白或潮红，并有轻度间歇性跛行。可伴有口渴，纳食不香，足背动脉，胫后动脉搏动减弱。

2. 早期：病情发展较快，患肢肌肉消瘦，皮肤干燥，疼痛较轻，足趾或小腿出现瘀血斑点，继则皮色青紫、紫暗或变黑，腐烂、坏死和脱落，坏疽可上至足面，甚至小腿或大腿。伴有高热，神志恍惚，饮食减少。患肢股动脉、腘动脉、足背动脉、胫后动脉搏动减弱或消失。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 血瘀型

主证：患肢发凉怕冷，麻木酸胀，疼痛，肢端有瘀血斑点，皮肤苍白或潮红。口渴、纳呆。舌边有瘀血斑，苔白，脉弦涩。本型多属早、中期。

治法：养阴清热，活血通脉。

方药：四妙勇安汤（68）加味。

玄参 30 克，金银花 45 克，当归 30 克，生甘草 10 克，板蓝根 15 克，川牛膝 10 克，赤芍 15 克，生山楂 10 克，地龙 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(2) 湿热下注型

主证：患肢肿胀，畏热喜凉，局部灼热，疼痛，脓多。伴有高热，口渴不欲饮，纳呆，小便黄。舌苔黄腻，脉滑数。本型属坏疽继发感染。

治法：清热利湿，活血通络。

方药：茵陈赤小豆汤（经验方）。

茵陈 24 克，赤小豆 20 克，薏苡仁 30 克，苍术 10 克，黄柏 10 克，苦参 12 克，木防已 10 克，泽泻 10 克，山栀子 10 克，佩兰 10 克，白蔻 10 克，木通 6 克，生甘草 3 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：患肢热重、紫红，加忍冬藤 30 克，泽兰 15 克，赤芍 15 克。

(3) 伴糖尿病坏疽型

主证：患趾肿胀紫暗，继起脓疱，姆趾多见，腐烂延开，五趾相染，上攻足面，灼热肿痛。伴有发热，多吃，多饮，多尿。舌红无苔，脉弦数无力或细数。

治法：滋阴降火，解毒化瘀。

方药：知柏地黄汤（70）加味。

熟地 24 克，淮山药 12 克，山萸肉 12 克，粉丹皮 10 克，茯苓 10 克，泽泻 10 克，知母 12 克，黄柏 10 克，金银花 30 克，连翘 15 克，紫花地丁 20 克，蒲公英 30 克，川牛膝 12 克，赤芍 15 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

2. 外治法

参照血栓闭塞性脉管炎外治法。

6.3 肢端动脉痉挛症

本病又称"雷诺氏病"，多见于青壮年女性。往往因情绪激动或受寒冷刺激后，对称性阵发性指（趾）皮肤颜色突然苍白，继则青紫，然后潮红，并有疼痛、麻木等感觉，多发于上肢，下肢少见。

病因病机

肝气不舒，肝阴不足，筋失所养，血不荣筋，则肢体麻木，拘急；血不充沛，气滞不畅，气血不得充盈，则手指苍白；脾肾阳虚，不能温煦，则手足逆冷；寒为阴邪，凝滞脉络，则肢端青紫；营卫不和，卫气不固，故见皮肤潮红；气滞则血瘀，血瘀则不通，不通则痛；气血凝滞，筋脉失养，则皮肤枯槁，肌肉萎缩，甚则溃烂。总之，肝阴不足，脾肾阳虚，气血凝滞，是本病之本；寒冷刺激的外界因素是本病之标。

临床表现

患者常在急怒恚愤，或受寒冷后，呈对称性阵发性指（趾）皮肤颜色改变。初起苍白，继则青紫，再渐潮红 3 个阶段后，恢复正常。发作时，伴有手指发凉、麻木、感觉迟纯，得暖则缓解，遇冷则加重。重则肢端肿胀，皮肤干燥，肌肉消瘦，变细而尖小，或见浅小溃疡。但患肢动脉搏动正常。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 阴寒型

主证：肢端发凉，遇冷则对称性发生肢端皮肤颜色改变，舌苔薄白，脉象沉细。

治法：温经散寒，活血通脉。

方药：当归四逆汤。

当归 10 克，芍药 10 克，桂枝 6 克，细辛 3 克，炙甘草 4.5 克，通草 4.5 克，大枣 8 枚。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：寒甚者，加熟附子 10 克，炮姜 10 克。

拘急者，加钩藤 15 克，全蝎 10 克。

(2) 郁滞型

主证：情志抑郁或情绪激动后，肢端即发生对称性皮肤颜色变化，伴肿胀、刺痛，舌质有瘀血斑点，脉象沉弦涩。

治法：疏肝解郁，祛瘀通脉。

方药：逍遥散 (7) 加味。

柴胡 10 克，白芍 10 克，茯苓 12 克，白术 10 克，当归 10 克，薄荷 1.5 克，炙甘草 4.5 克，煨姜 3 片，桃仁 10 克，红花 10 克，鸡血藤 15 克，桂枝 10 克，地龙 10 克，土鳖虫 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 气血两虚型

主证：患肢苍白、麻木、变色，溃疡表浅，肉芽淡白，生长迟缓，舌质淡红，脉细无力。

治法：补气养血，活血通脉。

方药：人参养荣汤 (67) 加减。

人参 6 克，白术 10 克，茯苓 10 克，白芍 10 克，陈皮 10 克，远志 10 克，肉桂 6 克，当归 20 克，熟地 20 克，黄芪 30 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：上肢发病者，去肉桂加桂枝 10 克。

下肢发病者，加牛膝 10 克。

肝阴不足者，加山萸肉 12 克，女贞子 15 克。

2. 外治法

参照血栓闭塞性脉管炎外治法。

6.4 多发性大动脉炎

多发性大动脉炎亦称无脉病，是主动脉及其分支的慢性、进行性炎症和狭窄性疾病，可累及四肢动脉，并伴有系统性表现。由于本病发展缓慢，在发生动脉狭窄、闭塞的同时，充分侧枝循环已经形成，因此临床上不发生坏疽。此病多见于青年女性，上肢发病者多于下肢。根据本病的证候特点，属于中医的"脉痹"范畴。

病因病机

脾肾阳虚，则阳气不足，血行不畅；气血不足，则血脉不得充盈，阳气无力外达；肝肾阴虚，则筋脉失养；血行受阻，气行不利，导致血脉瘀滞而发病。

临床表现

局部症状和体征出现前数周或数月，患者多有疲劳，发热，心悸，纳呆等。局部症状和体征出现后，全身症状逐渐减轻或消失。由于病变的部位不同，肢体缺血表现又不相同。上肢无脉症类型，多见上肢容易疲劳，疼痛，麻凉，并有眩晕，头痛，视力障碍，单侧或双侧动脉搏动减弱或消失，上肢血压测不出或明显降低，颈部两侧可听到血管杂音；下肢无脉症类型，多见下肢麻凉，疼痛，无力，间歇性跛行，动脉搏动减弱或消失，下肢血压测不出或明显降低，而上肢血压可增高，在腹部或腰背部可听到血管杂音。化验检查，轻度贫血，白细胞中性增高，血沉增快等，可作为病情活动期的指标。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 脾肾阳虚型

主证：肢体酸软，凉麻，乏力，畏寒喜暖，神疲倦怠，气短纳呆，舌淡苔白，脉沉细或微细欲绝。

治法：温补脾肾，温经通脉。

方药：阳和汤（8）加减。

熟地30克，干姜10克，桂枝10克，麻黄1.5克，白芥子6克，鹿角胶10克，熟附子10克，当归15克，鸡血藤15克，川芎10克，生甘草3克。水煎两次，早晚分服，每日1剂。

(2) 气血两虚型

主证：肢体麻木，发凉，乏力，疼痛，面色不华，气短懒言，夜不安寐，舌淡苔白，脉细微或无脉。

治法：大补气血，以通血脉。

方药：顾步汤（69）加减。

生黄芪30克，熟地30克，人参10克，金银花60克，赤芍12克，川芎10克，丹参30克，鸡血藤15克，当归15克。水煎两次，早晚分服。

加减：上肢发病，加片姜黄10克；下肢发病，加牛膝15克。

(3) 肝肾阴虚型

主证：患肢酸软，低热，视力障碍，眩晕耳鸣，健忘，失眠，舌质红，苔薄白，脉沉细或无脉。

治法：滋补肝肾，以养其阴。

方药：六味地黄汤（12）加味。

熟地30克，山茱萸10克，茯苓10克，泽泻10克，丹皮10克，山药10克，枸杞10克，女贞子15克，怀牛膝10克，鳖甲10克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

2. 针刺疗法

取穴：上肢无脉症类型取内关、太渊、尺泽为主穴，配曲池、合谷、通里、肩井；下肢无脉症类型取足三里、三阴交、阳陵泉、复溜为主穴，配太溪、承山。

手法：强刺激

3. 其他疗法

丹参注射液（98）16毫升，加入10%葡萄糖溶液500毫升中，静脉点滴，每日1次，2周为1疗程。

6.5 静脉血栓形成和血栓性静脉炎

本病是指静脉壁内由于各种因素而致的炎症反应，同时伴有静脉血栓形成的血管疾病。发生于浅组静脉者，称为血栓性静脉炎，多见于四肢、胸、腹浅静脉；发生于深组静脉者，称为深静脉血栓形成，多见于下肢深静脉和盆腔静脉，上腔和下腔静脉也可发生，但极少见。血栓性静脉炎的症状和体征较轻；深静脉血栓形成的症状和体征较严重，有的栓脱落可导致肺栓塞严重并发症。根据本病的主要症状和特征，属于中医的"恶脉"，"痃病"等范畴。

病因病机

多由湿热蕴结或寒湿凝滞阻于脉络之间，致血液回流不畅，瘀血留滞于脉中致脉络阻塞不通而成。如久处潮湿之地，外感湿邪，湿邪阻滞脉络，久则生热，或由湿热积毒下注脉络，湿热搏结，致气血瘀滞；若脾虚失运，痰湿内生，湿性下趋，复感寒邪，凝滞脉络，也可致气血瘀阻；产后，术后，外伤，感染等，或长期卧床，久卧伤气，均使气滞血瘀，阻塞脉络。总之，湿邪是其主因，瘀阻脉络是其主要病机。

临床表现

1. 血栓性静脉炎

急性期静脉压痛明显，可有发热等其它全身症状，一般1—3周左右可逐渐消退。慢性期遗留索条状物。如反复发作，病变静脉周围皮肤色素沉着，但无全身症状。由于发病部位不同，临床表现亦有区别。

（1）肢体血栓性浅静脉炎：肢体疼痛，病变部位可触及一索条状物或结节，压痛，肿胀，发红、较硬。一般患肢无肿胀。炎症消退后留有索条状物，质硬，伴有皮肤色素沉着。特点是数条

静脉发炎。

(2) 胸腹壁血栓性浅静脉炎：多在单侧胸腹壁皮下出现一索条状肿物，长达十至数十厘米，轻度刺痛，活动时有牵掣痛，用手按压索条状物两端，皮肤上可出现1条凹陷的浅沟。

(3) 游走性血栓性浅静脉炎：多发生在下肢浅静脉，病变的浅静脉有节段性的红、热、痛的结节以及红斑或硬性索状物。特点是此起彼伏，游走不定，炎症消退后，皮肤遗留色素沉着及索状物或硬性结节。

2. 深静脉血栓形成：患肢广泛肿胀、疼痛、沉重不适，活动后加重，小腿肌饱满紧韧，将患侧足背背曲或挤压小腿肚时疼痛明显。肤色不变或暗红。在发病初期，可有发热不适等全身症状。有的患肢皮肤温度偏高，或因动脉痉挛而患肢短时间发凉。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 湿热型

主证：患肢肿胀疼痛、发热、皮肤暗红，压痛，喜凉恶热，伴胸闷，纳呆，微恶寒发热，口渴不欲饮，溲赤短少，舌苔黄腻或厚腻，脉滑数。

治法：清热利湿，解毒通络。

方药：茵陈赤小豆汤（经验方）。

茵陈24克，赤小豆20克，薏苡仁30克，苍术10克，黄柏10克，苦参12克，木防己10克，泽泻10克，山栀子10克，佩兰10克，白蔻10克，川牛膝10克，木通6克，生甘草3克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：肿胀热痛明显者，加蒲公英30克，紫花地丁20克。

肿胀减轻，疼痛未减者，加赤芍15克，泽兰15克，地龙10克，忍冬藤20克。

(2) 寒湿型

主证：肢体肿胀，朝轻暮重，畏寒怕冷，皮色不变，肌肤紧

韧，按之凹陷，腿酸沉重，食欲不振，舌苔白或白腻，脉细或沉细。

治法：散寒化湿，活营通络。

方药 1：萆薢化毒汤（71）加减。

萆薢30 克，当归尾 15 克，牛膝 10 克，苍术 10 克，木瓜 10 克，薏苡仁 30 克，秦艽 10 克，桂枝 10 克，桃仁 10 克，赤芍 15 克，鸡血藤 15 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

方药 2：独活寄生汤（72）加减。

独活 10 克，川芎 10 克，桂枝 10 克，秦艽 10 克，防风 10 克、猪苓 15 克，泽泻 15 克，威灵仙 15 克，赤芍 15 克，当归 15 克，川牛膝 12 克，苍术 12 克，薏苡仁 30 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 血瘀型

主证：肢体肿胀较重，行走时加剧，休息后肿胀减轻，皮色略异或暗红，小腿肚挤压刺痛或酸痛，舌有瘀血斑点、苔白，脉沉弦或沉涩。

治法：活血化瘀，疏通血脉。

方药：活血通脉饮（73）。

丹参 30 克，金银花 30 克，赤芍 30 克，土茯苓 30 克，当归 15 克，川芎 15 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：患肢肿胀明显者，加泽兰 15 克，薏苡仁 20 克。

(4) 脾虚型

主证：肢体肿胀，按之凹陷，皮色白或苍黄，伴面黄，神疲倦怠，沉重乏力，不思饮食，舌淡胖，苔白，脉虚无力。

治法：温阳健脾，利湿通络。

方药：温阳健脾汤。

黄芪 15 克，党参 15 克，白术 15 克，当归 15 克，山药 15 克，怀牛膝 15 克，鸡血藤 15 克，丹参 15 克，熟附子 10 克，干姜 10 克，陈皮 10 克，木瓜 10 克，薏苡仁 30 克，茯苓 30 克。

水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

(5) 肝经郁热型

主证：胸腹壁部有条索状肿物，牵掣、隐痛，压痛，急性期局部皮肤微红，可有轻度发热，口干苦，全身不适等。舌苔黄腻，脉弦数。

治法：清肝解郁，活血消肿。

方药：柴胡清肝汤（38）。

柴胡10克，当归15克，赤芍15克，生地黄15克，川芎10克，栀子10克，黄芩10克，连翘15克，花粉10克，防风10克，牛蒡子10克，生甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

2. 外治法

(1) 血栓性浅静脉炎急性期，宜清热解毒，消肿止痛。用消炎软膏（74）（芙蓉叶120克，大黄30克，生南星12克，升麻15克，黄柏60克。共研细末，加70%的凡士林调成软膏）外敷患部，每日换药1次。或大青膏（18）外敷，每日1次。

(2) 血栓性浅静脉炎和血栓性深静脉炎慢性期，宜活血通络，疏风散结。用熏洗药方（当归尾12克，白芷10克，姜活10克，独活10克，桃仁10克，红花12克，海桐皮10克，威灵仙12克，生艾叶15克，生姜60克）煎汤，乘热先熏后洗，每日1次。

7 男性前阴病

外科男性前阴病包括生殖器及部分泌尿系统疾病。生殖器与泌尿系统统属中医的肾与膀胱的范畴。

7.1 龟头包皮炎

本病多因包茎或包皮过长，包皮囊内积垢不洁，细菌繁殖引起龟头与包皮同时发炎。属于中医的"疳疮"范畴。

病因病机

阴茎属肝，肾主2阴。急性期内因为肝经湿热循经下注，外因为包皮过长，局部不洁，龟头擦伤，湿热毒邪乘机入侵，内外合邪，结于前阴，蕴热腐脓而成。如肝经湿热郁久化火，下灼肾阴，后期也可出现肝肾阴虚证候。

临床表现

龟头及包皮内膜发红、潮湿、糜烂，甚则形成浅小溃疡，有乳白色脓性分泌物；包皮肿胀发热，轻度痛痒；腹股沟淋巴结多肿大压痛。一般无全身症状，严重者可有恶寒发热，舌苔黄腻，脉弦滑数等。久病失治，可引起包皮龟头部粘连，包皮不能上翻，发生尿道外口狭窄，排尿困难。

鉴别诊断

1. 软下疳

软下疳是性病之一，病原菌是嗜血链杆菌。在不洁性交后数天内，多在龟头部发生红色丘疹，继则变成脓疱、溃疡。溃疡特点是：数目多，表浅，边缘不整齐，红肿明显，质软，有污秽坏死分泌物，疼痛剧烈。双侧腹股沟淋巴结肿大，容易化脓溃破，形成"鱼口"状溃疡。

2. 硬下疳

本病是后天梅毒的早期表现，病原菌是苍白螺旋体。龟头溃疡特点是：只有一个，溃疡边缘整齐，基底平坦，触之硬如软骨，周围无明显红肿，不痒不痛。双侧腹股沟淋巴结肿大，但不化脓破溃。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 急性期

主证：阴茎龟头肿痛热痒，甚则溃烂有脓性分泌物；重者可伴有恶寒发热，小便黄赤，舌苔黄腻，脉弦滑数。

治法：清肝利湿解毒。

方药：龙胆泻肝汤（40）加减。

龙胆草 10 克，柴胡 10 克，川牛膝 10 克，黄柏 10 克，赤芍 10 克，地肤子 10 克，车前子 10 克，生地 15 克，金银花 30 克，土茯苓 30 克，木通 6 克，生甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。轻症者，可服龙胆泻肝丸，每次服 6 克，日 2—3 次，温开水送下。

(2) 慢性期

主证：溃疡面肉芽紫红，生长迟缓；伴腰膝酸软，头晕目眩，舌红少苔，脉细微数的为肝肾阴虚证。或溃疡面肉芽新鲜，有少许脓性分泌物，但无全身不适症状。

治法：前者以滋养肝肾为主，后者以外治法为主。

方药：六味地黄丸（12）或杞菊地黄丸（75），每次服 10 克，日 3 次，温开水送下。

2. 外治法

(1) 急性期：可用解毒洗药（28）煎汤趁热熏洗患部，每次 20 分钟，日 2 次。有溃疡流脓者，应先用上药熏洗后，撒布少许牛黄散（95）（牛黄 0.3 克，黄连 10 克，煅石决明 3 克，制乳香 3 克，制没药 3 克，煅牡蛎 3 克，煅龙骨 3 克，熊胆 1.5 克，

轻粉 1.5 克。共研极细末备用)，盖贴大黄油纱布 (21)。

(2) 慢性期：用慢性溃疡洗药 (29) 熏洗后，外撒生肌散 (26)，盖贴生肌玉红膏油纱布 (22)。如溃疡面肉芽新鲜，脓腐已净，单用大黄油纱布 (21) 或生肌玉红膏油纱布 (22) 换药。

(3) 手术治疗：包皮过长者，当炎症消退后，应施行包皮环切术。

7.2 阴茎硬结症

阴茎硬结症即阴茎海绵体纤维化，是海绵体白膜与阴茎筋膜之间产生纤维性硬结所致。

病因病机

由于肝经气滞血瘀，脾失健运，痰浊内生，血瘀痰浊下注宗筋，凝结而成。因足少阴之筋结于阴器，故有时也可呈现肝肾阴虚证候。

临床表现

多见于中年时期。在阴茎背侧可触及硬索状或斑块状硬结，边界清楚，多数不可推动；平时无异常感觉，阴茎勃起时疼痛、弯曲，严重者可影响性生活，但不影响排尿，不会破溃；X 线检查可发现钙化或骨化阴影。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 气滞血瘀痰凝证

主证：阴茎结块较硬，劳累则痛，易怒，情绪急躁，舌苔白，脉弦。

治法：理气活血，化痰散结。

方药：化坚散结汤 (经验方)。

柴胡 10 克，香附 10 克，昆布 20 克，海藻 20 克，牛膝 15 克，赤芍 15 克，三棱 10 克，莪术 10 克，僵蚕 10 克，半夏 10 克，皂角刺 10 克，白芥子 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1

剂。

(2) 肝肾阴虚证

主证：阴茎结块，皮肤微红，微痛，腰腿酸软，头晕目眩，舌微红少苔，脉细微数。

治法：滋阴清热，化痰散结。

方药：六味地黄汤（12）加味。

熟地30克，山茱萸12克，粉丹皮10克，泽泻10克，茯苓12克，山药12克，牛膝12克，僵蚕10克，半夏10克，浙贝母10克，黄柏6克，陈皮10克，甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

在服汤药同时，可配合内服四虫片（51）（蜈蚣、全蝎、地龙、土鳖虫各等份，共研细末，制成0.3克片剂）5—10片，或散结片（58）6—8片，每日3次。

2. 外治法

可将阳和解凝膏（15）剪成小块贴局部，每周换贴1次。或用音频理疗，每周1—2次，10次为1疗程。

7.3 鞘膜积液

在正常情况下，睾丸鞘膜囊内的液体分泌与吸收维持相对的平衡，当某种致病因素导致囊内分泌过多或吸收减少时，则会形成鞘膜积液。该病分先天性与继发性两种，前者多见于婴幼儿，后者多见于成人，是阴囊部常见的疾病之一，属于中医的"水疝"范畴。

病因病机

婴幼儿多因先天不足，肾的气化不全，水湿内停，水液集注囊内而成。成人多因肾经寒湿（过劳汗出当雨，久坐湿地，寒湿外入，水液不行），肝经湿热，瘀血络阻（外伤血瘀络阻，水液不行），以致水湿或湿热下注阴囊不散而成。

临床表现

多单侧阴囊逐渐增大，肿块一般为卵圆形，表面光滑，有囊性感，不痛，较大时有下坠感，过大时阴茎陷入皮肤之内，可使排尿和性生活发生困难。检查：睾丸和附睾因被积液包围而不能触及，精索鞘膜积液则可触及睾丸，因肿块在睾丸之上，除先天性鞘膜积液在卧位时逐渐缩小至完全消失外，一般鞘膜积液并不因体位不同而有所改变。其囊性肿块透光试验阳性。

鉴别诊断

1. 腹股沟斜疝（狐疝）

肿物能还纳腹腔，咳嗽时有冲击感，无波动，可触及睾丸，透光试验阴性。

2. 先天性鞘膜积液

除透光试验阳性外，其他特点均与疝相同。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 婴幼儿鞘膜积液

主证：畏寒肢冷，面色苍白，少气懒言，小便频数，舌淡苔白，脉沉细。

治法：温肾通阳，化气行水。

方药：济生肾气丸（76），1—3克，白开水送下，每日2—3次。

(2) 成年人鞘膜积液

①肾虚寒湿证

主证：阴囊湿冷，腰膝冷痛，小便清长，舌淡苔白腻，脉沉细。

治法：温肾散寒，利水消肿。

方药：宝鉴当归四逆汤（77）合导气汤（78）加减。

当归尾12克，熟附子10克，小茴香6克，肉桂10克，乌药10克，柴胡10克，赤芍10克，延胡索10克，川楝子10

克，车前子 10 克，赤苓 15 克，泽泻 15 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

②肝经湿热证

主证：阴囊湿热，睾丸及附睾肿痛，小便黄，舌苔黄腻，脉弦滑数。

治法：清肝泻热，利湿消肿。

方药：龙胆泻肝汤（40）。

龙胆草 10 克，黄芩 10 克，栀子 10 克，泽泻 12 克，生地 15 克，柴胡 10 克，车前子 10 克，当归 10 克，生甘草 3 克，木通 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

③瘀血凝结证

主证：阴囊肿痛，皮肤紫暗，透光试验多呈阴性，舌紫苔白，脉弦涩。

治法：活血散瘀，行水消肿。

方药：活血散瘀汤（48）加减。

当归 15 克，赤芍 15 克，桃仁 10 克，川芎 10 克，大黄 6 克，丹皮 10 克，牛膝 12 克，泽兰 15 克，泽泻 15 克，猪苓 15 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

2. 外治法

（1）五倍子 30 克，白矾 15 克，小茴香 10 克。煎汤乘热熏洗患处，每日 2 次。用于婴幼儿鞘膜积液。

（2）硝矾洗药（芒硝 12 克，硼砂 10 克，白矾 10 克。开水冲化，趁热熏洗患处，每日 1 剂，日用两次（凉后加温再用）。用于肝经湿热证的鞘膜积液。

（3）小茴香、橘核各 30 克，研成粗末，炒热后装入布袋内，热熨阴囊，每日 1 次。用于肾虚寒湿证鞘膜积液。

（4）活血止痛散（透骨草 30 克，川楝子 15 克，当归尾 15 克，姜黄 15 克，海桐皮 15 克，威灵仙 15 克，川牛膝 15 克，羌活 15 克，白芷 15 克，苏木 15，五加皮 15 克，红花 15 克，土

茯苓 15 克，川椒 6 克，乳香 6 克）煎汤乘热熏洗患处，每日 2 次。用于瘀血凝结证鞘膜积液。

3. 验方

小茴香 1—3 克（炒黄研面），绿皮鸭蛋 1 个（去壳），食盐少许，花生油适量。以上 4 味放铁锅内炒熟，顿食，日 1 次，7 天为 1 疗程。治婴幼儿鞘膜积液。

4. 手术疗法

对阴囊肿物过大或药物治疗 1 个月无效者，应行手术治疗。

7.4 附睾睾丸炎

本病主要由细菌经输精管感染而引起，多继发于尿道，前列腺或精囊感染，属于中医的“子痈”范畴。

病因病机

因肝经湿热下注，湿热蕴毒瘀滞于经脉，以致气血凝滞于睾丸而成。气血凝滞，郁久化热，可热盛肉腐为脓；气血凝滞不散，日久则转为慢性肿块。

临床表现

急性者发病急、附睾肿胀、疼痛。炎症波及睾丸时则睾丸肿大，阴囊红肿热痛。炎症波及精索时，则牵引少腹疼痛。化脓则阴囊皮肤红肿光亮，中心软而高起，脓肿切开或自溃后，脓出毒泻，症状较快消退，疮口逐渐愈合。可伴有恶寒发热，口渴，溲赤等症。查见附睾睾丸肿大，触痛明显。此病可并发精索炎、睾丸鞘膜积液。慢性者，附睾或睾丸有韧性肿块或硬结，轻压痛，或自觉坠胀冷痛。

鉴别诊断

慢性附睾睾丸炎需与下列疾病鉴别：

1. 附睾结核：本病早期有些症状与急性附睾睾丸炎相似而不易区别。后期附睾尾部或全部形成硬结，并可蔓延到睾丸；硬结压痛不明显，与阴囊皮肤粘连，可有窦道。输精管有串珠状结

节，前列腺和精囊在直肠指检时可触到硬结。

2. 附睾囊肿：位于睾丸的后面，为半透明的肿块，触及较紧张，可发于附睾任何部位。

3. 睾丸肿瘤：睾丸呈无痛性肿大，质地坚实，较重，表面有结节状，失去其固有的弹性，可发生远处淋巴结转移，并发鞘膜积液、阴囊血肿等。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 急性期（湿热下注证）

主证：附睾睾丸阴囊红肿热痛，拒按，伴恶寒发热，口渴，溲黄，便燥，舌苔黄腻，脉弦滑数。

治法：清肝利湿，解毒消肿。

方药：龙胆泻肝汤（40）加减。

龙胆草 10 克，柴胡 10 克，黄芩 10 克，黄柏 10 克，栀子 10 克，泽泻 10 克、橘核 10 克，川牛膝 10 克，赤芍 15 克，紫花地丁 20 克，板蓝根 30 克，金银花 30 克，木通 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

加减：高热不退者，原方柴胡、黄芩均改为 15 克，加连翘 15 克。

大便秘结者，加生大黄（后入）10 克。

肿痛明显者，冲服犀黄丸（79）1.5—3 克。

脓成者，加山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克。

(2) 慢性期（气血瘀结证）

主证：患部有韧性肿块或硬结，压痛轻，伴坠胀，少腹冷痛，劳累或饮食辛辣可使肿痛加重，舌苔白，脉细弦。

治法：疏肝理气，化瘀散结。

方药：枸橘汤（80）加减。

枸橘 10 克，川楝子 10 克，僵蚕 10 克，山甲珠 10 克，橘核 10 克，荔枝核 10 克，山楂核 15 克，牛膝 10 克，乌药 10 克，

柴胡 10 克，夏枯草 15 克，昆布 15 克，赤芍 20 克，小茴香 6 克，熟附子 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。同时可兼服散结片（58）以消肿散结。

2. 外治法

（1）急性期：局部外敷金黄膏（17）、大青膏（18）。脓成应切开引流。溃后按化脓性疾病常规换药。要卧床休息，用布带或阴囊托将阴囊托起。

（2）慢性期：用冲和膏药粉（19）30 克，加开水 300 毫升，浸洗患部，每次 20 分钟，每日 2 次，药液凉后可加温再用。

7.5 附睾结核

本病是常见的生殖系统结核疾病之一，也是体内其他部分结核的继发病，多数是结核杆菌由后尿道经输精管逆流至附睾感染引起。中医近代医家根据流痰（骨与关节结核）一病的性质，称本病为“子痰”。

病因病机

因肝肾亏损，脉络空虚，痰浊乘虚下注，结于睾丸而成。痰浊郁久化热，热盛则肉腐为脓。化脓时因痰浊化热，可出现阴虚内热证候；久则阴虚及阳，也可出现肾阳虚的表现。

临床表现

症状与体征：发病多在 20—35 岁青壮年，病程缓慢，多先从一侧附睾尾部发生一硬结，逐渐扩散到整个附睾及睾丸，硬结压痛不明显，有轻度疼痛或坠胀痛。精索变粗，输精管有串珠状结节，经年累月以后，睾丸肿块与皮肤粘连，肿胀亦渐明显，皮色暗红，形成寒性脓肿。溃后脓液清稀，夹有豆渣样（干酪样）坏死组织，形成窦道不易愈合。初期多无全身症状，成脓和溃后期出现阴虚内热或肾阳虚症状。

2. 检查：直肠指检可发现前列腺轻度肿大而有硬结；血验

淋巴细胞增高，血沉加快；尿液镜检常有红细胞；结核菌素试验多呈阳性。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 初期

主证：肿块不痛或轻度坠胀痛，皮色正常，表面不热，多无明显全身症状，苔白，脉沉细。

治法：补益肝肾，温经通络，化痰散结。

方药：阳和汤（8）加味。

熟地 30 克，麻黄 3 克，鹿角胶 10 克，白芥子 10 克，炮姜炭 6 克，肉桂 6 克，甘草 6 克，怀牛膝 12 克，橘核 10 克，百部 10 克，生牡蛎 20 克，丹参 15 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。可兼服小金丸（57）或四虫片（51）。

(2) 成脓期

主证：阴囊肿大，睾丸肿块与皮肤粘连，皮色暗红，微热，可伴有潮热、盗汗，手足心热，舌红少苔，脉象细数。

治法：滋阴清热，除湿化痰，托里透脓。

方药：滋阴除湿汤（81）加减。

熟地 30 克，柴胡 10 克，黄芩 10 克，地骨皮 10 克，知母 12 克，浙贝母 10 克，泽泻 10 克，当归 12 克，怀牛膝 12 克，生黄芪 20 克，山甲珠 10 克，皂角刺 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 溃后期

①阳虚证

主证：脓稀如痰，疮面肉芽灰暗，面色㿠白，肢冷畏寒，大便溏，小便频，舌质胖嫩，苔白，脉沉细迟。

治法：益气养血，峻补肝肾。

方药：先天大造丸（82）加减。

熟地 30 克，何首乌 12 克，肉苁蓉 10 克，仙茅 10 克，紫河

车粉 3 克（冲），菟丝子 12 克，黄精 15 克，枸杞 10 克，白术 12 克，牛膝 10 克，当归 15 克，党参 15 克，茯苓 12 克，肉桂 3 克，黄芪 30 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。轻者服先天大造丸（82）或右归丸（83）。

②阴虚内热证者，参照脓成期滋阴除湿汤加减治疗。

2. 外治法

(1) 初期用阳和解凝膏（15）敷贴。脓成不能吸收时应切开引流。溃后用提脓祛腐类药换药，但慎用强烈性腐蚀药物。腐脱新肉生长时，用生肌类药换药。

(2) 初期局部也可结合离子透入。患病后用阴囊托将阴囊托起。窦道久治无效者，可行手术治疗。

7.6 慢性前列腺炎

慢性前列腺炎是成年男性极为常见的疾病，远比急性多见。临床表现复杂，且不易治愈。由于尿道中常见白色分泌物溢出，故属于中医的"精浊"范畴。

病因病机

房劳过度，精室空虚，湿热乘机入侵，精被湿热所逼，流注膀胱与尿并出。肾阴亏，相火旺，精室被扰，火郁不散，致精道气血瘀滞而成病。病久阴虚及阳，则出现肾阳不足之证。

临床表现

常见症状是排尿终末或大便用力时有白浊滴出，或平时晨起发现尿道口有白色粘液分泌物。多有尿频、尿热、尿道刺痒，并小腹、腰骶、会阴、睾丸有坠胀痛。可伴有神疲乏力、头晕失眠，性欲减退，遗精、早泄、阳萎、血精等。

检查

直肠指检前列腺可发现增大并有硬结和炎性浸润，反复发作者前列腺均变硬，有不同程度的压痛。按摩取前列腺液涂片检查，见白细胞增多（高倍视野超过 10 个）或有成堆的白细胞，

卵磷脂小体减少。严重者精液化验中可发现大量脓细胞和死精，甚至完全无精子生长。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 湿热证

主证：小便频急，茎中热痛，刺痒，尿色黄浊，尿终末或努挣大便时尿道口有白浊滴出。少腹、会阴部胀痛不适，伴口干苦，舌苔黄腻，脉滑数。

治法：清热利湿，分清化浊。

方药：萆薢分清饮（84）加减。

川萆薢15克，车前子（包）15克，泽兰15克，败酱草30克，蒲公英30克，赤芍15克，黄柏10克，茯苓10克，泽泻10克，川牛膝10克，山栀子10克，木通6克，川楝子10克，甘草6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

(2) 气滞血瘀证

主证：少腹、腰骶、睾丸、会阴部坠隐痛，尿终末滴白少，或有血尿、血精。舌质紫暗或有瘀斑，苔薄白，脉沉涩。

治法：活血化瘀、行气导滞。

方药：前列腺炎汤。

丹参15克，泽兰15克，桃仁10克，红花10克，赤芍15克，乳香10克，没药10克，王不留行12克，青皮10克，川楝子10克，小茴香6克，白芷6克，败酱草30克，蒲公英30克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：血尿、血精者，加汉三七粉3克，分2次冲服。

前列腺质地较硬者，加山甲珠10克，三棱10克，莪术10克。

(3) 阴虚火旺证

主证：腰膝酸软，头晕目眩，失眠多梦，遗精，阳事易兴，尿末、大便或欲念萌动时常有白浊滴出，或有血精。舌红，脉细

数。

治法：滋肾养阴，清泄相火。

方药：知柏地黄汤（70）合萆薢分清饮（84）加减。

熟地 30 克，泽泻 15 克，萆薢 15 克，芡实 15 克，山茱萸 12 克、知母 12 克，茯苓 10 克，丹皮 10 克，黄柏 10 克，石菖蒲 10 克，车前子（包）10 克，牛膝 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(4) 肾阳不足证

主证：腰膝酸冷，阳萎、早泄，遗精，尿频，头晕，稍劳则白浊溢出，舌质胖嫩苔白，脉沉细。

治法：补肾助阳，固精止浊。

方药：金锁固精丸（85）合右归丸（83）加减。

沙苑蒺藜 30 克，熟地 30 克，芡实 30 克，煅龙骨 15 克，煅牡蛎 15 克，山茱萸 15 克，枸杞子 12 克，怀牛膝 12 克，杜仲炭 12 克，菟丝子 12 克，制附子 10 克，肉桂 10 克，鹿角胶 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

2. 外治法

(1) 湿热证用解毒洗药（28），气滞血瘀证用活血止痛散(86)，煎汤乘热坐浴会阴部，每日 2 次，每次 30 分钟。

(2) 用前列腺按摩术，使前列腺内的感染物质排出，促进炎症吸收。一般每周按压 1 次。

(3) 理疗、局部超短波透热，或局部有效抗生素离子透入。

7.7 前列腺增生症

前列腺增生症亦称前列腺肥大，是老年男性常见病。临床上以尿频，排尿困难，尿潴留为其主要症状。属于中医的"癃闭"范畴。

病因病机

"膀胱者，州都之官，津液藏焉，气化则能出矣。""膀胱不利

为癃"，故本病主要病变在膀胱。然正常人的小便通畅，有赖于三焦气化的正常，而三焦气化主要依靠肺脾肾3脏来维持。若上焦肺失肃降，不能通调水道，下输膀胱；或中焦脾胃功能失调，湿热蕴积，下注膀胱，气化不利，或脾气虚弱，中气下陷，膀胱失约；或下焦肾气亏损，阴阳失调，气化功能失常等。均可导致尿闭、滞涩、遗尿、失禁等症。此外，下焦蓄血，瘀阻膀胱，水道闭塞，亦可发生尿闭等症。

临床表现

起病缓慢。尿频为早期症状，尤以夜间明显，继之小便出困难，排尿时需等待较长时间，末尿点滴而出，有尿意不尽之感。因每次不能将尿排净，故有分段排尿现象。随着梗阻加重而排尿费力，尿的射程变短，尿线变细，残余尿量逐渐增多，膀胱经常膨胀即发生慢性尿潴留，以致尿液自行溢出（假性尿失禁）或夜间遗尿。由于腺体表面曲张的静脉破裂，可偶有大量血尿。在病变过程中，常因劳累，受寒，房劳，过食辛辣刺激食物或膀胱继发感染和合并结石。可引起前列腺和膀胱颈部充血，出现急性尿潴留或膀胱刺激症状，可伴有血压升高，乏力，头晕目眩，食欲减退等。并合并痔，疝，脱肛，便血等。

诊断

直肠检查是简单而重要的方法，多数病例结合病史即可作出诊断。增生的前列腺表面光滑边界清楚，中等硬度、有弹性，中央沟变浅甚至消失，有时不能触及上缘，多数情况是侧叶和中叶增生，指检时都有不同程度的增大。但若增生的前列腺主要突入膀胱或增生很少，指检可无明显的前列腺增大，此时应结合病史及其他检查进行诊断。

辨证论治

本病以尿闭，淋漓不爽，用力努挣为实证；小便失禁或遗尿为虚证。暴闭为实，久闭为虚。实证以通利为主，虚证以补益为宜。

1. 内治法

(1) 肺失治节，水道不利证

主证：小便不畅，甚至点滴不通，兼见咽干口燥，咳嗽痰喘，舌苔薄黄或白，脉数。

治法：开泄肺气，清热利水。

方药：黄芩清肺饮（87）加味。

黄芩12克，桑白皮12克，麦冬12克，山栀子10克，木通10克，桔梗10克，杏仁10克，车前子（包）15克，茯苓12克，白茅根30克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

(2) 湿热下注，膀胱滞涩证

主证：小便滞涩不爽，尿黄热，茎中痒痛，甚至尿闭，小腹急胀，舌红苔黄腻，脉滑数。

治法：清利膀胱湿热。

方药：八正散（88）加减。

萹蓄15克，瞿麦15克，车前子（包）15克，海金砂15克，石苇15克，蒲公英30克，金钱草30克，黄柏10克，木通10克，山栀子10克，大黄10克，牛膝10克，甘草梢10克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

(3) 中气下陷，膀胱失约证

主证：小便失禁或遗尿，精神倦怠，少气懒言，面色少华，舌淡苔白，脉细弱。

治法：补中益气，制约膀胱。

方药：补中益气汤（89）加味。

黄芪30克，党参15克，白术12克，当归12克，陈皮10克，柴胡10克，升麻10克，甘草6克，金樱子15克，益智仁15克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

(4) 肾阴不足，水液不利证

主证：小便频数，淋漓不尽，伴头晕目眩，腰膝酸软，多梦失眠。阴虚有热者，舌红咽干，尿黄而热，脉细数。

治法：滋肾养阴，清利膀胱。

方药：知柏地黄汤（70）加味。

知母 12 克，黄柏 12 克，熟地 20 克，泽泻 12 克，茯苓 10 克，丹皮 10 克，山药 12 克，山茱萸 10 克，瞿麦 15 克，萹蓄 15 克，牛膝 10 克，车前子（包）10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(5) 肾阳不足，气化无权证

主证：小便不通或点滴不爽，面色㿠白，腰膝酸冷，舌淡苔白，脉沉细而迟弱。

治法：温补肾阳，通窍利水。

方药：济生肾气丸（76）加减。

熟地 20 克，山药 15 克，茯苓 15 克，车前子（包）15 克，泽泻 12 克，熟附子 10 克，肉桂 10 克，怀牛膝 10 克，肉苁蓉 10 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(6) 下焦蓄血，瘀阻膀胱证

主证：小便努挣方出或点滴全无，会阴、小腹胀痛，偶有血尿或血精。舌质紫暗或有瘀斑，脉细弦涩。

治法：活血散结，通利膀胱。

方药：（经验方）

昆布 20 克，海藻 20 克，夏枯草 15 克，熟地 15 克，马鞭草 15 克，萹蓄 15 克，瞿麦 15 克，泽兰 15 克，三棱 10 克，莪术 10 克，山甲珠 10 克，王不留行 10 克，牛膝 10 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

2. 外治法

(1) 外敷法：食盐 250 克，炒热，布包熨小腹部，冷后炒热再用。每次 30 分钟，每日 2 次。

(2) 推拿疗法：患者取仰卧位，将下肢伸直并稍向外展外旋。一般推左侧箕门穴（大腿之内侧，自腹股沟韧带以下至膝关节以上区域），如果尿潴留时间长久膀胱胀满者，可由两人同时

推左右箕门穴。术者自下而上做单向中速度均匀有力的推拿，一般推 1000 下。

(3) 针刺疗法：针刺中极，三阴交，阴陵泉，膀胱俞等穴。体虚者可灸关元，气海穴。

(4) 导尿：经上法治疗无效，在无菌操作下、放入导尿管引流尿液。

(5) 手术疗法：经非手术疗法无效者，应考虑手术治疗。

8 其他外科疾病

8.1 烧伤

由于火焰、热水、热气、热油或其他高温液体、闪光、放射能、电、强酸、强碱等作用于身体表面所造成的损伤，都称为烧伤。在中医古代文献中称"烫火伤"。

病因病机

火热毒邪，其性猛烈，一旦骤犯机体，传病迅速。轻则害皮肤（面积小，深浅度浅），出现红斑，水疱，皮肤腐烂。重则损害肌肉（面积大，深浅度深），伤及体内阴液，甚至内攻脏腑，以致脏腑不和，阴阳平衡失调。其变证甚多。

烧伤面积和深度的计算

1. 烧伤面积计算法

(1) 手掌法：伤员5指并拢时的一手掌面积，占全身面积的1%。此法计算简便，常用于小面积或散在的烧伤计算。

(2) 中国九分法：将全身体表面积分为11个9等分，如头、面、颈部为9%，双上肢为2×9%＝18%，躯干前后包括外阴为3×9%＝27%，双下肢包括臀部为5×9+1%＝46%。

2. 烧伤深度计算法

一般采用3度4分法，即Ⅰ度、Ⅱ度（又分浅Ⅱ度、深Ⅱ度）和Ⅲ度烧伤。

(1) Ⅰ度：达表皮角质层。红肿热痛，感觉过敏，表面干燥，2—3天后脱屑痊愈，无瘢痕。

(2) 浅Ⅱ度：达真皮浅层，部分生发层健在。剧痛，感觉过敏，有水疱，基底部呈均匀红色，潮湿，局部肿胀。1—2周愈合无瘢痕，有色素沉着。

(3) 深Ⅱ度：达真皮深层，有皮肤附件残留。痛觉迟钝，有水疱，基底苍白，间有红色斑点、潮湿。3—4周愈合，可有瘢痕。

(4) Ⅲ度：达皮肤全层，甚至伤及皮下组织、肌肉和骨骼，痛觉消失，皮肤干燥无弹性，如皮革状，蜡白、焦黄或炭化。干后皮下静脉阻塞如树枝状，2—4周焦痂脱落，形成肉芽创面，除小面积外，一般均需植皮才能愈合，可形成瘢痕和瘢痕挛缩。

烧伤伤情分类

1. 轻度烧伤：总面积在10%（儿童5%）以下的Ⅱ度烧伤。

2. 中度烧伤：总面积在11—30%（儿童6—15%）之间的Ⅱ度烧伤，或Ⅲ度面积10%（儿童5%）以下。

3. 重度烧伤：总面积在31—50%或Ⅲ度烧伤在11—20%，儿童总面积在15—25%或Ⅲ度烧伤面积在5—10%。

烧伤面积虽不到31%，但有下列情况则属重度烧伤：(1) 全身情况较差或已有休克；(2) 合并其他严重的创伤或化学中毒；(3) 重度呼吸道烧伤；(4) 头面、颈、手、会阴烧伤。

4. 严重烧伤：总面积在51—80%（儿童26—40%）之间，或Ⅲ度面积在21—50%（儿童11—25%）之间。

5. 特重烧伤：总面积在80%以上（儿童40%以上）或Ⅲ度面积超过50%（儿童25%）的。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

临床以小面积烧伤比较多见，因全身症状不明显，故以局部治疗为主。大面积烧伤48小时内易发生阴伤阳脱证，须及早防治。烧伤3—7天内，因火毒炽盛，易发生火毒内陷等一系列变证，治疗时除给予补液，抗生素，镇痛，营养疗法和正确的局部处理外，并根据病情的不同阶段和临床表现辨证论治。

(1) 早期（阴伤阳脱证）

主证：大面积烧伤后最初两天内，由于体液从创面大量外渗，证见发热，口渴喜饮，重者可出现烦躁，呼吸气微，神志恍惚，面色苍白，四肢厥冷，小便涩少，血压下降，舌质红绛，脉微绝或沉伏不起等症。

治法：养阴清热，回阳救逆。

方药：清营汤（52）、参附汤（55）、生脉散（54）加减。

生地 30 克，玄参 30 克，金银花 30 克，麦冬 15 克，连翘 15 克，知母 15 克，丹参 15 克，黄连 10 克，山栀子 10 克，人参 12 克，熟附子 10 克，五味子 10 克。水煎两次，每日分 3 次服。

（2）中期（火毒内陷证）

主证：大面积烧伤 3—7 天内，组织渗出液开始回吸收。因火毒炽盛，内侵脏腑，则产生变证。证见壮热烦渴，躁动不安，口干唇焦大便秘结，小便短赤，舌苔黄或黄糙，舌质红或红绛，脉弦数等。若热毒传心，可见烦躁不宁，神昏谵语；热毒传肺，可见呼吸气粗，鼻翼扇动，咳嗽痰鸣；热毒传肾，可见尿闭浮肿或血尿；热毒传肝，可见痉挛抽搐；热毒传脾，可见腹胀便秘，或液溏粘臭而频，或呕血便血。

治法：清热解毒，清营凉血为主。

方药：清营汤（52）、黄连解毒汤（31）合犀角地黄汤（5）加减。

生地 30 克，玄参 30 克，金银花 30 克，黄连 10 克，黄芩 10 克，黄柏 10 克，山栀子 10 克，丹皮 10 克，丹参 15 克，连翘 15 克，犀角粉 3 克（冲），竹叶 6 克，生甘草 6 克。水煎两次，每日分 3 次服。

加减：热毒传心者，加安宫牛黄丸（53）1 丸冲服，病重者，每日 2 次。

热毒传肺者，加生石膏 30 克，鱼腥草 30 克，浙贝母 10 克，桔梗 10 克。

热毒传肾而尿少、尿闭者，加车前子 15 克，白茅根 30 克，泽泻 15 克。

热毒传肝者，加羚羊角粉 1.5 克（冲），钩藤 15 克。

热毒传脾而腹胀便秘者，加生大黄 15 克，芒硝 10 克，莱菔子 10 克。

(3) 后期（气血、脾胃虚弱证）

主证：火热毒邪已退，气血、脾胃两伤。证见形体消瘦，面色无华，神疲乏力，口舌生糜，口干津少，纳呆腹胀，创面皮肉难生，舌淡红或淡胖，苔白或薄黄，脉细弱或细数。

治法：调补气血，养阴益胃。

方药：八珍汤（11）合益胃汤（90）加减。

党参 15 克，黄芪 15 克，当归 15 克，玉竹 15 克，生熟地各 10 克，白术 10 克，白芍 10 克，茯苓 10 克，麦冬 10 克，沙参 10 克，炒谷芽 10 克，炒麦芽 10 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服。

2. 外治法

(1) 清创术：应严格遵守无菌操作。先用 38℃左右的消毒等渗盐水冲洗创面，除去污染、脱落之表皮和异物。小的水疱可不必刺破，大水疱则应予剪开流出积液，疱皮完整者，不必剪除，可将其展平，原位复盖。创面用消毒纱布吸干后，周围皮肤用 75%酒清或新洁尔灭酊消毒。创面污染较重或浅Ⅱ度烧伤面积在 5%以上者，应肌注破伤风抗毒血清 1500—3000 国际单位。

(2) 包扎疗法：主要目的是保护创面，适用于 4 肢及小面积烧伤。

方法方药：局部清创后，用紫草油纱布（紫草 10 克，白芷 30 克，忍冬藤 30 克，生地榆 30 克，黄蜡 15 克，冰片 1.5 克，香油 500 克。先将香油加热，再入紫草、白芷、忍冬藤、生地榆炸枯去渣，加黄蜡、冰片溶化，浸入无菌纱布即成）紧贴创面，

外加纱布、棉垫、绷带包扎。包扎应注意松紧适度，肢体应固定在功能位置，指（趾）间须用油纱布隔开。浅Ⅱ度创面如无感染，不必更换敷料，待1—2周后打开，创面多自行愈合。发生感染时可提前更换敷料。

(3) 暴露疗法：主要是使创面迅速干燥，表面结成一层干痂，以减少细菌在创面繁殖。适用于头面、颈、臂部及躯干部烧伤，大面积烧伤或创面污染较重的烧伤。

方法：清创后，将患者暴露于空气清洁的隔离室无菌床上，室温保持在25℃—28℃，使创面干燥结痂。为加速创面干燥结痂，除配合应用灯烤加热外，可选用具有抗渗、止痛、消炎、收敛中药涂布创面。

方药1：清凉油膏

生石灰250克，加清水1000毫升，搅浑，待澄清后取其上清液与麻油等量混合，慢慢搅动，使水油交融，充分皂化，即成为乳状糊剂。用时可直接涂于创面，每日1—2次。适用于Ⅰ度、浅Ⅱ度烧伤。

方药2：大黄地榆粉

生大黄30克，生地榆30克，冰片1.5克。共研极细末，撒布于创面上，用于表皮脱落，创面渗液者。

方药3：安医3号制痂酊

黄芩100克，黄柏100克，儿茶100克。共研细末，过120目筛，浸泡于80%酒精1000毫升内，24小时后取过滤液。每2—4小时喷洒创面一次，结痂后每日用3—4次。

(4) 焦痂处理：部分深Ⅱ度和Ⅲ度烧伤，因焦痂与正常组织开始分离往往发生痂下感染，脓液蓄积，产生毒素，增加毒血症和败血症的机会，故需切痂处理。对面积不太大的深Ⅱ度和Ⅲ度焦痂，可选用中药外用促使焦痂溶解分离脱落，并可减少瘢痕的形成。

切痂植皮

无感染的焦痂，面积在 10—21%以内，应争取伤后 2—7 天内将焦痂切除，立即植皮。面积较大者可分期分区小块切除和植皮。对于手部深Ⅱ度烧伤，可在 48 小时以后早期削痂植皮，以保护手的功能，避免疤痕挛缩。

中药脱痂

方药 1：黄连解毒膏

地榆炭 180 克，大黄 180 克，黄柏 180 克，乳香 60 克，紫草 60 克，五倍子 60 克，白芷 60 克，川芎 60 克，升麻 60 克，黄芩 60 克，桃仁 60 克，没药 60 克，赤芍 60 克，胡黄连 60 克，生地 120 克，金银花 120 克，当归 120 克，白敛 120 克，旱莲草 120 克，红花 30 克，木鳖子 30 克，黄连 90 克，蛤蟆草（学名荔枝草）适量，黄白蜡 3000 克，麻油 12.5 公斤。上药除紫草、金银花、红花后下外，放麻油内先泡两天，再用文火煎熬，见白芷褐色为度，过滤去渣，加蜡收膏，做成油纱布，外敷焦痂处，盖纱布包扎。

方药 2：东方一号

茅术 30 克，黄柏 30 克，防已 30 克，宣木瓜 30 克，延胡索 30 克，郁金 30 克，生地榆 30 克，白芨 60 克（切片），冰片 3 克（研粉冷后加），煅石膏 240 克（研粉），煅炉甘石 240 克（研粉），麻油 1 公斤。前八味药放麻油内熬至褐色为止，过滤去渣，取净油，然后与煅炉甘石粉、煅石膏粉、冰片粉调匀，直接涂于创面．或取滤净油熬至滴水成珠时，再加煅石膏粉、煅炉甘石粉，加热无浮油，约两小时左右成半固体膏状即停火，待温后再入冰片粉搅匀即成。应用时，将药膏涂于不吸水的白纸上贴敷患部后包扎。

8.2 冻伤

冻伤为发生在寒冷地区的季节性疾病，是机体受到寒冷侵袭所引起的一种损伤。多发生于手、足、耳、鼻及面部等暴露部

位。中医称为"冻疮"。

病因病机

大病之后或素体虚弱，或因饥饿，疲劳，衣着欠缺，衣帽鞋袜过小，静止少动，耐寒性差等因素，再外感严寒侵袭，则局部经络阻塞，气血凝滞而成。

临床表现

轻者多见于手、足、鼻尖、耳廓、面颊等局部损伤，伤部皮肤苍白、冰冷、红斑、灼痛、麻痒、或起水疱，明显肿胀。其损害为皮肤浅层或全层、愈后无瘢痕。重者则皮肤由苍白变蓝色，终变黑色，周围肿胀并有血性大水疱，伤处麻木或感觉丧失，甚至形成干性或湿性坏疽。继发严重感染时，可伴有寒战，高热等全身症状。若毒邪内陷，可危及生命。愈后留有瘢痕。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 轻度冻伤一般不用内服药物治疗。

(2) 重度冻伤者，宜温阳散寒，调和营卫。用桂枝加当归汤(91) 合四逆汤 (92) 加减：桂枝 12 克、白芍 12 克，当归 15 克，鸡血藤 15 克，熟附子 10 克，川芎 10 克，甘草 10 克，生姜 10 克，大枣三枚。加黄酒 30 毫升，水煎急服。若素体虚弱、气血不足者，原方加生黄芪 15 克，熟地 15 克，人参 10 克，白术 10 克。

(3) 溃破继发感染者，按外科感染疾病常规处理。必要时可用抗菌素，破伤风抗毒血清，抗气性坏疽血清等疗法。

2. 外治法

(1) 轻症

局部冻伤时，尽快将受冻肢体置于 35℃—40℃温水中迅速复温。5—7 分钟后离开温水，擦干保温，忌用火烤，雪擦，冷水浸泡。

局部红斑，灼热痛痒，未起水疱者，用阳和解凝膏 (15) 贴

敷，或用生姜 30 克，辣椒 5 个，或用艾叶 15 克，花椒 10 克，煎汤乘温浸洗患部，每日 1 次，每次 30 分钟，洗后擦干外搽冻疮膏 (93)。也可单用红花酊 (生姜汁 150 毫升，红花 90 克，樟脑 90 克，75%酒精 3000 毫升。先将红花放入酒精内浸泡 5 天后，过滤，加樟脑，姜汁溶解后过滤 1 次，即成) 涂擦患处，每日 3 次。

局部红斑肿胀明显，灼热痛痒者，用蜂蜜，熟猪板油各等份调膏处敷。

未感染的小水疱可让其干燥，已溃破感染的水疱，应剪去浮皮，然后用生肌玉红膏油纱布 (22) 换药。

(2) 重症

复温后要保温，保持干燥。冻伤的坏死组织待分界明显时，切除坏死组织，较大创面可予植皮。较小创面按外科感染性疾病常规换药。

8.3 甲状腺腺瘤

甲状腺腺瘤是颈部常见的良性肿瘤，多见于 40 岁以下的女性。相当于中医的"肉瘿。"

病因病机

因情志抑郁，肝失条达，肝郁气滞，气滞则血瘀；肝郁乘脾，脾失健运，痰浊内蕴。颈前属任脉所主，亦属督脉之分支，而任督之脉皆系于肝肾，故气滞，血瘀，痰浊，随经络而留注于结喉，聚而不散，乃成肉瘿。

临床表现

常偶发现颈前肿块，呈球状或半球状，边界清楚，质地柔韧，推之可移，无压痛，生长缓慢。有的腺瘤囊内出血，可在短期内迅速增大，出现胀痛、压迫不适感。较大腺瘤，可压迫气管，引起呼吸困难。可伴有急躁易怒，胸闷等症。

检查

可在甲状腺部位扪及圆形光滑肿物，随吞咽动作上下移动。放射性同位素碘（3）扫描，呈现温或热结节图象。若囊性腺瘤，可呈现凉或冷结节图象。超声波检查，可见到液平段反射，如囊内液体粘稠时，可在平段中见到微小波。

鉴别诊断

1. 亚急性甲状腺炎：发病前大多有感冒病史或咽痛病史，继则甲状腺肿胀，质较硬，有压痛，在吞咽时疼痛加剧，其痛可波及耳、枕部，病程一般在1—3月左右。

2. 甲状腺舌骨囊肿：多见于15岁以下小儿，肿块位于颈前区中线的舌骨下方，呈圆形，有囊性感，边界清楚，表面光滑，无压痛，一般不随吞咽活动上下移动，但随伸、缩舌运动上下活动。如囊肿并发感染，可破溃分泌黄色粘液样液体，形成经久不愈的瘘管。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

宜理气活血，化痰软坚，方用消瘿汤（经验方）：海藻15—30克，昆布15—30克，生牡蛎30克，夏枯草15克，赤芍15克，黄药子9—15克，川芎10克，三棱10克，莪术10克，香附10克，清半夏10克，山慈菇6克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日1剂。

加减：急躁易怒者，加柴胡10克，山栀子10克。

憋气者，加苏子10克。

胸闷者，加郁金10克。

瘤体突然增大而胀痛者，加三七粉3克（冲）。

瘤体较硬者，原方赤芍用量改为30克，加土贝母6克。

有肝病者，去黄药子。

在治疗过程中，可配合服散结片（58）、四虫片（51）。

编者于1987年总结报告用此方治愈12例，其中9例进行了

3—12 年的随访观察，均未见复发。并发现疗效与病程长短、瘤体软硬有关，一般病程短，瘤体较小而软，呈囊性感者则易治愈；瘤体大而硬，呈实质性者，则不易治愈。

2. 外治法

(1) 局部用阳和解凝膏 (15) 盖贴。

(2) 应用中药系统治疗 1 个月后，肿块无明显缩小者，或肿块较硬，在治疗过程中继续发展者，宜考虑手术治疗。

8.4 下肢溃疡

下肢溃疡是指发生于小腿下部内外侧的慢性溃疡。中医称为“臁疮”、“裙边疮”、“裤口毒”。其特点是溃疡经久不愈，反复发作，故俗称“老烂脚”。好发于长期从事站立工作和并有下肢静脉曲张的患者。

病因病机

多由久站或负重远行，耗伤气血，中气下陷，下肢脉络功能失常，气血运行不畅，复因湿下注，以致气滞血瘀，肌肤失养，加之皮肤破伤，虫咬伤，湿疮等染毒而诱发。

临床表现

初起患部先痒后痛，燉红肿胀，日后破溃流水，形成溃疡。溃疡呈圆形或椭圆形，疮面凹陷，边缘隆起而硬，肉芽暗红或灰白色，脓液腥臭而稀薄，溃汤周围皮肤色素沉着，常因脓水浸淫而并发湿疹。患者可伴有青筋暴露，朝轻暮肿，自觉沉重，易倦，病程长，常经久不愈。如溃疡呈菜花样，易出血，应行活组织检查，排除恶性溃疡。

辨证论治

1. 内治法

(1) 湿热下注证

主证：溃疡脓水较多，气味腥臭，周围皮肤红热，湿疹渗水作痒，舌苔黄腻，脉滑数。

治法：清热利湿，和营消肿。

方药：四妙勇安汤（68）加味。

金银花 30 克，玄参 15 克，当归 15 克，赤芍 15 克，川牛膝 15 克，苍术 15 克，防己 10 克，紫草 10 克，生甘草 10 克，红花 6 克，木通 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(2) 湿阻血瘀证

主证：溃疡肉芽暗红，分泌血清脓液，周围皮肤色素沉着而变紧薄，或伴有紫红色斑块、条索状肿物，舌质紫暗，舌苔白腻，脉沉细而涩。

治法：活血化瘀，利湿通络。

方药：活血通脉饮（73）加减。

丹参 30 克，忍冬藤 20 克，赤芍 15 克，当归 15 克，川芎 10 克，苍术 12 克，黄柏 10 克，牛膝 10 克，地龙 10 克，土苓 20 克，薏苡仁 20 克，桃仁 10 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，每日 1 剂。

(3) 中气下陷证

主证：溃疡日久不愈，疮面肉芽灰白，脓水稀薄，患肢朝轻暮肿，舌质淡，苔白，脉细。

治法：补中益气、和营消肿。

方药：补中益气汤（89）加减。

黄芪 30 克，党参 15 克，忍冬藤 15 克，泽兰 15 克，赤芍 15 克，当归 15 克，陈皮 10 克，升麻 10 克，柴胡 10 克，白术 10 克，甘草 6 克。水煎两次，早晚温服，日 1 剂。

加减：若兼气血两虚者，加十全大补丸（94）；兼肝肾不足者，加六味地黄丸（12）。

2. 外治法

(1) 初起痒痛，燥红肿胀，破溃流水者，用黄柏散（黄柏 30 克，黄连 6 克，芦荟 6 克，苍术 10 克，滑石 10 克，松香 12 克，冰片 0.6 克。共研细末，备用）干撒患处，外用纱布，绷带

包扎。

(2) 溃疡脓水较多，周围湿疹渗水作痒者，溃疡面撒牛黄散(95) 少许，盖贴大黄油纱布 (21)，周围湿疹撒布黄柏散 (96) 换药。

(3) 溃疡坏死组织较多者，撒八二丹 (煅石膏 8 克，红升丹 2 克，研细备用)，盖大黄油纱布 (21)。溃疡肉芽灰白，生长迟缓者，用慢性溃疡洗药 (29)，煎汤乘温热熏洗后，撒生肌珍珠散 (27)，盖贴生肌玉红膏油纱布 (22) 换药。或用大枣 3 个 (煮熟去皮核)，葱白 3 厘米 (煮熟)，共捣烂成泥，摊贴患处，每日 1 次。

护理与预防

1. 患肢宜抬高，减少久站远行。小腿用弹力绷带裹缠，可改善下肢血流通畅，加速溃疡愈合。

2. 溃疡愈合后，可用医用弹力护腿保护，以避免外伤引起复发，伴有下肢静脉曲张明显者，如无深静脉阻塞，可行大隐脉高位结扎和静脉剥脱术。

THE ENGLISH–CHINESE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF PRACTICAL TCM

(Booklist)

英汉实用中医药大全

(书目)

VOLUME	TITLE	书名
1	ESSENTIALS OF TRADITIONAL CHINESE MEDICINE	中医学基础
2	THE CHINESE MATERIA MEDICA	中药学
3	PHARMACOLOGY OF TRADITIONAL CHINESE MEDICAL FORMULAE	方剂学
4	SIMPLE AND PROVEN PRESCRIPTION	单验方
5	COMMONLY USED CHINESE PATENTMEDICINES	常用中成药
6	THERAPY OF ACUPUNCTURE AND MOXIBUSTION	针灸疗法
7	*TUINA* THERAPY	推拿疗法
8	MEDICAL *QIGONG*	医学气功
9	MAINTAINING YOUR HEALTH	自我保健
10	INTERNAL MEDICINE	内科学

11	SURGERY	外科学
12	GYNECOLOGY	妇科学
13	PEDIATRICS	儿科学
14	ORTHOPEDICS	骨伤科学
15	PROCTOLOGY	肛门直肠病学
16	DERMATOLOGY	皮肤病学
17	OPHTHALMOLOGY	眼科学
18	OTORHINOLARYNGOLOGY	耳鼻喉科学
19	EMERGENTOLOGY	急症学
20	NURSING	护理
21	CLINICAL DIALOGUE	临床会话

0100548

[General Information]
书名=英汉实用中医药大全（11）　外科学
作者=姜兆俊　徐象才
页数=408
SS号=10228862
出版日期=1994年8月第1版